docomo PRIME series
L-01A

ISSUE DATE: '08.10

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

NTT docomo

Easy search/Contents/Precautions
Before Using the Handset
Voice/Videophone Calls
Phonebook
Sound/Screen/Light Settings
Security Settings
Mail
i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel
Full Browser
Camera
1Seg
Music
i-αppli
Data Management
Convenient Functions
Character Entry
Network Services
Overseas Use
PC Connection
Appendix/Troubleshooting
Index/Quick Manual
퀵매뉴얼

DOCOMO W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting "docomo PRIME series L-01A".

Before or during use of L-01A, thoroughly read this manual and other manuals provided with your package and other optional devices in order to use L-01A correctly. If you have any questions after reading the manual, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.

L-01A is designed to be a convenient tool. Treat it carefully at all times to ensure that it will keep serving you well.

Before Using Your FOMA Terminal

- Because the FOMA terminal uses radio waves, it may not function in locations where radio waves cannot reach, such as in tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in other areas where radio waves are weak; or when out of FOMA service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building and nothing blocks your view outside, your FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, even when radio waves are strong, and you are not moving, communication may still be occasionally interrupted.
- Be considerate of other people around you when in public or where it is especially crowded or quiet.
- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is a possibility that third parties may attempt to listen in on your calls. The W-CDMA system automatically encodes signals for all calls so even if someone should somehow be able to listen in on the radio signals, an eavesdropper will hear only noise.
- Your FOMA terminal sends and receives voice communication as encoded digital data. When you are operating your FOMA terminal while moving from location to location, sometimes you may encounter weaker radio waves and the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded resulting in sound distortions.
- It is recommended that you save important data on a microSD card. If you use a PC, use DOCOMO keitai datalink to send and save data such as Phonebook entries, mail messages, Schedule events, etc. to the PC.
- When you use SSL for a secure connection, you agree that you are responsible for any actions you take. DOCOMO and the certifier listed below do not guarantee the safety of SSL for any activities of customers while using SSL, and are not liable for any damages incurred through using SSL.
  Certifiers: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign, RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DOCOMO and DOCOMO's roaming area.
- It is recommended that you make a backup of user-defined data (Phonebook entries, Schedule events, text memos, Record messages, voice memos, or movie memos) saved in the FOMA terminal by keeping the separate record or note of those data, etc. and storing them at a separate location. DOCOMO is not responsible for lost data due to failure, repair, or replacement of the model of your FOMA terminal.

For the First-time User of the FOMA Terminal

If you have never used any FOMA models before, read this manual in the following order. Doing so will help you understand the preparation and basic operations for using the FOMA terminal.

1. Read "Precautions". P10
2. Insert and charge the battery pack. P43, P45
3. Turn on the power, change the screen display to English, set the time and date, and view your own number P47, P48, P49, P50
4. Learn the functions of the various keys on the FOMA terminal. . . . P26
5. Become familiar with the meanings of the icons that appear on the screen. P31
6. Learn how to navigate the menu structure P34
7. Make sure you know how to make/receive calls P52, P66

You can download the latest version of this manual from DOCOMO's web site.
■ "Instruction Manual (in PDF format)" Download
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html
* The URLs and the manuals available from this site may be changed without prior notice.

Viewing/Searching This Manual

This manual offers you the following search modes to easily find a page describing functions or services you want to know about.

From Index

When you know the name of a particular function or service which you want to know about, look for it in the index.

▶ P454

From Easy Search

Use a simple word to search for frequently used or convenient functions.

▶ P4

From Tabs on the Cover

Major content areas are listed on the tabs on the cover. Jump to the section of your interest.

▶ Cover

See the next page for details.

From Contents ▶ P6

From Main Features ▶ P8

From Menu List ▶ P394

From Quick Manual ▶ P462

- Note that "L-01A" is referred to as the "FOMA terminal" in this manual.
- In this manual, functions which use a microSD card are described, however, you need to obtain a microSD card separately to use these functions. microSD card→P296
- Reproduction of all or part of this manual without permission is prohibited.
- The content of this manual may be changed without prior notice.

This section describes how to search "Select ring tone" as an example.

From Index ▶P454

Search for a function or service name as shown in the example.

Select ring tone 94
Self mode 116
Send files
Image files. 278
Melody files 294, 295
Movie/i-motion movie files . . 288, 289
SEND key only 68
Sent mails. 155

Go to the page with the description of "Select ring tone" on P94

From Easy Search ▶P4

Search for frequently used or convenient functions as shown in the example.

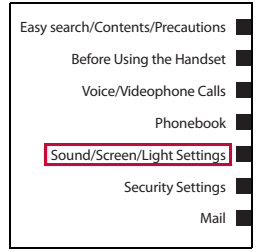
To change a ring tone melody or illumination pattern

To change a ring tone ·····P94 Select ring tone
To change volume of ring tone or alarm/ To mute sound of keypad etc. ·····P95 Volume
To set the FOMA terminal to vibrate for incoming calls ·····P96 Vibrator

Go to the page with the description of "Select ring tone" on P94

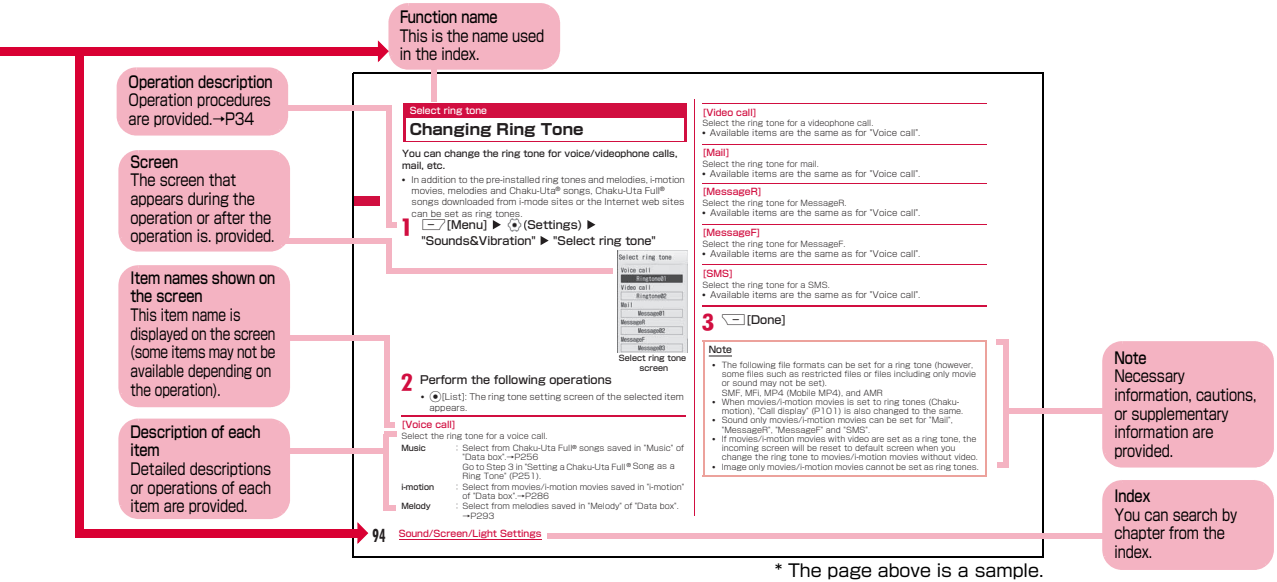
From Tabs on the Cover ▶Cover

Search for a function in the order of tab on the cover → first page of the chapter → target page as shown in the example.



Sound Settings
Changing Ring Tone····· Select ring tone 94
Setting Volume of Ring Tone, Alarm, etc. ····· Volume 95
Informing You of Incoming Calls and Alarms by Vibration·····Vibrator 96
Setting Keypad Sound ····· Select effect tone 97
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected····· Quality alarm 98
Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail ····· Mail ring duration 98
Muting Ring Tone from the FOMA Terminal ····· Manner mode 98
Changing Manner Mode Settings ····· Manner mode set 99
Screen/Light Settings
Changing Stand-by Display ···· Stand-by display 99

Go to the page with the description of "Select ring tone" on P94



* The page above is a sample.

- Screen images and illustrations in this manual only provide examples. They may differ from actual screen images or illustrations.
- This manual uses the following illustrations to explain the key operations.

Actual key	Notation
1	1

- This manual describes operations mainly using the default settings. If settings are changed, actual screen displays or operations may differ somewhat from the ones shown in this manual.

Easy Search

Use this feature to look up desired functions with simple words.

To know convenient functions for making calls

To/Not to notify the other party of your phone number ····P50 Caller ID notification

To place a call on hold ····P55 Hold

To change the volume level of the other party's voice ····P69 Earpiece volume

When you cannot answer an incoming call

To place an incoming call on hold without answering ····P70 Holding

To notify a caller that you cannot answer the phone just now ····P71 Public mode (Drive mode)

····P72 Public mode (Power OFF)

To record the caller's voice/videophone messages ····P72 Record message

To change a ring tone melody or illumination pattern

To change a ring tone ····P94 Select ring tone

To change volume of ring tone or alarm/ To mute sound of keypad etc. ····P95 Volume

To set the FOMA terminal to vibrate for incoming calls ····P96 Vibrator

To activate Manner mode ····P98 Manner mode

To change the illumination color or pattern ····P106 Lighting LED

To understand/change screen display

To understand the meaning of icons on the screen ····P31

To change the Stand-by display ···P99 Stand-by display

To display the Calendar on the Stand-by display ····P100

To change the Main menu appearance ····P104 Menu settings

To change a menu to the one with basic features ····P105 Simple menu

To change display language to English or Korean ····P48 Select language

To enlarge the font size ···· (Mail)P157, (i-mode)P184 Font size

To make full use of mail

To send Deco-mail ····· P131 Deco-mail
To send an image or a melody ··· P135 Attachment
To sort and save mail automatically ····· P145 Auto sort

To make full use of camera

To change the size of captured images ····· (Still image)P216, (Movie)P218 Select size
To directly save to the microSD card ····· (Still image)P217, (Movie)P218 Memory in use
To display captured images ····· P276 Picture viewer

To use the FOMA terminal with security

To lock FOMA terminal remotely in the case of loss etc. ····· P114 Omakase Lock
To keep Phonebook entries or Schedule events from prying eyes ····· P116 Data access lock
To reject incoming calls without caller ID····· P120 Anonymous caller
To reject calls from phone numbers not in the Phonebook ····· P122 Reject unknown

To make full use of 1Seg

To watch 1Seg ····· P229 Activate 1Seg
To set timer for starting 1Seg ··· P232 Booking program list
To change settings for subtitles or backlight ····· P235 1Seg settings

Other functions

To reduce the drain on battery ··· P103 Power saver mode
To scan QR codes or Bar codes ····· P219 Bar code reader
To listen to music ····· P244 Music player
To use the microSD card ····· P296
To exchange information via infrared communication ····· P306 Infrared communication
To use the FOMA terminal as an alarm clock ····· P320 Alarm
To use the FOMA terminal as a calculator····· P338 Calculator
To use the FOMA terminal abroad ····· P374
To update the software to the latest ····· P423 Software update
To update the security setting to the latest····· P426 Scanning function

For searching other operations, refer to "Viewing/ Searching This Manual".→P1
Operating procedures for frequently used functions are summarized in "Quick Manual".→P462

Contents

Viewing/Searching This Manual ····· 1
Easy Search ····· 4
Contents ····· 6
Main Functions of L-01A ····· 8
Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS) ····· 10
Handling Precautions ····· 20
Accessories and Main Options ····· 24

Before Using the Handset 25	Part Names and Functions, Viewing Display, Selecting Menu, Using UIM (FOMA Card), Attaching/Removing Battery Pack, Charging, Battery level, Power ON/OFF, Set Date&Time, Select language, etc.
Voice/ Videophone Calls 51	Making a Call/Videophone Call, Redial/Received Calls, WORLD CALL, Receiving a Call/Videophone Call, Earpiece volume, Incoming call volume, Public mode (Drive mode/ Power OFF), Record message, etc.
Phonebook 77	Available Phonebooks, Adding Entries to Phonebook, Editing Phonebook Entries, Deleting Phonebook Entries, No. of phonebook, etc.
Sound/ Screen/Light Settings 93	Select ring tone, Volume, Vibrator, Manner mode, Stand-by display, Menu settings, Lighting LED, Date&Time format, etc.
Security Settings 109	Security Code, Terminal Security Code, PIN code, Lock all, Omakase Lock, Auto key lock, Secret mode, Reject unknown, Reset Settings, Clear memory, etc.
Mail 125	i-mode Mail, Mail menu, Compose/ Send i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Template, Attachment, Receive option, Check new messages, Received mails/Sent mails, etc.
i-mode/ i-motion/ i-Channel 167	i-mode, i-mode Menu, Last URL, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Internet Access, Bookmark, Screen memo, Downloading, etc.
Full Browser 193	Full browser menu, Full Browser Settings, etc.
Camera 205	Before Using Camera, Photo-mode, Movie-mode, Changing Settings for Shooting, Camera settings, Bar code reader

1Seg 223	1Seg, Watching 1Seg, Setting Timer for Watching 1Seg Program, Data broadcasting, TVlink, etc.
Music 237	Music&Video Channel, Playing/ Operating a Program, Downloading a Chaku-Uta Full® Song, etc. * "Chaku-Uta Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.
i-αppli 261	i-αppli, Downloading, Starting, Auto start set, i-αppli Stand-by display, Deleting i-αppli, etc.
Data Management 273	Data Box, Picture viewer, Movie/ i-motion player, Melody player, microSD cards, etc.
Convenient Functions 311	Touch media, Multiaccess, Multitask, Alarm, Schedule, Call duration/Check call costs, Set call cost limit, World time, Calculator, Memo, Auto answer, etc.
Character Entry 345	Entering Characters, Character Input Method, Input setting, Edit Common phrases, Edit characters, Kuten code, Edit dictionary, Reset learnt info, Download dictionary, etc.
Network Services 357	Available Network Services, Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Blocking Service, Caller ID Request Service, etc.
Overseas Use 373	Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING), Available Services Overseas, Before Use Overseas, Making/Receiving a Call Abroad, Network search mode, etc.
PC Connection 387	Data Communication, Before Using Data Communication, Flow of Setup for Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication), Flow of Setup for Data Communication, Using CD-ROM, Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink, etc.
Appendix/ Troubleshooting 393	Menu List, Troubleshooting, Error Messages, Warranty and After-Sales Service, Software update, Scanning function, Main Specifications, Intellectual Property Right, etc.
Index/Quick Manual/ 퀵매뉴얼 453	Index, Quick Manual, Quick Manual (Overseas Use), 퀵매뉴얼, 퀵매뉴얼(해외이용편)

Main Functions of L-01A

i-Channel→P189

You can receive graphic information such as news or weather forecasts.
Also, you can obtain rich content generated in Flash (P279) by selecting your favorite channels from the Channel list.
* This is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription.

Multiaccess/Multitask→P317, P319

The FOMA terminal supports Multiaccess to use i-mode or Mail during a voice call.
It also supports Multitask that enables you to use several functions simultaneously.

International roaming→P373

The same FOMA terminal, phone number, and mail address as those used in Japan are available overseas (supporting 3G area only).
In addition, voice/videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS, and network services are available.

Variety of Features

■ **Quick search→P92**
You can easily find a saved phone number in Phonebook by only entering the memory number (within 2 digits) or a part of the phone number (3 digits or more) in Stand-by.

■ **Dial sound by 3 languages→P97**
Each number dialed can be read aloud.
You can choose the language between Japanese, English, and Korean.

■ **Dual clock display→P99**
In Stand-by, you can simultaneously show the time in two different cities.
For example, you can specify a city you stay and compare its time with Japan time.

■ **Handset theme→P104**
You can change the design of the Stand-by display and Menu screen appearance collectively.

■ **Menu customization→P104**
You can customize icons displayed on the main menu to your preference.

■ **Simple menu→P105**
The Simple menu has only menu options that are frequently used, such as making a call or using mail.
The font size on the display can be enlarged in some part to read easily.

■ **Switching the display language→P48**
The display language can be switched between Japanese, English, and Korean.

■ **Korean support in SMS→P126**
You can send and receive SMS in Korean to/from terminals that support Korean.

■ **Full browser→P194**
You can view web pages which does not support i-mode on the FOMA terminal as you view it on PC.
Also, use multi-window to open multiple web pages simultaneously.

■ **Camera functions→P206**
Still images (with auto focus) and videos can be captured using either the Outer camera with 5.1 Mega effective pixels (recorded pixels of 5.0 Mega pixels) or the Inner camera with 310 Kilo effective pixels (recorded pixels of 300 Kilo pixels).

■ **Bar code reader→P219**
By scanning a bar code or QR code with the camera, you can access to the corresponding sites or send mails.

■ **1Seg→P224**
You can watch 1Seg (digital terrestrial broadcasting service for mobile devices).
You can show subtitles and enjoy data broadcasting. You can also book a program you cannot miss.

■ **Infrared communication/Infrared remote control→P306, P309**
You can send and receive data with devices that support infrared communication, or operate appliances such as TV, that supports infrared remote control.

■ **Touch media→P38, P312**
Touch media is a menu which allows you to operate image display, music playback, or 1Seg through touch panel. It also contains games played by tilting or shaking the FOMA terminal.
You can also view a document file and line maps in major cities.

■ **Alarm→P320, P323**
You can use alarm as an alarm clock to notify you at specified time, and also use it to notify you of starting date and time of a meeting or appointment, or time limit of saved To do.

■ **Remembering dates→P329**
You can display the remaining days until an important event on the Stand-by display.

■ **Custom menu→P331**
You can quickly access frequently used functions with a few operations. You can register frequently used functions to Custom menu to your preference.

■ **World time→P335**
You can check date and time in various cities or countries as well as Greenwich mean time. The world map is displayed on the screen that you can check the location of the desired city/region as well as date and time.
This can be used to check date, time, and location of your next destination while traveling, etc.

■ **Unit converter→P336**
Units of currency, surface, length, weight, temperature, volume, and velocity can be quickly converted into other units.
This can be used to find out how much the purchase you made overseas costs in Japanese Yen, etc.

- Videophone calls→P52
- Security settings→P109
- Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram→P131
- Music&Video Channel/Chaku-Uta Full®→P238, P245
- Music player→P244
- i-αppli/i-αppliDX→P262
- Various network services→P357
- HIGH-SPEED communication compliant→P388

Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

- Before using your FOMA terminal, read these "Safety Precautions" carefully so that you can use it correctly. After reading the safety precautions, keep this manual for later reference.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.

■ The signs below indicate the levels of danger or damage that may occur if the particular precaution is not observed.

DANGER	This sign indicates that incorrect handling has a high possibility of causing death or serious injury.
WARNING	This sign indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing death or serious injury.
CAUTION	This sign indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing injury or damage to the product or property.

■ The following symbols show descriptions to follow:

Don't	Denotes things not to do (Prohibitions).
No disassembly	Denotes not to disassemble.
No wet hands	Denotes not to touch with wet hands.
No liquids	Denotes not to use where it could get wet.
Do	Denotes mandatory instructions (matters that must be complied with).
Unplug	Denotes to unplug from the outlet.

■ "Precautions" are explained in the following 6 sections:

General Precautions for the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapters (Including Chargers) and UIM ····· P11
Precautions for the FOMA Terminal ····· P13
Precautions for Battery Pack ····· P16
Precautions for Adapters (Including Chargers) ····· P18
Precautions for UIM ····· P19
Notes on Using near Electronic Medical Equipment ··· P19

General Precautions for the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapters (Including Chargers) and UIM

⚠ DANGER

Don't

Do not use, store, or leave the FOMA terminal or other devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near an open fire, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.
Devices could be deformed or malfunction, or the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, ignite, lower the performance, or shorten the life. Also, part of the case could get heated, causing bare skin burns.

No disassembly

Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel the FOMA terminal or other devices. And do not apply solder to them.
Fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction may result. The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or catch fire.

No liquids

Do not get devices wet.
Device contact with liquids, such as water or pet urine, may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Pay attention to the place of use and the way of handling.

Do

Use only the battery packs and adapters (including the chargers) approved by NTT DOCOMO for this FOMA terminal.
Using devices other than those specified by NTT DOCOMO may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack, and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite, or malfunction.
Battery Pack L04
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
* For information on other compatible products, contact a service counter such as a DOCOMO shop.

⚠ WARNING

Don't

Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) in heating appliances such as microwaves, or high pressure containers.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or ignite. Also, the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) may overheat, smoke or ignite, or the circuit boards may become damaged.

Don't

Do not throw the FOMA terminal or devices, or subject them to severe shocks.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite. Also, devices may malfunction or catch fire.

Continued on next page

Don't

Keep conductive foreign objects (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charging terminals or external connectors. Do not insert such objects into a device.
Fire or malfunction may result from a short-circuit.

Do

Make sure you have the power switched off before you go near a flammable gas such as gasoline fumes. Do not use the charger near such places. Using the FOMA terminal or charger in such an environment so may result in a fire.

Do

If you notice any strange smells, overheating, discoloration or deformation of the terminal, immediately take the following actions:

1. **Remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket**
2. **Turn the FOMA terminal off**
3. **Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal**

If you continue to use the terminal or devices under the conditions above, it may overheat, explode, or ignite; or the battery pack may leak.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal or accessories in places which are unstable such as wobbly tables or sloping shelves.
The FOMA terminal or accessories may fall, resulting in injury or malfunction.

Don't

Do not store the FOMA terminal or accessories in humid or dusty places, or in hot areas.
Otherwise, it could damage the FOMA terminal.

Do

If children use the FOMA terminal or devices, a guardian should explain the safety instructions and correct operations. The guardian should also make sure that the instructions are followed during use.
Otherwise, injury may result.

Do

Keep out of the reach of babies and infants.
Accidental swallowing or injury may result.

Do

Pay extra attention when you are using the FOMA terminal for an extended period of time while it is connected to the adapter (including the charger).
While the battery pack is being charged, if you make a long videophone call, constantly use i-αppli or watch 1Seg for a long time, the FOMA terminal, and its components including the battery pack and the adapter (including the charger) can become warm. Some people who continuously or repeatedly touch a hot FOMA terminal may develop rashes, itching, or eczema depending on their physical health or existing medical conditions, or a low temperature burn may result.

Precautions for the FOMA Terminal

⚠ WARNING

Don't

Do not directly point the Infrared Port at someone's eyes while exchanging data using infrared communication.
Doing so may adversely affect their eyes. Also, aiming it towards other infrared devices may interfere with the operation of these devices.

Don't

Do not flash a light at a short distance from someone's eyes.
Doing so may cause visual disorder. Also, blinding or surprising someone may cause an accident.

Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal in the place where it could be impacted by an expanding airbag, e.g. on the dashboard of a car.
If the airbag expands, the FOMA terminal could hit you or others, causing accidents or injury and the FOMA terminal could malfunction or be damaged.

Don't

If you are wearing any imbedded electronic medical device, do not place the FOMA terminal in a pocket close to the location of a device.
The FOMA terminal may cause the device to fail.

Don't

Do not put anything but a UIM/microSD card in the UIM/memory card slot. Keep water, foreign objects such as electrical conductors, volatile liquids, etc., out of the FOMA terminal.
Otherwise, electrical shock, fire or malfunction may result.

Don't

Do not flash a light directed to a driver of the vehicle.
It disturbs driving and may cause an accident.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in places where its use is prohibited such as in airplanes or hospitals.
Otherwise, electronic devices or electronic medical appliances may be adversely affected. If the FOMA terminal is set to be turned on automatically, cancel the setting before turning it off. If the medical facility has specific zones where use or possession of mobile phone is prohibited, follow those regulations. You may be punished if you take action which is prohibited by law such as use of the FOMA terminal in airplanes.

Continued on next page

Do

While using Hands-free, do not put the FOMA terminal speaker next to your ear. When you use the earphone/microphone connected to the FOMA terminal to play a game or music, adjust the volume to the appropriate level.
Otherwise, hearing loss may result. Also, if you cannot hear ambient sounds, you may become involved in an accident.

Do

People who suffer from heart ailments should be especially careful about setting vibration and ring tone volume levels.
Being startled by alerts from an incoming call could have effects on the heart.

Do

In case of thunder and lightning while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately put the antenna back into the FOMA terminal, turn the terminal off and move to a safe place.
There is a risk that you may receive an electrical shock or even be struck by lightning.

Do

Turn off your FOMA terminal in places near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak electronic signals.
The FOMA terminal may possibly cause the following devices to malfunction:

* Electronic devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices. If you are using an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or any other electronic medical device, consult the manufacturer or retailer of the device for advice regarding possible effects from radio waves.

Do

If the display glass or camera lens is broken, avoid touching the broken glass or exposed parts inside the FOMA terminal.
The protective film is used on the surface of the display, and the tempered glass is used on the surface of the camera lens so that shattered glass pieces do not scatter easily, however, if you touch the broken glass or exposed parts inside the FOMA terminal, injury may result.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its antenna, strap, etc.
If you swing the FOMA terminal around by its strap, someone could get hurt or the device could be damaged.

Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal in area with many people.
The antenna may strike on others, resulting in bodily injury.

Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal with the damaged antenna.
Touching the antenna may cause burn or other injuries.

When using "M-toy", confirm the safety of surroundings, hold the FOMA terminal securely and do not swing it around more than necessary.
Use "M-toy" to operate by tilting or swinging the FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal may hit people or objects, if shaken or swung too much, and may cause a serious accident or damage, etc.

If using "M-toy" with the FOMA terminal to which metallic straps or others are attached, be careful not to hit people or objects with the straps.
Bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property may result.

Do not place magnetic media near the FOMA terminal.
Information on magnetic media such as cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards or floppy disks may be lost.

Do not place a magnetized item near the FOMA terminal.
A strong magnetic field may cause malfunction of the FOMA terminal.

If the display is broken and the LCD liquid leaks, do not put the liquid into your mouth, inhale the liquid, or apply the liquid to your skin.
If the LCD liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, immediately flush with clean water and seek emergency medical advice.
Also, if the liquid gets on your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol and wash with soap and water.
Failure to do so may cause blindness or injury to your skin.

Do not put the FOMA terminal speaker next to your ear when the ring tone is sounding or a melody is being played on the terminal.
Hearing loss may result.

The surface of the display is covered with a protective film for securing the safety (for preventing the tempered glass panel from shattering) in case of the damage caused by a drop, impact, etc. Do not forcibly peel off or scratch the film.
Using the FOMA terminal with the film removed may cause a bodily injury when the display is damaged.

Continued on next page

Do

Electronic devices in some types of cars can be affected by use of the FOMA terminal.
For safety's sake, do not use the FOMA terminal in such cars.

Do

Itching, rash, or eczema may be caused depending on your physical conditions or predisposition. If an abnormality occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately, and then seek medical attention.

Metals are used for the following parts:

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Navigation key, Start key, Power/ Exit key	Aluminum	Anodizing
Upper housing	Magnesium alloy	Coating after trivalent chromium plating
Around Outer camera	Nickel	Trivalent chromium plating
Back cover	Stainless steel	PVD+ESI

Do

Be careful not to catch anything such as fingers or strap inside of the FOMA terminal when you open or close it.
Injury or device failure may result.

Do

Watch 1Seg in a well-lit place, keeping a certain distance from the screen.
Otherwise, eyesight may be failing.

Precautions for Battery Pack

■ **You can check the battery type in your FOMA terminal by reading the label attached to the battery pack.**

Description	Type
Li-ion00	Lithium ion battery

⚠ DANGER

Don't

Keep all electrical conductors away from the battery terminal contacts. Do not carry or keep the FOMA terminal together with accessories made of metal.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite.

Don't

Do not use excessive force to insert the battery pack into the FOMA terminal even when you have difficulty in inserting it.
Also, check that the battery pack is oriented correctly when you insert it.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite.

Don't

Do not attempt to incinerate a battery pack.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite.

Don't

Do not puncture or tramp down the battery pack, or strike it with a heavy blow.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite.

Do

If battery fluid somehow gets into your eyes, immediately flush your eyes with clean water and immediately seek emergency medical advice.
Blindness may result.

⚠ WARNING

Don't

If an abnormality occurs to the battery pack when it is damaged or deformed by the FOMA terminal being dropped, stop using the terminal immediately.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite. Also, devices may malfunction or catch fire.

Do

If normal charging time has elapsed but charging does not complete, stop the charging anyhow.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite.

Do

If you see that the battery pack is leaking, or if it smells bad, stop using it.
Be sure to keep a leaking battery pack away from open flames since the battery fluid is highly inflammable and could ignite or explode.

Do

Make sure that your pets do not bite a battery pack.
The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite. Also, devices may malfunction or catch fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary household waste.
Battery packs which are not disposed of properly may ignite or cause environmental damage. Cover the battery terminals with a non-conductive tape and take them to a service counter such as a DOCOMO shop or dispose of them in accordance with procedures for disposing of battery packs set up by your local authorities.

Don't

Do not charge a wet battery pack.
The battery pack may overheat, explode, or ignite.

Do

If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothes, immediately stop using the battery pack and rinse with clean running water.
Failure to do so may cause injury to your skin.

Precautions for Adapters (Including Chargers)

⚠ WARNING

Don't

Do not use a damaged adapter (including the charger) or one with a damaged power cord.
Electric shock, overheating, or fire may result.

Don't

Do not use the AC adapter in a place with high humidity such as a bathroom.
You could suffer an electric shock.

Don't

Use the DC adapter only in a negative (-) ground vehicle. It is not designed for use in a positive (+) ground vehicle.
Otherwise, fire may result.

Don't

If you hear or see thunder and lightning, do not touch the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger).
There is a risk that you may receive an electrical shock or even be struck by lightning.

Don't

Do not short-circuit the Charging Terminals when the adapter is plugged into an outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, never touch the Charging Terminals with fingers or other bare skin.
Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock, or other injury.

Don't

Place the charger in a stable location during charging. Also, do not cover or wrap the charger with cloth or bedding.
The FOMA terminal may disconnect from the charger, or cooling air flow may be restricted by wrapping the device. The terminal may overheat, ignite, or fail.

Don't

Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (including the charger) cord or power cord.
Electric shock or fire may result.

No wet hands

Do not touch the power cord of the adapter (including the charger) or the outlet with wet hands.
You could suffer an electric shock.

Do

Use the adapter only with the specified power source and voltage.
Failing to do so may result in fire or malfunction. When you use the FOMA terminal overseas, use an AC adapter appropriate for the location.
AC adapter: 100V AC
DC adapter:
12/24V DC (for negative grounded vehicles only)
AC adapter available overseas:
100 to 240V AC (connect only with household AC outlet)

Do

If the fuse of the DC adapter blows, replace it with the specified fuse.
The use of an incorrect fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See the instruction manual supplied with the adapter for the specified fuse.

Do

Keep the power plug dust-free.
Otherwise, fire may result.

Do

When plugging the adapter (including the charger) into an outlet, plug it in firmly, being careful not to let it contact with any metal objects or bare metal wires.
Otherwise, electric shock, a short-circuit, or fire may result.

Do

Always hold the adapter (including the charger) firmly when pulling it out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
If you pull on the cord instead of the adapter or plug, the cord could come loose or be damaged resulting in electric shock or fire.

Unplug

If you are not planning to use the AC adapter for a long period of time, unplug it from the outlet.
Otherwise, electrical shock, fire, or malfunction may result.

Unplug

If the Adapter gets wet, unplug it immediately from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
A wet adapter can cause electric shock, smoke, or fire.

Unplug

Before cleaning, pull the plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
You could suffer an electric shock.

Precautions for UIM

⚠ CAUTION

Do

Be careful not to touch the edge of UIM (IC portion) when removing it.
Your hands or fingers may be injured.

Notes on Using near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ The description below meets "Guideline on the Use of Radio-communication Equipment such as Cellular Telephones - Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan.

Continued on next page

⚠ WARNING

Do

Be sure to adhere to the following regulations inside medical facilities:

- Keep the FOMA terminal out of an intensive care unit (ICU) or a coronary care unit (CCU).
- Turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital lobbies and corridors if electronic medical devices could be nearby.
- If the medical facility has specific zones where use or possession of mobile phones is prohibited, follow those regulations.
- If any function which automatically turns on your FOMA terminal is set, cancel the setting before turning it off.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded trains or other public places where implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator wearers could be nearby.
Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be affected by radio waves.

Do

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, use the FOMA terminal 22cm or more away from the implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.
Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be affected by radio waves.

Do

Patients using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators (outside medical facilities for treatment at home, etc.) should check the influence of radio waves upon the equipment by consulting the manufacturer.
Operations of electronic medical equipment may be affected by radio waves.

Handling Precautions

General Usage Guidelines

■ **Do not let the equipment get wet.**
The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including the charger), and UIM are not waterproof. Do not use them in places with high humidity such as a bathroom or where rain may get them wet. If you carry them close to your body, moisture from sweat may corrode the internal parts causing a malfunction. Note that malfunctions deemed to be caused by water are not covered by the warranty, and may be impossible to repair. Since these malfunctions are not under warranty, even when repair is possible, it will be done at the user's expense.

■ Clean the FOMA terminal with a dry, soft cloth (Lens cleaning cloth).

- In some models, the display of the FOMA terminal has a special coating so that it is easier to see. If you rub the display roughly with a dry cloth, it may be scratched. Take care of how you handle the FOMA terminal, and use only a dry, soft cloth such as used for cleaning glasses. If the display is left with water drop or stain adhered, smear may be generated or the coating might peel off.
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, detergent, or other solvents for cleaning, otherwise the printed images may disappear or discoloration may result.

■ Occasionally clean the connector terminals with a dry cotton swab.

If the connector terminals become dirty, the contact may become loose, and the FOMA terminal power may be turned off. Wipe the connector terminals with a clean dry cloth or cotton swab.

■ Do not place the FOMA terminal near air conditioner outlets.

Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction.

■ Do not use excessive force using the FOMA terminal or the battery pack.

If the FOMA terminal is put under heavy objects in a bag, or if it is sat upon while in your pocket, its LCD, internal PCBs, or the battery pack may be damaged or malfunction.

If extraneous devices are inserted to the external connector terminals, the connector may be damaged or malfunction.

■ Carefully read each manual attached to the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger).

■ Do not rub or scratch the display with a metal object.

Doing so may cause damage or malfunction.

Precautions for the FOMA Terminal

■ Do not push the surface of the touch panel strongly or use a sharp object such as a finger nail, ballpoint pen, or pin for touch panel operations.

The touch panel may be damaged.

■ Avoid extreme temperatures.

The FOMA terminal should be used within a temperature range from 5℃ to 35℃ and a humidity range from 45% to 85%.

■ The FOMA terminal may affect general phones, televisions, or radios, etc. in use nearby. Use as far as possible from such appliances.

■ Keep a separate record of any information stored on the FOMA terminal and store the copies in a safe location.

DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any of your data.

■ Do not insert devices to the external connector terminals (earphone/microphone jack) crookedly and do not pull devices out without releasing any connector latches.

Doing so may cause damage or malfunction.

■ Do not close the FOMA terminal with a strap caught inside.

Doing so may cause damage or malfunction.

■ It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during use or being charged. You can continue to use it even if it is warm.

Continued on next page

■ Do not leave the FOMA terminal directly under the sunlight.
Pixels may become discolored or burn out.

■ Close the covers for the external connectors when using the terminal.
Otherwise, dust or moisture may seep in and cause malfunction.

■ Do not use the FOMA terminal with the Back Cover removed.
The battery pack may fall out and cause malfunction or damage.

■ Do not put a label or sticker on the back side of the display of the FOMA terminal.
They may be lodged when you open or close the FOMA terminal and cause damage or malfunction.

■ While using a microSD card, do not remove the card or turn off the FOMA terminal.
Data loss or malfunction may result.

Precautions for Battery Pack

■ Battery packs are consumables.
Depending on the usage, a battery pack may run out of its charge extremely quickly even if it is fully charged. Purchase a new battery pack as specified in this manual.

■ Charge the battery pack in a place with an ambient temperature of 5℃ to 35℃.

■ Be sure to charge the battery pack before you first use the FOMA terminal or after you have not used it for a long time.

■ The actual time that a battery pack holds its charge depends on how the FOMA terminal is used and how close the battery pack is to the end of its useful life.

■ The battery pack may swell towards the end of its useful life. This is normal.

■ Do not leave an empty battery pack lying around.
Leaving a battery pack uncharged for a long time may lower its performance or shorten its life.

Precautions for Adapters (Including Chargers)

■ Charge the battery pack in a place with an ambient temperature of 5℃ to 35℃.

■ Charge the battery pack where:
- There is very little humidity, vibration, and dust.
- There are no landline phones, television sets, or radios nearby.

■ It is normal for the adapters (including the chargers) to become warm while using or charging the FOMA terminal. You can continue to use it even if it is warm.

■ Use the DC adapter only when the car engine is running.
Otherwise, the car battery could go dead.

■ When using a outlet with a latch mechanism, follow the instruction manual that came with the outlet.

■ Do not subject the adapters to sharp impacts. Also, do not bend the Charging Terminal.
Otherwise, it could damage the FOMA terminal.

Precautions for UIM

■ Do not use excessive force to insert/remove the UIM.

■ It is normal for the UIM to become warm during use. You can continue to use it even if it is warm.

■ Note that NTT DOCOMO will not be liable for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using a UIM with an unauthorized external IC card reader/writer.

■ Always keep the IC portion of the UIM clean.

■ Clean the UIM with a soft, dry cloth (Lens cleaning cloth).

■ Keep a separate record of any information stored on the UIM and store the copies in a safe location.
DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any of your data.

■ To protect the environment, please bring an old, unused UIM to a service counter such as a DOCOMO shop.

■ Avoid extreme temperatures.

■ Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC portion.
Data loss or malfunction may result.

■ Do not drop the UIM or subject it to shocks.
Otherwise, it could damage the FOMA terminal.

■ Do not bend the UIM or put heavy things on the UIM.
Otherwise, it could damage the FOMA terminal.

■ Do not insert the UIM with labels or stickers attached into the FOMA terminal.
Otherwise, it could damage the FOMA terminal.

CAUTION

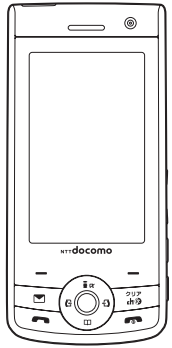
■ Never use a modified FOMA terminal. Using a modified device violates the Radio Wave Law.
The FOMA terminal is given a certificate of conformity to technical standards of specified radio equipment based on the Radio Wave Law. To confirm this, a rating sticker is affixed to the FOMA terminal on which 〒 is written.
If you modify the internal components of the FOMA terminal by removing screws, the certificate of conformity to technical standards becomes void.
Using the terminal with a void certificate of conformity to technical standards violates the Radio Wave Law.

■ Do not drive while using the FOMA terminal.
Using a mobile phone while driving is subject to punishment by law.
If you receive a call unavoidably, you must use Hands-free to tell the caller to call back and park the car at a safe place to make a call.

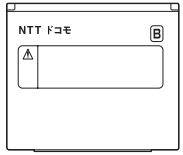
Accessories and Main Options

Accessories

L-01A
(With Warranty and Back Cover L09)

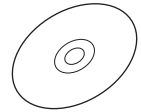


Battery Pack L04



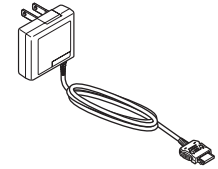
Instruction Manual (This Book)
* Refer to P462 for Quick Manual.

CD-ROM for L-01A
* Contains "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List" in PDF format.



Main Options

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(With Warranty and Instruction Manual)



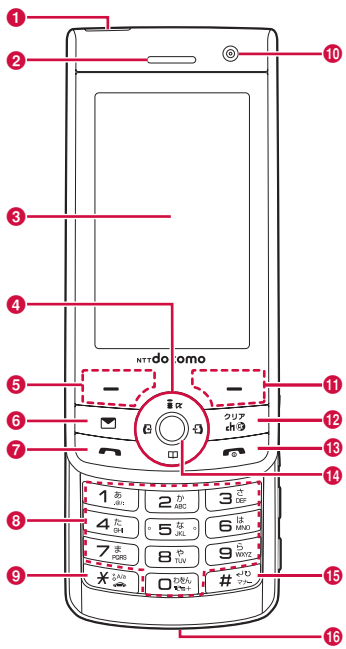
Other Options→P411

Before Using the Handset

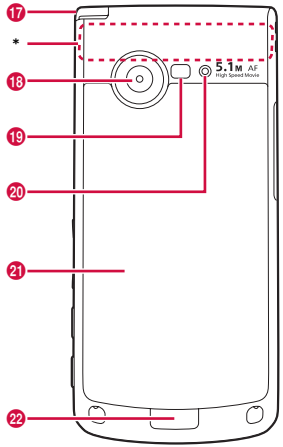
Part Names and Functions ····· 26
Viewing Display ····· 31
Selecting Menu ····· 34
Selecting Touch Media Menu ····· 38
Using UIM (FOMA Card) ····· 39
Attaching/Removing Battery Pack ····· 43
Charging ····· 44
Checking Battery Level ····· Battery level 46
Turning Power ON/OFF ····· Power ON/OFF 47
Changing Screen Display to English or Korean
····· Select language 48
Setting Date and Time ····· Set Date&Time 49
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number
····· Caller ID notification 50
Checking Your Own Phone Number
····· Own number 50

Part Names and Functions

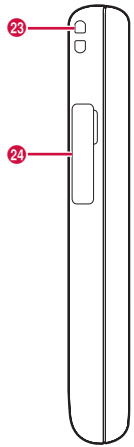
■ Front



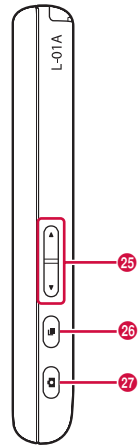
■ Rear



■ Left side



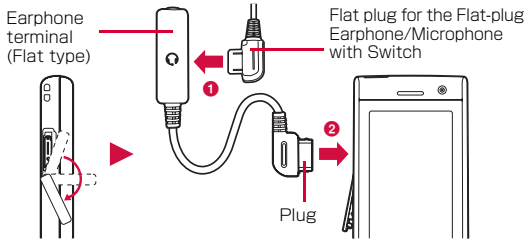
■ Right side



* The FOMA antenna is inside the FOMA terminal. To communicate in better condition, avoid covering the antenna part with your hands.

Using earphones

Connect earphones compatible with the external connector terminal (optional).
If you use the incompatible earphones, connect the conversion plug adapter (optional) to the earphones.



Example : Connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (optional)

❶ Infrared port

- When performing infrared communications, point this towards the other device.→P307

❷ Earpiece/Speaker

- The other party's voice comes out from here.
- Ring tones, alarm tones, and melodies sound from here.
- The other party's voice comes out from here during a Hands-free call.

❸ Display→P31

❹ Navigation key

Used to move the cursor, scroll through the screen, or execute the selected operation.

●

- Execute the selected operation.

▲

- Move the cursor up.
- Press this in Stand-by to display the i-mode menu screen (P168), and press for 1+ seconds to display the i-αppli list screen (P263).
- Press this while Music player, etc. is running to increase the volume.

▼

- Move the cursor down.
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Phonebook list screen (P85), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Add to phonebook screen (P78).
- Press this while Music player, etc. is running to reduce the volume.

◀

- Move the cursor left. Also, return to the previous screen.
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Received calls list screen (P58), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Received mail list screen (P155).

▶

- Move the cursor right. Also, go to the next screen.
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Redial list screen (P56), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Sent mail log screen (P155).

❺ [−/] Menu key/Left soft key

- Press this in Stand-by to display the Main menu (P34), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Custom menu.
- Execute the operation indicated for the left soft key.→P30

❻ [✉] Mail key

- Press this in Stand-by to display the Mail menu screen (P127), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Compose message screen (P128).

❼ [📞] Start key

- Make/answer a voice or videophone call.→P52, P66
- Press this in Stand-by to display the recent call logs, and press for 1+ seconds to display the recently sent/received mail logs.
- During character entry, use this to switch the input mode (pictographs/symbols/emoticons).→P349

Continued on next page

⑧ Dial keys
- Press to enter a phone number or characters.→P406
- Press [0] for 1+ seconds in Stand-by to enter "+".→P62

⑨ [*]Public mode (Drive mode) key
- Enter "*"/"✻".
- Press this for 1+ seconds in Stand-by to set/cancel Public mode (Drive mode).→P71

⑩ Inner camera
- Capture your own image or movie.→P209, P212
- Show your own image during a videophone call.

⑪ [−]Touch media key/Right soft key
- Press this in Stand-by to display the Touch media menu screen (P39).
- Execute the operation indicated for the right soft key.→P30
- During character entry, use this to switch the input mode (Hiragana/Katakana/alphabetic and numeric characters).→P406

⑫ [クリア dh]Clear/i-Channel key
- Return to the previous state or return to the Stand-by display.
- Press this in Stand-by to display the i-Channel list screen (P190).

⑬ [電源]Power/Exit key
- Press this for 2+ seconds to turn the power on/off.→P47
- Used to end a call or terminate a function.

⑭ Illumination
Light up/flash while receiving a call or mails or charging the terminal, etc.→P106

⑮ [#]Manner mode key
- Enter "#".
- Press this for 1+ seconds in Stand-by to set/cancel Manner mode.→P98

⑯ Mouthpiece
- During a call, transmit your voice through this.
- During a movie capture, this works as a microphone.

⑰ 1Seg antenna
- Receive 1Seg broadcasting.→P224
  * This is not the FOMA antenna.

⑱ Outer camera
- Capture a still image or movie such as landscape, etc.→P209, P212
- Capture surrounding image during a videophone call.

⑲ Photo light/Light
- Light up when capturing a still image/movie.
- You can light this up when using the camera.

⑳ AF auxiliary lamp
- Light up when adjusting the Auto focus.

㉑ Back cover
- Remove this when inserting/removing the UIM, battery pack, or microSD card.→P39, P43, P297

㉒ Back cover lock button→P43

㉓ Strap hole

㉔ External connector terminal
- The integrated terminal used for charging and connecting earphones.
- Connect the AC adapter (optional), DC adapter (optional), FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional), or Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal (optional).

㉕ [▲][▼]Volume key
Use to adjust the volume, etc.
- Press these in Stand-by to adjust the ring tone volume.
- Press these during a call to adjust the receiver volume.
- Press [▲] for 1+ seconds in Stand-by to display the 1Seg menu screen. Press [▼] for 1+ seconds to display the Record message list screen (P74).
- Press these on the Playback screen of Music player, etc. to adjust the playback volume.
- Press these on the List screen to move the cursor or scroll the screen to the next page.

㉖ Multitask key

- Press this for 1+ seconds to display the New task screen. →P319
- The Task list screen appears.→P320

㉗ Camera key

- Press this in Stand-by to display the Still image capture screen (P209), and press for 1+ seconds to display the Movie capture screen (P212).
- Press this on the Still image/Movie capture screen to work as shutter and capture images/movies.→P209, P212
- Press this halfway on the Still image capture screen to start the Auto focus.→P210

Opening/Closing the FOMA Terminal

When you open the FOMA terminal, slide up the front part of the terminal. When you close the FOMA terminal, slide down the front part of the terminal.

- By default, the FOMA terminal is set to automatically activate the Keypad lock when closing the terminal, and to cancel the lock when opening the terminal.
  Also, Keypad lock is automatically activated when the display light is tuned off with the FOMA terminal closed.
  Keypad lock setting can be changed.→P117

Note

- Do not open or close the FOMA terminal forcibly. Failure or malfunction may result.
- Keypad lock is not activated while functions such as 1Seg, Camera, or Music playback (except BGM playback), etc. are in use.

Canceling Keypad Lock

If you want to operate the FOMA terminal with the locked terminal closed, perform the following operation to cancel the lock.

1 ○ ▶ (Within approximately 1 second) ●

- If you do not press ● within approximately 1 second, Keypad lock is activated again.

Note

- If calls or mails arrive during Keypad lock, the display is turned on and some key operations become available temporarily.
- To cancel the Keypad lock while using the Touch media, touch on the screen.

How to Use Touchpad

[−] and [−] are the touchpad keys that can be operated by touching lightly with your fingertip. The FOMA terminal vibrates when you use the touchpad. Touchpad key operations are available only while the touchpad is illuminated.

- When the touchpad is not illuminated, touchpad operations become unavailable. Illuminate the touchpad with the following steps before performing the touchpad operations.
  - Press any key other than the touchpad keys
  - Open/close the FOMA terminal

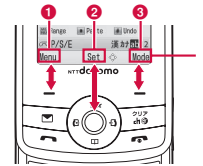
Note

- Do not attach stickers on the operation area to avoid malfunction.
- Do not press the touchpad with a hard object like a pen tip.
- Perform the touchpad operations with your fingertip softly. Operations may not be performed correctly with a hard object such as metal, gloves, or wet hands. (Strong impacts may cause damage to the touchpad.)

Soft Keys

Available operations on the currently opened screen are displayed as Soft keys at the bottom of the screen. To execute the Soft key operation, press the following corresponding Soft key.

- The Soft key description differs depending on the function or display status.



❶ Operations performed using [−] appears.
❷ Operations performed using ● appears.
- ◈ also appears to indicate the possible direction for scrolling or item selection.

❸ Operations performed using [−] appears.

Notation for Soft Key Operations

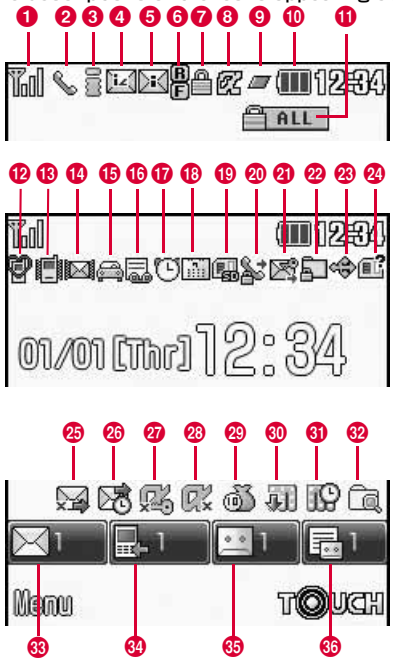
This manual describes the Soft key operations as follows.

[−][Menu]

Corresponding key　Soft key display

Viewing Display

The descriptions of the icons appearing at the top of the screen are as follows.



❶ Strong ⟷ Weak
Signal strength→P48
Self mode set→P116
Out of service area or no signal reception→P48

❷ Voice call in progress→P53
Videophone call in progress→P53
Reject all calls function set→P120

❸ (Blinking) i-mode connection in progress→P169
(Blinking) i-mode communication/i-Channel message reception in progress→P169
(Blinking) Full browser connection in progress
(Blinking) Full browser communication in progress
(Blinking) Packet connection via PC, etc/disconnection in progress
Packet communication via PC, etc. in progress
Packet reception via PC, etc. in progress
Packet transmission via PC, etc. in progress
Packet reception/transmission via PC, etc. in progress

❹ (White) i-mode mails stored at the i-mode center→P138
(Pink) i-mode center mailbox full
(White) MessageR stored at the i-mode center→P160
(Pink) MessageR at the i-mode center full
(White) MessageF stored at the i-mode center→P160
(Pink) MessageF at the i-mode center full
(White) i-mode mails and MessageR/F stored at the i-mode center
(Pink) i-mode mails and MessageR/F at the i-mode center full

Continued on next page

5 (White) Unread i-mode mail→P137
(White) Unread SMS→P165
(White) Unread i-mode mail and SMS
(Pink) Received mails in the FOMA terminal full
SMS in the UIM full
Received mails in the FOMA terminal and SMS in the UIM full

6 (White) Unread MessageR→P161
(Pink) MessageR in the FOMA terminal full
(White) Unread MessageF→P161
(Pink) MessageF in the FOMA terminal full

7 SSL-compatible page displayed or loading→P187

8 i-αppli running→P263
i-αppliDX running→P263
(Gray) i-αppli Stand-by display displayed→P270
(Gray) i-αppliDX Stand-by display displayed→P270

9 A function (task) activated→P319
Multiple functions (tasks) activated
A function (task) and background playback activated
Multiple functions (tasks) and background playback activated
(Blinking) Alarm started when no tone sounds due to another function (task) activated

10 - Battery level→P46

11 ALL Lock all set→P113

12 (Pink) Manner mode set→P98
(Gray) Original manner mode set→P99

13 The ring tone for voice/videophone call muted, and vibration active→P95, P96
The ring tone for voice/videophone call and vibration active→P95, P96
The ring tone for voice/videophone call and vibration inactive→P95, P96

14 The ring tone for Mail or MessageR/F muted, and vibration active→P95, P96
The ring tone for Mail or MessageR/F and vibration active→P95, P96
The ring tone for Mail or MessageR/F and vibration inactive→P95, P96

15 Public mode (Drive mode) set→P71

16 Record message active→P73

17 Alarm set→P320

18 Today's schedule/To do→P323, P327
Today's schedule/To do with alarm set→P323, P327

19 microSD card inserted→P297

20 Outgoing voice/videophone calls restricted→P115
Incoming voice/videophone calls restricted→P115
Incoming and outgoing voice/videophone calls restricted→P115

21 Outgoing mails restricted→P115
Incoming mails restricted→P115
Incoming and outgoing mails restricted→P115

㉒ "Data access lock" set to "ON"→P116

"Secret mode" set to "ON"→P118

"Data access lock" and "Secret mode" set to "ON" →P116, P118

"Secret mode" set to "Secret data only mode"→P118

"Data access lock" set to "ON", and "Secret mode" set to "Secret data only mode"→P116, P118

㉓ Communication mode set and USB cable connected

㉔ UIM not inserted/error occurred in the UIM→P39

Terminal link applied

㉕ i-mode mail Auto send failed

㉖ i-mode mail Auto send reserved→P129

㉗ i-αppli Stand-by display released due to security error→P271

㉘ i-αppli auto start failed→P271

㉙ Call costs exceeded the limit→P335

㉚ Music&Video Channel program download completed →P238

Music&Video Channel program download failed →P238

Downloading Music&Video Channel program→P238

㉛ Reserving Music&Video Channel program download →P238

㉜ Pattern definition update completed→P426

Pattern definition update recommended

Pattern definition update failed

㉝ Unchecked mail (with the number of mails)

㉞ Missed calls (with the number of calls)

㉟ Voice mail messages (with the number of messages) →P358

㊱ Record messages (with the number of messages)

Note

- Some characters or symbols appearing on the display may be partially deformed or abbreviated.
- Icons appearing on the display are based on the default settings. The display of the FOMA terminal may differ from the one in the manual depending on setting changes after purchase.
- The display of the FOMA terminal employs high-precision production technology, however, there may be instances where some dots may not light up while others may constantly light up. Note that this is not a failure.

Selecting Menu

The FOMA terminal allows you to access or set a function, and save items, etc. from the Main menu or sub menu.

- L-01A offers the Normal menu and Simple menu that consists of frequently used functions (P105).

Selecting Functions from Main Menu

You can select a function from the main menu using the navigation key, or select a function using the dial keys.

- This manual explains how to select functions using the navigation keys.

Main menu

■ Icons and corresponding keys displayed on the main menu

Icon	Key	Icon	Key	Icon	Key
(Mail)	1	(i-mode)	2	(i-αppli)	3
(Phonebook &Logs)	4	(Data box)	5	(MUSIC)	6
(1Seg)	7	(Camera)	8	(Stationery)	9
(Settings)	*	(Own number)	0	(LifeKit)	#

Selecting a Function from Menu Items

This section explains the steps for accessing the Main menu from Stand-by and displaying the setting screen of "Backlight".

1 Press [−] [Menu] in Stand-by

Main menu appears.

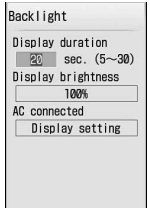
2 In the Main menu, use ⊕ to move the cursor to (Settings) and press ● [Select]

Setting screen

3 On the Setting screen, use ◉ to move the cursor to "Display" and press ●[Select]

Display screen

4 On the Display screen, use ◉ to move the cursor to "Backlight" and press ●[Select]



Backlight screen

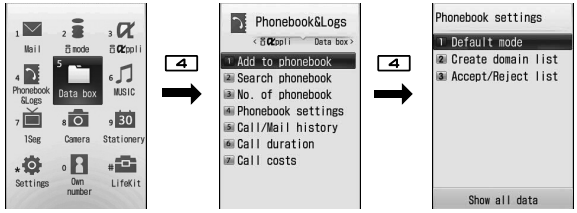
Selecting a Function with a Dial Key

This section explains the steps for using dial keys to display "Phonebook settings".

1 Press −/[Menu] in Stand-by

2 On the Main menu screen, press 4 corresponding to "Phonebook&Logs"

3 On the Phonebook&Logs screen, press 4 corresponding to "Phonebook settings"

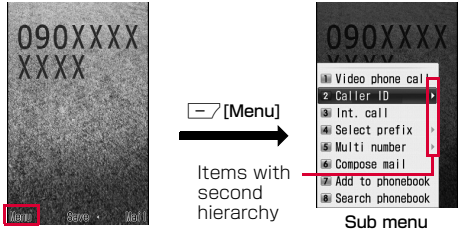


Main menu | Phonebook& Logs screen | Phonebook settings screen

Selecting a Function from Sub Menu

When "Menu" appears on a Soft key, you can access a sub menu to perform various functions.

- The sub menu items vary depending on the function or the FOMA terminal settings/saved items, etc.



Phone number entry screen | Sub menu

Continued on next page

■Sub menu on a list screen

The sub menu on a list screen contains options such as "Delete" that apply only to the highlighted item and ones such as "Delete all" that apply to all items. When performing the operation that applies to only an item, move the cursor to the relevant item, and then press [−/][Menu].

Note

- You can move the cursor using ⊛ while the sub menu appears. Also, you can select an item by pressing the dial key corresponding to the menu number.
- For an item with the second hierarchy, move the cursor and press ●[Select]/⊛ to display the second hierarchy item.
- Press [−/][Close]/[2abc] to close the sub menu.

Basic Operations for Each Screen

Returning to the Previous Screen/Stand-by Display

If you selected undesired menu item and want to return to the previous screen, or cancel/end the operation and return to the Stand-by display, perform the following operations.

- [2abc] : Return to the previous screen.
- [/] : Return to the Stand-by display. If a confirmation to exit appears, select "Yes" to cancel the operation.

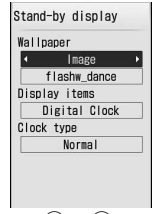
Note

- Depending on the current operation on the FOMA terminal, pressing [/]/[2abc] may not return to the Stand-by display/previous screen.

Selecting Setting Items

Setting fields on a setting screen show the current settings. To change a setting, select a setting field and select an item from a list.

- When ◁ ▷ appears to the right and left of an option field, use ⊛ to switch items.



⊛ ▶ ●

⊛ ▶ ●

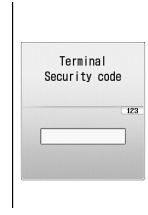
Note

- The settings may not be switched depending on the item.

Authentication

Depending on the function or service to use, a password entry screen (P110) may appear for the authentication purpose. If the entry screen appears, use dial keys to enter the password and press ●[OK]. If correctly entered, you can complete the steps or continue to the next step.

- The entered password appears as "＊" (asterisk) marks.



Password entry screen (Ex.: Terminal security code entry screen)

Note

- To cancel the password entry and close the entry screen, press [−/[Cancel].

Notation for Menu Operations

This manual explains operations to be performed mainly from the Stand-by display. Basically, descriptions of operations are simplified as follows.

Example of Operation Description

1 [−/[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Call display"

❶ ❷ ❸

❶ Key illustration to press for operation.
❷ Icon for the main menu. Use ⊕ to move the cursor to the icon and press ●[Select] to select.
❸ Menu item names. This manual also uses the phrase "Perform the following operation" or "select XXX". Use ⊕ to move the cursor to an item and press ●[Select] to select.

Example of Sub Menu Description

Items displayed on the sub menu may vary depending on the settings or saved items of the FOMA terminal.

[Sort] ❶
Sort files by setting criteria. ❷
[Memory info.]
Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data box".
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card. ❸

❶ Menu item name. Press ⊕/▲/▼ to move the cursor to the item and press ●[Select] to select.
❷ Functional description of the item.
❸ Item names, functional description, and operation description of items displayed when the items are selected.

Note

- If multiple sub menus such as the Redial list screen or Redial detail screen are collectively described, some sub menus that do not actually appear may be included depending on the settings or screens).

Notations

■ **Description of operations starting from other than the Stand-by display**
At the beginning of the operation, the status of the FOMA terminal or the screen to display such as "Ringing" or "List screen" is described.

■ **Omitting ● [Select] in the "Select" operation**
As shown in ❸ in "Example of Operation Description" (P37), when selecting a target function from icons or lists, operations such as ●[Select] are omitted from description.
Similarly, in the cases such as password entry or fixing entered characters, the operations such as ●[OK] are omitted.

■ **Omitting ● in the operation to make □ into ☑**
The operation to select items with □ and press ● to change to ☑ is described as "Mark" omitting the operation of ●.

Selecting Touch Media Menu

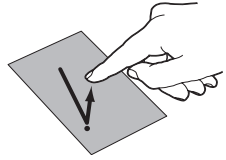
Select a function on Touch media menu screen to utilize FOMA terminal display as touch panel to perform various operations by touching the screen directly.

How to Use Touch Panel

With the Touch media function, you can perform operations by touching the panel directly.

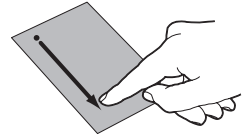
- Touch panel operations are available only when you select a function from the Touch media menu screen.
- The touch panel does not light up by touching the panel when the display backlight is turned off. Press any key other than [−] and [−].

Touch the panel softly and release your finger
Select an item and execute the operation



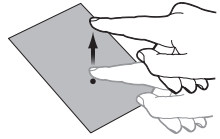
- This operation is described as "**touch**" in this manual.

Keep touching the touch panel while moving your finger
Ex.: To move on the screen with scroll bar



- This operation is described as "**slide**" in this manual.

Touch the panel softly and sweep upward or downward
Ex: List screen with the scroll bar (It may not work on some screens.)



Note

- Do not press the touch panel with a hard object like a pen tip.
- Perform the touch panel operations with your fingertip softly. Operations may not be performed correctly with a hard object such as metal, gloves, or wet hands. (Strong impacts may cause damage to the touch panel.)

Selecting a Function on Touch Media Menu Screen

1 [−] [TOUCH]

If you use Touch media menu for the first time after purchase, a message appears. Touch "OK".

Touch media menu screen

■ Menu list on Touch media menu screen

Function name	Description	Reference
Music	You can play Chaku-Uta Full® songs.	P312
Photo	You can display pictures in thumbnail.	P313
Game	You can play games.	P313
Document	You can display a document file.	P316
1Seg	You can watch 1Seg.	P316
Line Map	You can display line maps in major cities.	P317

Terminating Touch Media

1 While using Touch media,

Return to the Stand-by display. You can no longer operate the terminal by directly touching the screen.

Note

- Touch [↩] while using Touch media to return to the previous screen.
- While using Touch media, operations using ✣ or the Soft keys ([−]/, ●, and [−]) are also available.

Using UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that contains subscription information such as your phone number. You can use communication functions such as calling, mail, and i-mode, etc. with the UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal. You can insert the UIM into other FOMA terminals to use for various purposes. For details on how to handle the UIM, see the UIM instruction manual.

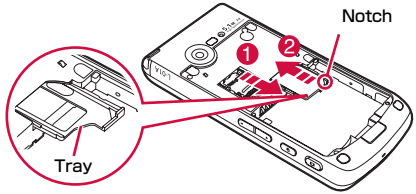
Inserting/Removing

- After operations described in "Turning Power OFF" (P48), turn over the FOMA terminal and remove the battery pack, then insert or remove the UIM.→P43

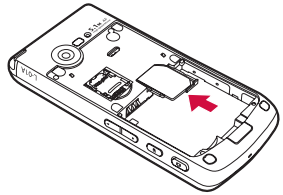
Inserting

When inserting the UIM, close the FOMA terminal and hold it with both hands.

①Hold the edge of the UIM tray and draw it in the direction of ❶, and insert it in the direction of ❷ with the IC chip side of the UIM down



②Insert the tray in the direction of the arrow until it is fixed



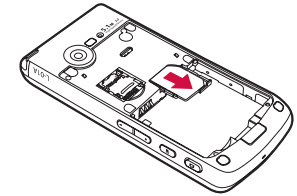
Note

- Do not use excessive force when inserting the UIM to avoid damaging it.

Removing

When removing the UIM, close the FOMA terminal and hold it with both hands.

①Hold the edge of the UIM tray and draw it until it stops, and hold the UIM up softly and remove the UIM in the direction of the arrow



Note

- Do not misplace the removed UIM.

Security Codes

You can set 2 security codes to the UIM: "PIN1 code" and "PIN2 code".→P111

UIM Security Function

The FOMA terminal incorporates the UIM security function (UIM operational restriction function) to protect your data and files.

- When you download data or files from sites or acquire data attached to mail with the UIM inserted into the FOMA terminal, the UIM operational restriction function is automatically set to these data or files.
- Data or files with the UIM operational restriction function set are accessible only when the same UIM used when downloading data or files is inserted.
- The following data/files are restricted:
  - File attached to i-mode mail
  - MessageR/F with file (melodies/images) attached
  - Screen memo
  - Images inserted in Deco-mail or signature
  - i-motion
  - i-αppli (including i-αppli Stand-by display)
  - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
  - Chaku-Uta®/Chaku-Uta Full® song
  - Melody
  - Mail template with motion-restricted data
  - Music&Video Channel program

  * "Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.

- Hereafter, the UIM that was inserted when you downloaded or obtained data or files is referred to as "your UIM" and any other UIM as "another UIM".

Note

- When you set data/file restricted with this function to the Stand-by display, etc., the setting will return to the default if another UIM is inserted or if no UIM is inserted. When you re-insert your UIM, the setting will revert to the original state you set.
- Pre-installed i-αppli programs are not restricted. However, if you delete i-αppli and download it, the newly-downloaded i-αppli will be restricted.
- The following data/files are not restricted with this function:
  - Data/files obtained via infrared communication, a microSD card, or data communication
  - Images captured/edited using this FOMA terminal
- Even if a UIM different from the one used when data/files were obtained is inserted, the data/files restricted with this function can be deleted.
- Settings that are saved on the UIM are as follows:
  - Phone number display
  - PIN1 and PIN2 codes
  - SMS validity period
  - SMS center settings
  - Select language

Continued on next page

- If the UIM is inserted into another i-Channel-compatible terminal, the ticker will not appear. If you press [365] in Stand-by and display the channel list, the latest information is downloaded and the ticker appears.

UIM Types

Note that the specifications of the "UIM (blue)" differ from those of the "UIM (green/white)" as follows:

Function	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Reference
Number of phone number digits to be saved to the UIM Phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P81
WORLD WING	Not available	Available	P374
Service Numbers	Not available	Available	P367

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is DOCOMO's FOMA international roaming service that provides telephone and other types of mobile communications. It allows you to use the same phone number overseas as in Japan by inserting a UIM (green/white) into a FOMA terminal. Note that L-01A can be used only in DOCOMO's 3G roaming service area. Inserting a UIM (green/white) into a GSM-compatible terminal allows you to use it in the GSM service area.

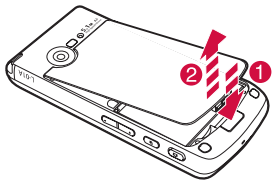
- If you subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, a separate subscription is not required. However, if you declared that you did not require this service at the FOMA service subscription or canceled this service, a separate subscription is required.
- If you initially subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 and have not subscribed to "WORLD WING", a separate subscription is required.
- This service is not available for some billing plans.
- If your UIM (green/white) is lost or stolen overseas, contact DOCOMO immediately and temporarily suspend your subscription. For contact information, see General Inquiries at the back of this manual. Call and communication charges after the FOMA terminal was lost or stolen are still charged to you.

Attaching/Removing Battery Pack

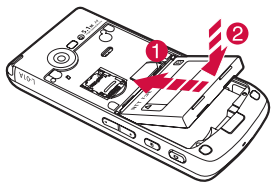
- Turn off the FOMA terminal and hold it in your hand with the terminal closed.

Attaching

①While pressing the Back cover lock button in the direction of ❶, hold the Back cover up in the direction of ❷ to remove it

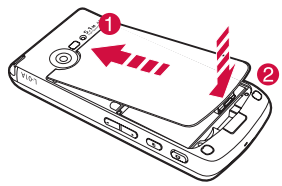


②With the "Ⓑ" side up, align the metal contacts of the battery pack and the FOMA terminal, attach the battery pack in the direction of ❶, then insert the battery pack in the direction of ❷



- When attaching the battery pack, press it underneath the tab and push it down.

③While pushing the Back cover in the direction of ❶, push it in the direction of ❷ until it clicks

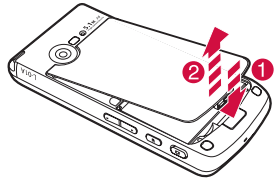


Note

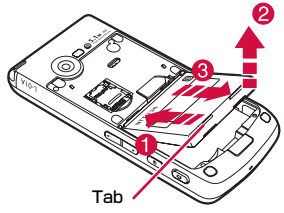
- Attaching the battery pack forcibly with the UIM not properly inserted may damage the UIM.
- Attaching the battery pack forcibly may damage the FOMA terminal.

Removing

①While pressing the Back cover lock button in the direction of ❶, hold the Back cover up in the direction of ❷ to remove it



②While pressing down the battery pack in the direction of ❶, hold the tab up in the direction of ❷, and remove in the direction of ❸



Charging

Use the specified AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) to charge the FOMA terminal. Use the exclusive battery pack L04 for the FOMA terminal.

■ Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable. The available usage time decreases every time the battery pack is recharged.
- When the usable time after each recharging becomes approximately half compared to a new battery pack, it is recommended that the battery pack be replaced with a new one as soon as possible. The battery pack may swell as the battery life is near its end depending on the battery pack condition, but it is not a malfunction.
- If i-αppli or videophone, etc. is used for long periods of time while the battery pack is being charged, the battery life may be shortened.

For environmental protection, be sure to bring the exhausted battery pack to NTT DOCOMO, the sales agent, or recycle shop.

Li-ion00

■ Charging

- For details, see the instruction manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional), and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 can be used only for AC 100V. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 and the FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use support the voltage from AC 100V to 240V.
- The adapter plug shape is for AC 100V (for domestic use). To use an AC adapter that supports from AC 100V to 240V overseas, the compatible conversion plug adapter is required. Do not charge the battery pack with a transformer designed for overseas trips.
- To charge the battery pack with the AC or DC adapter, make sure that the battery pack is inserted into the FOMA terminal.
- Plug or unplug the connector slowly and securely avoiding excessive force.
- Even during a call, the charge start tone sounds from the earpiece.
- If you start charging the fully drained battery pack, the FOMA terminal may not be turned on for a while.
- If you make a long videophone call while charging the FOMA terminal, the inside of the FOMA terminal may become hot and charging may stop. In this case, try charging again later.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long time (several days) with the FOMA terminal power on.

- If the FOMA terminal is left with the power on for long periods of time during charging, you may not be able to use the FOMA terminal for long duration as expected and the low battery alarm may sound, because the FOMA terminal receives the power from the battery pack after charging is completed. In this case, recharge the battery pack properly. Before recharging the battery pack, disconnect the AC adapter or DC adapter from the FOMA terminal and reconnect it.

■ Approximate battery pack usage time

The usage time may vary depending on the operating environment and the battery pack deterioration.

FOMA/3G	Continuous stand-by time	Stationary: Approx. 300 hours Moving: Approx. 270 hours
	Continuous call time	Voice call: Approx. 200 minutes Videophone call: Approx. 100 minutes
1Seg watching time		Approx. 200 minutes

- Continuous call time is approximate duration for calling with normal radio wave reception level.
- Continuous stand-by time is approximate usage time when moving with normal radio wave reception level. Depending on the battery level, set functions, operating environment such as ambient temperature, or radio wave reception level (poor or weak radio wave reception level), stand-by time may be reduced by half. During i-mode communication, the call (communication)/stand-by time becomes shorter. Even if you do not make calls or i-mode communications, the call (communication)/stand-by time shortens when you compose i-mode mail, start i-αppli or i-αppli Stand-by display, perform data communications or Multiaccess, use the camera, play back movie or music, or watch 1Seg, etc.
- Depending on network conditions at your location, usage time may become shorter than the described values.
- Continuous stand-by time in a stationary is the average usage time in stationary state with normal radio wave reception level with the FOMA terminal closed.
- Continuous stand-by time in a moving state is the average usage time in a state combining "stand still", "in motion", and "out of service area" in an area with normal radio wave reception level with the FOMA terminal closed.
- 1Seg watching time is approximate usage time when watching with normal radio wave reception level and using the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01 (optional).
- The call/communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1Seg watching time may shorten depending on the battery level, set functions, operating environment such as ambient temperature, or radio wave reception level (poor or weak radio wave reception level).

■ Estimated battery pack charging time

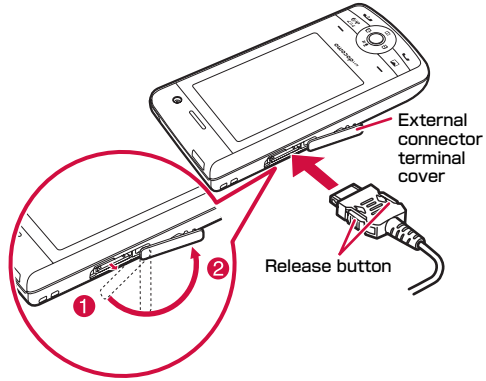
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02	Approx. 200 minutes
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02	Approx. 200 minutes

- The estimated charging time is the duration of time to charge a fully drained battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned off. The charging time becomes longer with the FOMA terminal turned on.

Charging with AC Adapter

1 Open the external connector terminal cover (❶) and flip it over (❷)

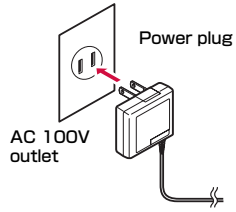
2 Insert the AC adapter connector, with the inscribed arrow side up, straight into the FOMA terminal external connector



Continued on next page

3 Connect the AC adapter plug to an electric outlet

Charging starts and the illumination lights in red.



4 After charging completes, pull the AC adapter connector straight out while pressing the release buttons

When charging completes, the illumination turns off.

- Make sure to insert or pull out the AC adapter straight with the correct side up. Forcibly trying to remove the adaptor may cause damage.

■DC adapter (optional)

The DC adapter supplies power to the FOMA terminal from a cigarette lighter socket (12V/24V) of a car with the battery pack inserted in the FOMA terminal.
For details, see the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 instruction manual.

Note

- When the power is turned on, you can set the FOMA terminal to sound the charge start tone or charge complete tone. The setting of "Popup tone" is applied.→P95
- You can set the FOMA terminal to charge with the Display backlight on.→P103
- While charging, the battery level icon changes in the order of (red) → (red) → (red) → (gray) in an animation display. After charging completes, (gray) lights up.

<AC adapter/DC adapter>

- Use the adapter with the specified power source and voltage. Failing to do so may result in fire or malfunction.

<DC adapter>

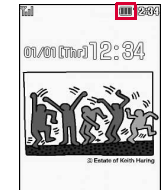
- The DC adapter is exclusively for a negative ground vehicle (12V/24V).
- A fuse (2A) is a consumable item. Purchase a replacement fuse from a car parts shop.
- Do not charge while the car engine is not running to avoid draining the car battery.

Battery level

Checking Battery Level

An icon indicating the battery level (appears at the top of the screen.

(Gray) : The battery is full.
(Gray) : The battery is getting low.
(Red) : The battery is almost running out. Charge the battery.
(Red) : The battery is almost running out. The FOMA terminal will automatically turn off in a moment. Charge the battery.



Note

- When an icon indicating battery level is (red) or (red), camera functions (including the bar code reader) and infrared communication functions are unavailable.
- When the color of the icon indicating battery level is other than (gray) and you activate 1Seg/Music player/SD-Audio player, the notification indicating the low battery level appears (may not appear when the battery level is (gray)).

Checking Battery Level with Sound and Display

The battery level can be checked with display and sound.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Battery level"

A confirmation appears and a tone sounds according to the battery level. The battery level screen disappears in approximately 3 seconds.

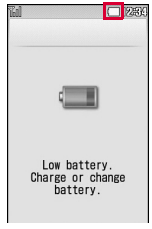
Three beeps : The battery is full.
Two beeps : The battery is getting low.
One beep : The battery is almost running out. Charge the battery.

Note

- When "Dial sound" is set to "Silent" or "Manner mode" is activated, you will not hear the beep.

When the battery is running out

A message indicating that "Low battery. Charge or change battery" appears and the beep tone sounds. (Depending on the settings, the tone may not sound.)
(red) at the top the screen blinks. After a little while, the FOMA terminal turns off automatically.



Power ON/OFF

Turning Power ON/OFF

Turning Power ON

1 When the FOMA terminal is turned off, (for 2+ seconds)

The dial key's backlight and illumination of the FOMA terminal light up, and after the wake-up screen appears, the Stand-by display appears.

Stand-by display

Note

- If the UIM is not inserted, the message "Insert UIM" appears.
- A call may be disconnected even when the FOMA terminal is not in motion and with displayed.
- Setting date and time→P49
- Sending Caller ID→P50
- Changing the Terminal security code→P112

Continued on next page

When "PIN1 code request" is set to "ON"

The PIN1 code entry screen appears.
When the PIN1 (P111) code is entered, the Wake-up screen and then the Stand-by display appear.

When "Lock all" is activated

The Terminal security code entry is required.

When "圏外" appears at the top of the screen

The FOMA terminal is out of service area or in a poor signal area. Move to a location where the icon indicating the signal strength appears. The signal strength is indicated in 4 levels as follows:

→ → →

Strong ⟷ Weak

Viewing the Welcome mail

By default, "♪Welcome Mail♪" is saved.
Press ● repeatedly to display the mail. Alternatively, perform operations in "Displaying Received Mail" (P143) to display the mail.

Turning Power OFF

1 When the FOMA terminal is turned on, (for 2+ seconds) in Stand-by

The exit screen appears and the power is turned off.

Select language

Changing Screen Display to English or Korean

You can switch the display language on the FOMA terminal to Japanese, English, or Korean.

1 [メニュー (Menu)] ▶ (設定 (Settings)) ▶ "Select language" ▶ "日本語 (Japanese)"/ "English"/" 한국어 (Korean)"

Note

- When the language is switched to English or Korean, "Select language" is displayed as "マルチリンガル (Multilingual)".
- The setting of this function is stored on the FOMA terminal and UIM in use. If another UIM is inserted, the setting on the inserted UIM takes priority. If the UIM with Korean language set is inserted into the Korean-incompatible FOMA terminal, the display language is set to Japanese or English.

Set Date&Time

Setting Date and Time

You can set the FOMA terminal to update the time automatically. Also, you can set the local time zone, daylight saving, and date&time.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Date&Time" ▶ "Set Date&Time"

Date&Time settings screen

2 Perform the following operations

- If "Auto time adjust" is set to "ON", you cannot set "Local time zone", "Daylight saving", and "Set date&time".

[Auto time adjust]

Set whether to adjust the time on the FOMA terminal based on the time information from the network.

ON : Adjust the date and time automatically.
OFF : Does not adjust the date and time automatically.

[Local time zone]

Set the time zone for the date and time.
If you press ●[List] to select a country or city from the list, press [−/][<Prev.] or [−\][Next>] to switch the list by page.

[Daylight saving]

Set the daylight saving time.

[Set date&time]

Set the date and time manually.
To set the date, use ◎ to move the cursor to the position and enter the date with the dial keys (pressing ●[Select] in the date entry field displays the calendar screen on which you can set the date. Calendar screen operation→P324).
To set the time, use ◎ to move the cursor to the position to change, enter the date with the dial keys (pressing ● in the time field displays the Time setting screen on which you can enter time using the dial keys and ※).

- Depending on the settings in "Date&Time format" (P107), the display format or order of the date and time may differ.
- You can set the date between 1980/01/01 and 2099/12/31.

3 [−\] [Done]

Note

<Auto time adjust>

- Time or time differences can be adjusted when the power is turned on.
- If time is not adjusted for a while after the power is turned on, turn the power on again.
- Time may not be adjusted depending on the signal strength.
- When using the FOMA terminal overseas, the time or time zone may not be adjusted depending on the network service to use. Also, the time may not be properly displayed. Set the time of the location where you stay with the World time.→P335
- Time is not adjusted when an i-αppli is running or the UIM is not inserted.
- An error of a few seconds may occur.

Caller ID notification

Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

You can set the FOMA terminal to show/hide your Caller ID on the network in advance.

- Your Caller ID (phone number) is important information. Please take care when sending your Caller ID.
- Caller ID notification cannot be set when "圏外" appears.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Caller ID notification"

2 Perform the following operations

[Activate/Deactivate]

Set to show/hide the Caller ID.

▶ "Notify"/"Not notify" ▶ Enter the network security code

[Check setting]

Check the current setting status.

Note

- Your Caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone allows the display of Caller ID.
- You can set the Caller ID notification for each call.→P60

Own number

Checking Your Own Phone Number

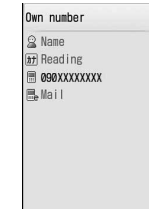
You can check your phone number (own number) saved on the UIM.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Own number)

■ To display the saved detail information

Pressing ●[Detail] and entering the Terminal security code on the Own number screen displays the Own number detail screen. You can also save information other than the own number.→P332

- If a phone number other than your own number, mail address, or URL is saved, you can make a call, create i-mode mail, or access a site by moving the cursor and pressing [－].



Own number screen

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making Calls/Videophone Calls

Videophone Calls ····· 52
Making a Call/Videophone Call ····· 52
Making a Call Using Redial/Received Calls ····· 56
Making a Call Using Recent Calls ··· Recent calls 60
Setting Caller ID to Send/Not to Send for Each Call ····· 184/186 60
Sending Touch-tone Signals ····· Pause 61
Making International Calls ·····WORLD CALL 61
Setting Prefix to Be Added to a Phone Number ·····Prefix dial 65
Making a Call Specifying a Sub Address ·····Sub address setting 65
Setting an Alarm until Connection is Reestablished ····· Reconnect alarm 66
Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear ·····Noise reduction 66

Receiving Calls/Videophone Calls

Receiving a Call/Videophone Call ····· 66
Setting How to Answer Incoming Voice Calls ·····Answer mode 68
Ending/Holding Call by Closing the FOMA Terminal ····· Close setting 69
Adjusting Earpiece Volume during a Call ····· Earpiece volume 69
Adjusting Ring Volume·····Incoming call volume 69

When You Can/Could not Answer a Voice/Videophone Call

Putting a Call on Hold when You Cannot Answer Immediately ·····Holding 70
Setting Answer Holding Tone····· On hold tone 70
Setting Holding Tone ····· Holding tone 70
Using Public Mode (Drive Mode) ····· Public mode (Drive mode) 71
Using Public Mode (Power OFF) ·····Public mode (Power OFF) 72
Checking Missed Calls·····Missed call 72
Recording Voice Messages when You Cannot Answer the Call·····Record message 72
Recording a Message when You Cannot Answer Incoming Call····· Quick Record Message 74

Videophone Settings

Setting Image to Send to the Other Party····· 74
Changing Videophone Settings ··· Videophone set 75

Videophone Calls

The Videophone call can be used with a mobile phone that supports DOCOMO's Videophone call service.

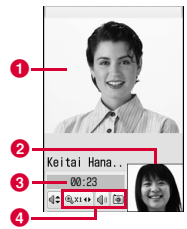
- DOCOMO's Videophone call service complies with "ISO 3GPP*1 standardized 3G-324M*2". DOCOMO's videophone calls cannot connect with mobile phones that support a different system of videophone call.
  - *1 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
    This is a regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for the third generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000).
  - *2 3G-324M
    The international standard of 3rd Generation Mobile Videophone.
- There are 2 different Videophone call communication rates, 64K (64kbps) and 32K (32kbps), this FOMA terminal cannot use Videophone call at 32K.
- This FOMA terminal does not support remote monitoring.

Videophone Call Screen Components

❶ **Main window**
The other party's image appears by default.

❷ **Sub window**
Your image appears by default.

❸ **Call duration**
Displayed in the format of minutes: seconds.



❹ **Settings icons**
Zoom adjustment→P55
Display Hands-free ON/OFF state→P53
Picture mode (Camera image/Substitute image) →P55

Making a Call/Videophone Call

1 Enter a phone number

Phone number entry screen

- Up to 80 digits can be entered. However, only up to 32 digits can be displayed if "Motion Dialing" is set to "OFF", and up to 45 digits if set it to other than "OFF".
- Enter a number from "0" to "99" to view the Phonebook entry of the corresponding memory number. Also, entering a number with 3 digits or more finds phone numbers containing the number from the Phonebook.→P92
- Start from the area code even for a local call.
- ●[Save]: Add a new or extra phone number to the Phonebook.→P82
- [Mail]: Create i-mode mail to the phone number that you entered.→P128

2 To make a voice call

To make a videophone call

[−]/[Menu] ▶ "Video phone call"

A ringing tone sounds from the earpiece, and the "Calling..." dialing screen is displayed until the other party answers the call.

- ●[Spk ON/Spk OFF]: Toggle Hands-free ON or OFF.
- Pressing a dial key/[*]/[#] during a call allows you to send touch-tone signals.

Voice call screen

Videophone call screen

During a voice call

The following icons show the state of the settings during a call.

- / Display Hands-free ON/OFF State
- / Mute/Unmute→P55
- / Receiver volume→P69

During a videophone call

- [−][Image/Camera]: Switch the image to send between the substitute image and the camera image.
- : Switch between the Inner and Outer camera for the image to send to the other party.

3 To terminate the call,

Note

- If you hear the voice guidance for the Caller ID request, make the call again sending Caller ID.
- You cannot switch between a voice/videophone call during a call using this FOMA terminal.
- Closing the FOMA terminal during a call terminates the call when "Close setting" is set to "End the call", and holds the call when it is set to "On Hold". However, if the Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, closing the FOMA terminal will not terminate the call or place the call on hold.
- The low battery alert sounds from the earpiece if the battery becomes low during a call. You can continue the call; however, the call will be terminated momentarily when the FOMA terminal power is automatically turned off.
- This FOMA terminal does not support Hands-free devices via a USB connection (such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01).

<Voice call>

- Press ●[OK] on the Voice call screen, lock is released and the sub menu becomes available. If the sub menu does not appear, lock is automatically activated after approximately 3 seconds.

<Videophone>

- A call cannot be connected if you make a videophone call to a mobile phone that does not support videophone calls, or if the other party's mobile phone is out of service area or turned off. If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone calls, and you have set "Auto redial as voice" to "ON", the call will be disconnected before the connection is established, and the FOMA terminal automatically redials the number as a voice call. However, if the other party uses an ISDN 64k connection, or a videophone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (as of October, 2008), or you dialed a wrong number, the above action may not be taken. Communication charges may apply.
- If you make a videophone call to an emergency number such as "110", "119", or "118", a voice call will be made automatically.
- Incoming i-mode mail or MessageR/F during a videophone call is stored at the i-mode center. SMS can be received even during a videophone call.
- Digital call charge applies for sending the Substitute Image.

Continued on next page

Correcting an entered phone number

To delete an entered digit, use ◉ ▶ ⊕ to move the cursor to the position and press [3分]. To add a digit, use ◉ ▶ ⊕ to move the cursor to the right of the digit and enter the digit with a dial key.

Screen display during dialing

The other party's name is displayed if the other party's phone number is saved in the Phonebook.

If a videophone call could not be made

The following messages appear if a videophone call could not be made (depending on the other party's mobile phone model or subscribed network services, the displayed messages may not describe the actual situation).

Message	Description
Check number, then redial	The phone number is not valid.
Busy	The other party is on a call (this message may appear when the other party's mobile phone is performing packet communication depending on the mobile phone).
	The other party is in packet communication.
Out of service area/power off	The other party's mobile phone is either out of service area or turned off.
Set Caller ID to ON	The Caller ID was not sent (when the call is made to the number for visualnet, etc.).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded.
Redial using voice call	The Call forwarding service is activated, and the forwarding destination does not support videophone calls.
Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed	Your usage fees have exceeded the limit of your plan (Type limit or Family Wide limit).
Please make your call from i-mode	The videophone call was not dialed from the official i-mode site information provider (when the call is made to V-live).
Connection failed	Set "Caller ID notification" to "Notify" and redial. • This message may appear for other reasons, as well.

Phone Number Entry Screen Sub Menu

1 Phone number entry screen (P52) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Video phone call]
Make a videophone call.

[Caller ID]
Set whether the other party receives your Caller ID when you make a call.→P60

[Int. call]
After selecting the country code to make a call, "009130010" (WORLD CALL) and the country code will be inserted at the beginning of the phone number.→P61

[Select prefix]
Add the prefix number at the beginning of the entered phone number. This can be added only once.→P62

[Multi number]
If you subscribe to Multi Number, select the number to use when making a call.→P368

[Compose mail]
Create new i-mode mail to the entered phone number.→P128

[Add to phonebook]
Add an entry to the Phonebook.→P82

[Search phonebook]
Search the Phonebook entry with the entered number.→P85

Voice Call Screen Sub Menu

1 Press ●[OK] on the Voice call screen (P53) ▶ −[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[New call]*1
Place the active call on hold, and dial another party.

[End active call]
Terminate the call.

[Hold]
Place the active call on hold. To cancel, press ☎ or ●[Active].

[Mute/Unmute]
Enable/Disable to mute your voice on the other party's mobile phone.

[Send my info]
Create i-mode mail with Own number entered in the message text.→P128

[Search phonebook]*2
Search for a Phonebook entry.→P85

*1 Not available if you do not subscribe to Call waiting service.
*2 Not available if you make a call using Redial or Received calls, or the Phonebook is accessed. To use this function, terminate applicable functions from the Task list screen.→P320

Videophone Call Screen Sub Menu

1 Videophone call screen (P53) ▶ −[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[End call]
Terminate the call.

[Hold]
Place the active call on hold. To cancel, press ☎ or ●[Active].
If you press −[Image] to cancel the hold, the substitute image will be sent to the other party.

[Substitute image/Camera image]
Switch the image to send between the substitute image and the camera image.

[Camera settings]
Configure the camera for videophone calls. Use ◎ to select an icon. After setting, press −[Close].

Zoom : Zoom the camera image (x1/x2).
Brightness : Adjust the brightness of the camera image (High/Medium/Low).
Night mode : Set this when using the camera in a dark place, etc.

Continued on next page

[Videophone set]

You can set the display and lighting for videophone calls. After setting, press [−][Done].

Display setting

Other - Me	:	Display the other party's image on the main window and your image on the sub window.
Me - Other	:	Display your image on the main window and the other party's image on the sub window.
Other only	:	Display only the other party's image.
Me only	:	Display only your image.

Light

Always ON	:	Always stays on during a call.
Terminal setting	:	In accord with "Backlight" settings.→P103

[Screen size]

Set the display size of the main window.

[Visual preference]

Set quality of the image sent to the other party.

Prefer img qual	:	The image is sent with maximized image quality. This option is effective when there is little motion.
Normal	:	Set the sent image quality and motion to standard.
Prefer motion spd	:	Set priority to motion for sent images. This option is effective when there is a lot of motions.

[Switch camera]

Switch the camera to send the image to the other party between the Inner camera and the Outer camera.

[Search phonebook]*

Search for a Phonebook entry.→P85

[Own number]

Display your phone number (Own number).

* Not available if you make a call using Redial or Received calls, or the Phonebook is accessed. To use this function, terminate applicable functions from the Task list screen.→P320

Making a Call Using Redial/ Received Calls

Redial and the Received call logs can be used to make calls. Also, the Recent calls (both sent and received) can be used to make calls.

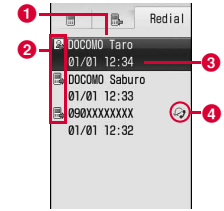
Redial

Calling the Same Party Again

Redial maintains a list of the last 30 voice or videophone calls. The phone number and the calling date and time are stored in the call logs.

- If more than 30 calls are made, the most recent 30 calls are retained.

1 Stand-by display ▶ ○



Redial list screen

❶ **The party's name saved in the Phonebook**
If the caller's name is not saved, the phone number will be displayed.

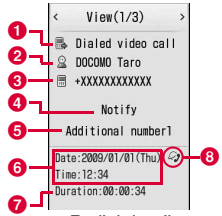
❷ **Outgoing phone call type**
- Dialing a voice call
- Dialing a videophone call

❸ **Call date and time**

❹ **Dialing an international call**
- Calling overseas from Japan
- Calling from overseas during international roaming
- Making an international call from overseas during international roaming

2 Move the cursor to the number to redial ▶ ●[View]

❶ Outgoing phone call type
❷ The name saved in the Phonebook
If the number is not saved in the Phonebook, "Unregistered" is displayed.
❸ The other party's phone number
❹ Caller ID setting when dialing
Appear when you make a call with the Caller ID (P54) set to "Notify".
❺ Multi Number used for dialing*
The number of Multi Number used to dial is displayed by the registered name in "Number setting" (P368).
* Appear when you subscribe to the Multi Number service.
❻ Call date and time
❼ Call duration
❽ Outgoing international call
Calling overseas from Japan
R Calling from overseas during international roaming
Making an international call from overseas during international roaming



Redial detail screen

3 To make a voice call

☎ or ●[Call]

To make a videophone call

−[Menu] ▶ "Video phone call"

Note

- You can make a voice call by selecting an entry on the Redial list screen and pressing ☎. You can also make a videophone call if you press −[Menu] ▶ "Video phone call".
- If the same phone number is saved repeatedly in the Phonebook, the name found first in the Reading search is displayed.
- A call dialed with "184" or "186" will be recorded as a separate Redial entry.
- Press ✉[Mail] on the Redial list screen/Redial detail screen, to create i-mode mail to the phone number on the selected Redial entry.

Redial List Screen/Redial Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Redial list screen (P56)/Redial detail screen (P57) ▶ −[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Voice call]
Make a voice call.

[Video phone call]
Make a videophone call.

[Compose mail]
Create an i-mode mail to the phone number on the Redial list.
→P128

[Add to phonebook]
Add a number to the Phonebook from the Redial list.→P82

[Customize call]
Make a call changing the redial phone number.

Continued on next page

[Change list]*

Switch logs to display.

Recent calls	: Display the Recent call list screen.→P60
Recent mails	: Display the Recent mail list screen.→P155
Received calls	: Display the Received calls list screen.→P58
Received mails	: Display the Received mail list screen.→P155
Sent mails	: Display the Sent mail list screen.→P155

[Delete]

Delete the selected/displayed redial entry.

[Delete all]*

Delete all redial entries.

* Not displayed on the detail screen.

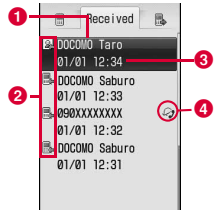
Received calls

Making a Call Using Received Calls

The Received call logs maintains a list of the last 30 incoming calls and videophone calls. Phone numbers and received dates/times are stored in a call logs.

- If more than 30 calls are received, the most recent 30 calls are retained.

1 Stand-by display ▶ ⊙



Received calls list screen

❶ **The party's name saved in the Phonebook**
If the caller's name is not saved, the phone number will be displayed. If the caller did not send the Caller ID, the reason for No Caller ID is displayed.

❷ **Incoming phone call type**
Answered/Missed voice call (including Rejected calls)
Answered/Missed videophone call (including Rejected calls)

❸ **Received date and time**

❹ **Incoming international call**
Incoming international call from overseas
Incoming call during international roaming at overseas
Incoming international call during international roaming at overseas

2 Move the cursor to a log entry ▶ ⊙[View]

❶ **Incoming phone call type**

❷ **The name saved in the Phonebook**
If the phone number is not in the Phonebook, "Unregistered" is displayed, and if the Caller ID was not received, "User unset" is displayed.

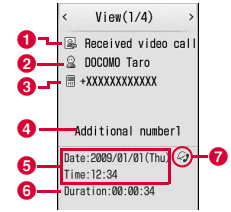
❸ **The other party's phone number**

❹ **Multi Number received***
The received number of Multi Number is displayed as the registered name in "Number setting" (P368).
* Appear when you subscribe to the Multi Number service.

❺ **Received date and time**

❻ **Call duration/Ring time (Missed call)**

❼ **Incoming international call**
Incoming international call from overseas
Incoming call during international roaming at overseas
Incoming international call during international roaming at overseas



Received calls detail screen

3 To make a voice call

[Call] or [Call]

To make a videophone call

[Menu] ▶ "Video phone call"

Note

- You can make a voice call by selecting an entry on the Received calls list screen and pressing [Call]. You can also make a videophone call by pressing [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call".
- The reason for no Caller ID is displayed in the log entry of the call without Caller ID.→P120
- If the same phone number is saved repeatedly in the Phonebook, the name found first in the Reading search is displayed.
- A call log for the number used dial-in service may be displayed differently from the actual number.
- Press [Mail] on the Received calls list/detail screen, to create i-mode mail to the phone number in the selected received call log entry.

Received Calls List Screen/Received Calls Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Received calls list screen (P58)/Received call detail screen (P58) ▶ [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Voice call]
Make a voice call.

[Video phone call]
Make a videophone call.

[Compose mail]
Create i-mode mail to the phone number on the Received call logs.→P128

[Add to phonebook]
Add a number to the phonebook from the Received calls.→P82

[Customize call]
Make a call changing a phone number in the Received call logs.

[Change list]*
Switch logs to display.

Recent calls	: Display the Recent call list screen.→P60
Recent mails	: Display the Recent mail list screen.→P155
Received mails	: Display the Received mail list screen.→P155
Redial	: Display the Redial list screen.→P56
Sent mails	: Display the Sent mail list screen.→P155

[Delete]
Delete the selected/displayed Received call log.

[Delete all]*
Delete all Received call logs.

* Not displayed on the detail screen.

Recent calls

Making a Call Using Recent Calls

Up to 60 incoming and outgoing calls can be recorded in "Recent".

- If more than 60 calls are recorded, the most recent 60 calls are retained.

1 Stand-by display ▶ [Call]

For subsequent steps and the description of screen components, see "Redial" (P56) and "Received calls" (P58) sections.

Note

- The sub menu of the Recent call list screen/detail screen is the same as the one of the Redial and Received call list screen/detail screen.→P57, P59

184/186

Setting Caller ID to Send/Not to Send for Each Call

There are 2 ways to show/hide the Caller ID for each call: adding "184"/"186", or using the sub menu on the Phone number entry screen.

Adding 184/186 to Send/Not to Send Caller ID

1 Enter "184" (Do not notify)/"186" (Notify) ▶ Enter the phone number

2 To make a voice call

[Call]

To make a videophone call

[−] [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call"

Using Sub Menu to Send/Not to Send Caller ID

Example: To use the sub menu of the Phone number entry screen

1 Enter the phone number ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Caller ID" ▶ "Not notify"/"Notify"/"Cancel"

2 To make a voice call

[Call]

To make a videophone call

[−] [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call"

Note

- You can set to show/hide the Caller ID to the network in advance.→P364

Pause

Sending Touch-tone Signals

Enter "P" and a number after the phone number and make a voice call to send the number after "P" as touch tone signal (DTMF). You can use this for services such as online ticket reservation or bank balance inquiry.

- The signal may not be received depending on the device on the receiving side.

1 Enter the phone number ▶ Press [*] 3 times and enter "P" ▶ Enter the number to send ▶ [call]

After the call is connected, the number after "P" is displayed. The displayed number is sent by pressing [call].

WORLD CALL

Making International Calls

WORLD CALL is an international calling service available on DOCOMO mobile phones.
If you subscribe to FOMA service, then you also subscribe "WORLD CALL" together. (However a customer who subscribe to the service without "WORLD CALL" is the exception.)

- This service is available in approximately 240 countries and regions around the world.
- Charges for "WORLD CALL" are added to the monthly FOMA service call charges.
- No initial fee nor fixed monthly charges apply.
- This service is not available with some billing plans.
- Even if the Caller ID notification is set, the Caller ID may not be notified or phone number is not displayed correctly, depending on the telecommunication carrier. In this case, you cannot make a call using the Received calls screen.
- For details on WORLD CALL, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.
- When using international carriers other than DOCOMO, please contact the carrier directly.

If an overseas party uses a specific 3G mobile phone, you can make an International videophone call to that party by pressing [−/](Menu] ▶ "Video phone call" after the following dialing procedures.

- For information on the countries where connection can be made and telecommunication carriers, visit the DOCOMO's International service web site.
- The other party's image displayed on the FOMA terminal may blur, and the call may not be connected depending on the other party's terminal.

Making an International Call by Entering the Phone Number

Enter a phone number in the following order.

1 Enter "010 - Country code - Area code (City code) - Other party's phone number"

- If the Area code (City code) starts with "0", remove "0". (In a few countries/regions such as Italy, "0" must not be removed).
- Alternatively, enter 009130 - 010 - Country code - Area code (City code) - Other party's phone number.

2 [call]

■ To make an international videophone call
[−/](Menu] ▶ "Video phone call"

Making an International Call Using "+"

Entering "+" at the beginning of a phone number replaces "+" with an international access code automatically.

- The WORLD CALL (009130010) is set to be added automatically by default.→P63

1 Press [0] (for 1+ seconds) to enter "+" ▶ Enter "Country code - Area code (City code) - Phone Number"

- You can also press [*] twice to input "+".
- If the Area code (City code) starts with "0", remove "0". (In a few countries/regions such as Italy, "0" must not be removed).

2

Dial : Make a call after converting "+" into an international access code.

Original number : Make a call without converting "+" into an international access code.

Cancel : Cancel dialing.

Dialed call confirmation screen

■ **To make an international videophone call**
Press [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call".

3 Select a dialing method

Note

- This option is available only inside the FOMA network service area.
- If the phone number starts with "+81", "+" will not be converted into an international access code.

Making an International Call Adding International Access Code

You can select an international access code from the sub menu and add it to the entered phone number.

1 Enter "Country code - Area code (City code) - other party's phone number"

- If the Area code (City code) starts with "0", remove "0". (In a few countries/regions such as Italy, "0" must not be removed.)

2 [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Select prefix" ▶ Select an international access code

The selected international access code is inserted at the beginning of the entered phone number.

3

■ **To make an international videophone call**
Press [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call".

Note

- By default, WORLD CALL (009130010) is registered to "Prefix 1".→P65

Making an International Call Easily

The International dial settings can be changed.

- Even if the Caller ID notification is set, the Caller ID may not be notified or phone number is not displayed correctly, depending on the telecommunication carrier. In this case, you cannot make a call using the Received calls.

Setting to Add the International Access Code Automatically <Auto assist setting>

You can set whether to add an international access code automatically instead of "+" when you make a call by entering "+" at the beginning of the phone number.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l dial assist" ▶ "Auto assist setting" ▶ "Auto"/"OFF"

Auto: Convert "+" automatically to the number specified in the IDD prefix setting.

OFF : "+" will not be converted.

Setting International Access Codes <IDD prefix setting>

When "Auto assist setting" is set to "Auto", specify the international access code to be added automatically.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l dial assist" ▶ "IDD prefix setting"

2 Perform the following operations

[IDD prefix name]
Enter IDD prefix name of International call used for Auto assist setting.

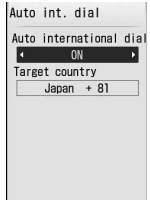
[IDD prefix code]
Enter IDD prefix code of International call used for Auto assist setting.

3 [Done]

Setting to Add Assist of Country Code Automatically <Auto international dial>

Set whether to automatically replace leading "0", if entered, of a phone number with "+ Country code" during international roaming. Also, you can specify the Country code to be added automatically.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l dial assist" ▶ "Auto international dial" ▶ Perform the following operations



Auto international dial screen

[Auto international dial]
Set whether to add a Country code automatically.

[Target country]
Set a Country code to add.

2 [Done]

Registering a Country Code <Country code list>

Up to 50 Country codes required to make an international call can be saved.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l dial assist" ▶ "Country code list"

Country code list screen

2 [−] [Add] ▶ Perform the following operations

- ●[Edit]: Edit the selected county code.

[Country name]
Register a name of the Country code. Up to 7 full-pitch or 14 half-pitch characters can be entered.

[Country code]
Up to 5 digits can be stored.

3 [−] [Done]

Country Code List Screen Sub Menu

1 Country code list screen (P64) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Go to Step 2 in "Registering a Country Code <Country code list>" (P64).

[Edit]
Edit the selected Country code. Go to Step 2 in "Registering a Country Code <Country code list>" (P64).

[Delete]
Delete the selected Country code.

[Delete all]
Delete all Country codes.

Note

<Edit>
- You can edit the pre-installed Country codes.

<Delete>
- You cannot delete the Country code that is set to be added automatically in "Auto international dial" (P63).

Prefix dial

Setting Prefix to Be Added to a Phone Number

Up to 3 numbers (prefixes) to be added to the beginning of the phone number such as an international access code, "184", or "186" can be saved.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Prefix dial"

2 Select a Prefix entry field ▶ Enter the number ▶ [−] [Done]

- Up to 10 digits can be entered as a prefix.

Note

- Do not add Pauses and the such to the prefix. If they are present, the call cannot be connected with prefix.

Sub address setting

Making a Call Specifying a Sub Address

You can set whether digits after "✱" is identified as a sub address when entered a phone number with "✱". A sub address is used to access a specific device connected to an ISDN line or to select contents on "V-live".

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Sub address setting" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

ON : Identify the address after "✱" as a sub address.

OFF : The address after "✱" is not identified as a sub address.

Note

- "✱" is not identified as a delimiter of a sub address if:
  - "✱" is entered at the beginning of the phone number.
  - A specific number such as "184" or "186" is entered at the beginning of the phone number and "✱" is entered right after it.

Reconnect alarm

Setting an Alarm until Connection is Reestablished

You can set an alarm that keeps sounding until a voice or videophone call is reconnected when the call was disconnected due to weak signals.

1 [−][Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Call feature" ▶ "Reconnect alarm" ▶ Select an Alarm

Alarm OFF : Set not to sound an alarm.
Low alarm : Set to low alarm.
High alarm : Set to high alarm.

Note

- Available duration for reconnection varies depending on the status of usage and signal.
- If the signal suddenly worsens, the call may be disconnected without the alarm sounding.
- The billed airtime will continue during the reconnection attempt.
- If the call is disconnected, the other party will hear nothing.

Noise reduction

Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear

Noise reduction suppresses background noises. The other party can hear your voice clearer even in a noisy place.

1 [−][Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Call feature" ▶ "Noise reduction" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

ON : Activate Noise reduction.
OFF : Deactivate Noise reduction.

Receiving a Call/Videophone Call

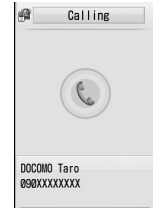
1 An incoming call arrives

The ring tone sounds.

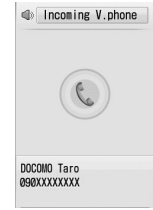
- : Place the call on hold.→P70

■ During a videophone call

- [Image]: Answer the call using the substitute image.



Voice call incoming call screen



Videophone call incoming call screen

2 or [−][Answer]

Answer the call.

- [Spk ON/Spk OFF]: Toggle Hands-free ON or OFF.
- Pressing a dial key/[✱]/[#] during a call allows you to send touch-tone signals.

■ During a videophone call

- [−][Image/Camera]: Switch the image to send between the alternate image and the camera image.
- : Switch between the Inner and Outer camera for the image to send to the other party.

3 To terminate the call,

When the caller sent the Caller ID

When the caller is registered in the Phonebook, the phone number and registered name appear.

When the caller did not send the Caller ID

The reason for no Caller ID is displayed instead of a phone number.→P120

Note

- The incoming call actions such as a ring tone or vibration vary depending on the settings or the saved information in the Phonebook.→P78, P94, P96
- When "Manner mode" is activated, the ring tone does not sound. However, if "Original manner" is activated, incoming call is notified according to the settings.→P99
- Closing the FOMA terminal during a call terminates the call when "Close setting" is set to "End the call", and holds the call when it is set to "On hold". However, if the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, closing the FOMA terminal will not terminate the call or place the call on hold.
- If you subscribe to the Voice mail, Call waiting or Call forwarding service, and set "Arrival call act" to "Answer" and "Set in-call arrival act" to "Activate", in-call arrival tone sounds when a call arrives during another call. If the tone sounds during a call, the network services are available.→P365
  However, the tone does not sound while a call is placed on response hold, or a message is being recorded (P73) because calls cannot arrive under these situations.
- When the Public mode (Drive mode) is activated, an incoming call is not indicated (the ring tone does not sound, either). Also, even if a call arrives when the display is turned off, the display backlight will not be turned on.
- If you subscribe to Multi Number, the name registered in "Number setting" (P368) appears according to the number received.
- You can enable "Set mute ring(sec.)" to delay the incoming call actions for a call made from the other party not saved in the Phonebook or without the Caller ID.→P121
- Use the following functions to reject incoming calls from a caller not saved in the Phonebook or from a specific caller.
  - Reject unknown→P122
  - Reject on List→P118
- You cannot switch between a voice/videophone call during a call using this FOMA terminal.
- The low battery alert sounds from the earpiece if the battery becomes low during a call. You can continue the call; however, the call will be terminated momentarily when the FOMA terminal power is automatically turned off.
- This FOMA terminal does not support Hands-free devices via a USB connection (such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01).

<Voice call>

- Press ●[OK] on the Voice call screen, lock is released and the sub menu becomes available. If the sub menu does not appear, lock is automatically activated after approximately 3 seconds.
- When "Answer mode" is set to "Slide up", you can answer a call by opening the terminal. If it is set to "Any key answer", you can answer a call by pressing any dial key, [*] key, or [#] key.→P68

<Videophone call>

- When the Voice mail service is activated with a videophone call, an SMS notifies you of a new message.
- Even if the Call forwarding service is activated, an incoming videophone call is not forwarded if the forwarding destination is not a videophone device supporting 3G-324M. Check the capabilities of the forwarding destination device before setting Call forwarding.
- Incoming i-mode mail or MessageR/F during a videophone call is stored at the i-mode center. SMS can be received even during a videophone call.
- You cannot receive the communication speed of 32K (32kbps) videophone calls.

Incoming Call Screen Sub Menu

1 Press ●[OK] on the Incoming call screen (P66) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Voice mail][*1]
Connect the incoming call to the Voice mail service center.

[Call rejection]
Reject an incoming call and hang up.

[Call forwarding][*2]
Forward an incoming call to the specified number.

[Silent][*3]
Stop the ring tone or vibration.
Press [📞] to answer the call. Press [−][Reject] to reject the call.

*1 Not available unless you subscribe to the Voice mail service.
*2 Not available unless you subscribe to the Call forwarding service or you have specified a forwarding number.
*3 Not displayed when "Manner mode" is activated, or "Original manner" is activated with its setting "Incoming call vol." set as "Silent".

Answer mode

Setting How to Answer Incoming Voice Calls

You can set to answer an incoming voice call by pressing a dial key in addition to opening the FOMA terminal (Slide up) or pressing [📞] or [−][Answer].

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ ⚙(Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Answer mode"

2 Perform the following operations

[Slide up]
You can answer a call by opening the FOMA terminal.

[Any key answer]
You can answer a call by pressing a dial key, [*], [#] in addition to [📞] or [−][Answer].

[SEND key only]
You can answer a call by pressing [📞] or [−][Answer].

Close setting

Ending/Holding Call by Closing the FOMA Terminal

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Call feature" ▶ "Close setting" ▶ Select conditions when the terminal is closed

End the call: End the call.
Continue : Continue the call.
On hold : Place the active call on hold.

Earpiece volume

Adjusting Earpiece Volume during a Call

The earpiece volume can be adjusted in 7 levels from 1 to 7.

1 Voice/Videophone call screen (P53) ▶ ▲/▼

- ▲: Increase the volume.
- ▼: Decreases the volume.

Note

- The adjusted earpiece volume will be retained after the call.
- "Receiver volume" in "Volume" (P96) is also changed.

Incoming call volume

Adjusting Ring Volume

The ring volume can be adjusted in 8 levels from 0 to 7 or set to "Step up"(increase the sound volume progressively).

1 Stand-by display ▶ ▲/▼

The Volume setting screen appears, and every time you press ▲/▼, the volume is changed.

- If no action is taken for approximately 2 seconds, the Volume setting screen closes automatically and the volume is set.

Note

- This is not available when Manner mode is activated.
- "Incoming call" in "Volume" (P95) is also changed.

Holding

Putting a Call on Hold when You Cannot Answer Immediately

1 Incoming call screen (P66) ▶

The tone set in "On hold tone" (P70) is played. The image set in "Response hold image" (P75) appears for videophone calls.

Voice call response hold screen

Videophone call response hold screen

2 When you can resume the call

- You can also cancel the hold on a videophone call by pressing ● [Answer]. If you press [−][Image] to cancel the hold, the alternate image will be sent to the other party.

■To terminate a voice call/videophone call

Press .

Note

- The other party is charged during a hold.
- If you subscribe to the Voice mail service/Call forwarding service, you can connect the incoming call to the Voicemail service center/forward the incoming call to the specified phone number.→P358, P362

On hold tone

Setting Answer Holding Tone

You can select to play one of the 3 answer holding tones (guidance) to the caller when you place the incoming call on hold.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "On hold tone" ▶ "Hold tone 1"/"Hold tone 2"/"Hold tone 3"

- [−][Play]: Play back the hold tone.

Holding tone

Setting Holding Tone

You can select one of the 3 holding tones to play when you place the call on hold.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Call feature" ▶ "Holding tone" ▶ "Hold tone 1"/"Hold tone 2"/"Hold tone 3"

- [−][Play]: Play back the hold tone.

Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)

Public mode (Drive mode) is an automatic response service to assist in observing manners in public locations. When Public mode (Drive mode) is activated, the voice guidance is played to the caller indicating that you cannot answer the call as you are driving or at a place where you cannot talk (such as on a train, bus, or in a movie theater), and the call is disconnected.

- You can set or cancel Public mode (Drive mode) only in Stand-by (even when "圏外" is displayed).
- This option is not available during data communication.
- Voice mail service (*1), Call forwarding service (*1), and Caller ID request service (*2) take priority over Public mode.
  - *1 Voice calls with the ring time set to other than "0 Sec." the service is activated after the guidance for Public mode.
  - *2 If the other party sends the Caller ID, Public mode is activated.
- Public mode is not activated for calls you reject using Nuisance call blocking service.

1 ✱(1+ seconds)

When a call arrives, the voice guidance is played in Japanese saying that "The person you are calling is currently driving or in the area where mobile phones should not be used. Please call again later".

When activating Public mode (Drive mode)

When a call arrives to your FOMA terminal, the ring tone does not sound. 🔔 appears on the Stand-by display, and the call is recorded in the Received call log.
The voice guidance indicating that you are driving or you are at a location where you cannot use mobile phones is played to the caller, and the call is disconnected.

Deactivating Public mode (Drive mode)

Press ✱ (for 1+ seconds) in Stand-by.

Note

- 🚗 appears at the top of the screen when Public mode (Drive mode) is activated.
- Even when Public mode (Drive mode) is activated, you can make calls as usual.
- If a call without Caller ID arrives when the Caller ID request service is set, the voice guidance of Caller ID request is played (instead of Public mode (Drive mode) voice guidance).
- If Manner mode is activated concurrently, Public mode (Drive mode) settings take precedence.
- Tones other than from operations (ring tones or alarms, etc.) do not sound when Public mode (Drive mode) is activated.
- If "Alarm", "Schedule", or "To do" alarm reaches the specified time while Public mode (Drive mode) is activated, the alarm tone does not sound and the alarm screen and illumination does not appear. The alarm setting remains and the icon on the Stand-by display is still displayed.→P320
- If mail arrives when Public mode (Drive mode) is activated, incoming mail actions such as sounding the ring tone, or vibrating the FOMA terminal will not take place.

Public mode (Power OFF)

Using Public Mode (Power OFF)

Public mode (Power OFF) is an automatic response service to assist in observing manners in public locations. When Public mode (Power OFF) is set, when a call arrives while the power is turned off, the voice guidance is played to the caller indicating that you are at a place where mobile phones must be turned off (such as in hospitals, in aircraft, or near priority seats on a train) and cannot answer the call, and the call is disconnected.

1 Enter "✳25251" ▶ [call]

Public mode (Power OFF) is activated (there is no change for the Stand-by display).
After Public mode (Power OFF) is set, when a call arrives while the power is turned off, the voice guidance is played in Japanese saying that "The person you are calling is currently in the area where mobile phone use is prohibited and cannot answer the call. Please call again later".

When activating Public mode (Power OFF)

Public mode (Power OFF) is activated until it is deactivated by dialing "✳25250". Turning the power on does not deactivate the mode.
Public mode (Power OFF) voice guidance is played even when you are out of service area or in a place with weak signals. The voice guidance indicating that you are at a location where you must turn the terminal off is played to the caller, and the call is disconnected.

Deactivating Public mode (Power OFF)

Enter "✳25250" and press [call].

Checking the status of Public mode (Power OFF)

Enter "✳25259" and press [call].

Missed call

Checking Missed Calls

If you could not answer a call, the Missed call notification screen appears on the Stand-by display. The Received calls list screen can be accessed from the icon to check the caller.

1 An incoming call terminates

The Missed call icon appears on the Stand-by display. The number of the icon represents number of missed calls.

Missed call icon
(The number indicates the number of calls)

2 ● ▶ Use ✣ to select [missed calls] 1

The Received calls list screen (P58) appears.

Note

- After displaying the Received calls list screen, [missed calls] 1 will disappear. You can also select [missed calls] 1 and press [3 def] for 1+ seconds to clear the icon.

Record message

Recording Voice Messages when You Cannot Answer the Call

When Record message is activated, if you cannot answer a voice call, the voice guidance is played and the caller's message is recorded.

- Up to 5 messages and approximately 15 seconds per message can be recorded.
- Record message does not start when a videophone call arrives. The FOMA terminal answers the call in the normal way.

Setting Record Message

1 [Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "Record message" ▶ "Record msg. setting"

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

[Activate record msg.]
When activate Record message, set to "ON".

[To answer]*
Enter the time after a call arrives and before Record message starts between 0 and 120 seconds.

[Answer message]*
Select an answer message.
- [Play]: You can listen to the answer message.

* Available when "Activate record msg." is set to "ON".

3 [Done]

Note

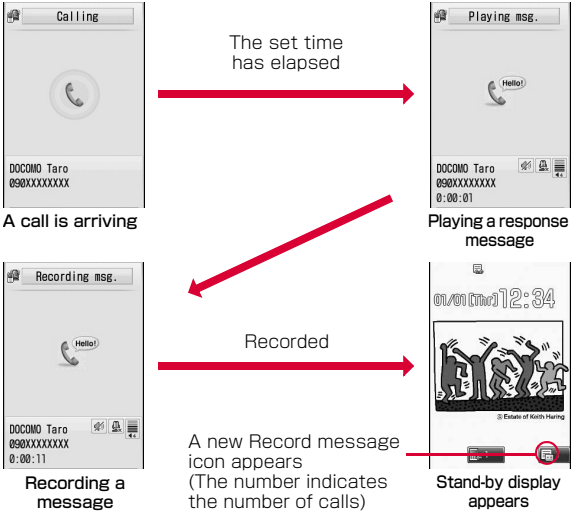
- appears at the top of the screen when the Record message is activated.

<To answer>

- If the response time set is longer than the ring time set for the Voice mail/Call forwarding services, a network service takes precedence.
- If the response time is set shorter than the time set in "Set mute ring(sec.)" (P121), Record message starts without ringing.

When a Call Arrives with Record Message Activated

When a voice call arrived, the caller's voice is recorded.



■ **To talk with the caller while the response message is played or a message is being recorded**
Press .

■ **To play a recorded message**
In Stand-by, press ● ▶ to select or press for 1+ seconds to display the Record message list screen (P74).
- will disappear after the recorded message is deleted.

Continued on next page

Note

- "Record message" is disabled when "圏外" is displayed, the terminal is off or Public mode (Drive mode) is set.
- If a call arrives when the response message is being played or when a message is being recorded in Record message, the call is rejected.

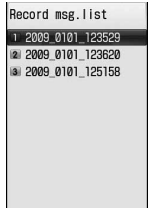
Playing/Deleting Record Message

1 [−][Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "Record message" ▶ "Record msg. list"

- [−][Delete]: The selected recorded message is deleted.

■ To delete all recorded messages

[−][Menu] on the Record message list screen ▶ "Delete all".



Record msg. list screen

2 Move the cursor to the recorded message ▶ ●[Play]

The recorded message is played.

- ●[Stop]: Stop playing the message.
- [2ABC]: Return to the Record message list screen.
- Use ◎/[1]/[3] to adjust the volume.

Quick Record Message

Recording a Message when You Cannot Answer Incoming Call

Even when Record message is disabled, you can record the caller's message with easy operation.

1 Incoming call screen (P66) ▶ [3] (for 1+ seconds)

Caller's voice will be recorded after streaming a guidance.

Note

- If 5 messages are already recorded, Record message will not start and the caller's message cannot be recorded.

Setting Image to Send to the Other Party

Substitute image

Setting Substitute Image

1 [−][Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Videophone" ▶ "Substitute image" ▶ "Default"/"Select image" ▶ [−][Done]

- When "Select image" is selected, press ◎ ▶ ●[List] in the "Select file" field and then select from the images saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276

Response hold image

Setting Response Hold Image

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Videophone" ▶ "Response hold image" ▶ "Default"/"Select image" ▶ [−\] [Done]

- When "Select image" is selected, press ◉ ▶ ●[List] in the "Select file" field and then select from the images saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276

Holding image

Setting Holding Image

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Videophone" ▶ "Holding image" ▶ "Default"/"Select image" ▶ [−\] [Done]

- When "Select image" is selected, press ◉ ▶ ●[List] in the "Select file" field and then select from the images saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276

Videophone set

Changing Videophone Settings

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Videophone" ▶ "Videophone set"

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

[Display setting]

Set images to be displayed on the main window or sub window for videophone calls.

Other - Me	: The other party's image is displayed on the main window, and your image on the sub window.
Me - Other	: Your image is displayed on the main window, and the other party's image on the sub window.
Other only	: Display only the other party's image.
Me only	: Display only your image.

[Send camera image]

Set whether to send your image to the other party. When "OFF" is set, the other party receives the substitute image.

[Screen size]

Set the display size of the main window.

[Visual preference]

Set quality of the image sent to the other party.

Prefer img qual	: The image is sent with maximized image quality. This option is effective when there is little motion.
Normal	: Set the sent image quality and motion to standard.
Prefer motion spd	: Set priority to motion for sent images. This option is effective when there is a lot of motions.

[Light]

Set light setting for the screen during a call.

Always ON	: Always stays on during a call.
Terminal setting	: In accord with "Backlight" settings.→P103

Continued on next page

[Auto redial as voice]
You can set whether to automatically redial with voice call if the mobile phone of the other party does not support videophone call.

[Hand-free switch]
Set whether to use Hands-free during a videophone call.

3 [−] [Done]

Phonebook

Phonebook Available for the FOMA Terminal ··· 78
Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook ··· 78
Adding Entries to UIM (FOMA Card) Phonebook ··· 81
Adding Phonebook Entries from Received/Dialed Calls etc. ····· 82
Saving/Changing a Group Name ····· 83
Making a Call from Phonebook ····· Search phonebook 85
Viewing Phonebook Entries ····· 87
Editing Phonebook Entries ····· 90
Deleting Phonebook Entries ····· 90
Checking Phonebook Storage Status ····· No. of phonebook 91
Setting Phonebook ····· 91
Making a Call with a Few Key Operation ····· Quick Search 92
Displaying Call/Mail History ····· 92

Phonebook Available for the FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal contains 2 types of Phonebooks: one is the Phonebook saved on the FOMA terminal and the other is the UIM Phonebook saved on the UIM. The following items can be saved/set for each Phonebook.

Item		FOMA terminal Phonebook	UIM Phonebook
Number of entries		Up to 1,000 entries*	Up to 50 entries
Entry details	Name (Reading)	1 entry	1 entry
	Phone number	5 entries	1 entry
	Mail address	3 entries	1 entry
	Group	31 groups	11 groups
	Image	1 entry	Not available
	Other settings	Secret code, Ring tone, Mail tone, etc.	Not available

* Depending on the saved details, 1,000 entries may not be saved.

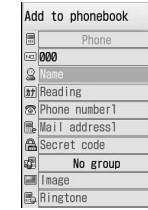
Note

- If you insert your UIM into another FOMA terminal, you can use your Phonebook data on the UIM.

Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook

- Note that the service counter such as a DOCOMO shop may not be able to copy Phonebook data from your existing FOMA terminal to the new one, depending on the specifications.

1 Stand-by display ▶ (for 1+ seconds)



Add to phonebook screen (FOMA terminal)

2 Perform the following operations

[(Save to)]
Select the save location. This section explains the case where "Phone" is selected as the save location. When "UIM" is selected as the save location, the Add to UIM Phonebook screen appears.→P81

[(Memory No.)]
The smallest un-assigned number is allocated automatically. You can also change it to your favorite number from 000 to 999 manually.

[Name]
Enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

[Reading]
Enter or edit as required. Enter up to 32 half-pitch characters with Katakana, alphanumeric characters, or symbols.

[Phone number]
Enter up to 26 digits.

▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Select an icon

- On the Phone number entry screen, you can press [−/][Menu] to select "Int. call", "Select prefix", or "Cancel". To cancel the entry, press [−\][Cancel].

[Mail address]
Enter up to 50 half-pitch characters with alphanumeric characters or symbols.

▶ Enter a mail address ▶ Select an icon

[Secret code]*1
Set the secret code.

▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Select an icon for the phone number/mail address ▶ Enter the secret code

- On the Secret code screen, press [−\][Release] to cancel the setting.

[(Select a group)]
Select one from "No group" or "グループ1 (Group 1)" to "グループ30 (Group 30)". Groups can be used for the Group search (P86).

[Image]*3
Set an image or i-motion movie to be displayed when making/receiving calls or when checking a Phonebook entry.

My picture	:	Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276
i-motion	:	Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
Take picture	:	Activate the camera, and set the captured still image.→P209
Terminal setting*2	:	Use "Call display" settings.→P101

[Ringtone]*3
Select a ring tone for incoming voice/videophone call from the caller saved in the Phonebook.

Music	:	Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data box".→P256 Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251).
Melody	:	Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data box".→P293
i-motion	:	Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
Terminal setting*2	:	Use "Select ring tone" settings.→P94

[Mail ringtone]
Select a ring tone for incoming mail from the sender saved in the Phonebook.

- Available items are the same as for "Ringtone".

[URL]
Enter up to 256 half-pitch characters.

[Zip code]
Enter up to 7 half-pitch characters.

[Home address]
Enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

[Company name]
Enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

[Job title]
Enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

Continued on next page

[Co. zip code]
Enter up to 7 half-pitch characters.

[Co. address]
Enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

[Memo]
Enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

[(Birthday)]
Enter birthday.

[Substitute image]
Set the substitute image for a videophone call.

Data box : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276

Terminal setting : Use "Call display" settings.→P101

[(Secret)]
This option appears when "Secret mode" (P118) is set to "ON". Set to "ON" if you save the Phonebook entry to be created as secret data.

*1 For details about the Secret code, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

*2 If a movie/i-motion movie with video/sound is set for "Select ring tone" (P94) and "Call display" (P101), and the relevant voice/videophone call arrives, the default sound or video is played.

*3 If you set a movie/i-motion movie with video/sound either for "Image" or "Ringtone", the same movie/i-motion movie will be set for the other item automatically.

3 [−] **[Done]**

Note

<Secret code>
- If the mail address is saved to the Phonebook as "Phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you may not send mail or reply to that contact. Change the mail address format to "Phone number@docomo.ne.jp" first, then register the Secret code.

<Image>
- Images up to 100KB can be set.

<Secret>
- When "Secret mode" (P118) is set to "Secret data only mode", the Phonebook entry is saved as secret data.
- The secret entry is displayed only when "Secret mode" is set to "ON" or "Secret data only mode".
- Secret entries cannot be saved to the UIM Phonebook.
- The names saved in the secret entries are displayed in the Redial log, history, or mail list/detail screen only when "Secret mode" is set to "ON" or "Secret data only mode". The phone numbers and mail addresses are displayed when "Secret mode" is set to "OFF".
- When "Secret mode" is set to "OFF" and you receive a call or mail from the secret contact, the name or image saved to the Phonebook is not displayed and the set ring tone does not sound.

Adding Entries to UIM (FOMA Card) Phonebook

1 Add to phonebook screen (P78) ▶ (Save to) field ▶ "UIM"

Add to phonebook screen (UIM)

2 Perform the following operations

[(Save to)]
Select the save location. When "Phone" is selected as the save location, the FOMA terminal Phonebook entry screen appears.→P81

[Name]
Enter up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, alphanumeric characters, or Katakana, etc.

[Reading]
Enter or edit as required. Enter up to 12 full-pitch or 25 half-pitch characters. Enter with full-pitch Katakana, half-pitch alphanumeric characters, or half-pitch symbols.

[Phone number]
For a green/white UIM, up to 26 digits can be entered. For a blue UIM, up to 20 digits can be entered.
- On the Phone number entry screen, you can press [−/][Menu] to select "Int. call", "Select prefix", or "Cancel". To cancel the entry, press [−][Cancel].

[Mail address]
Enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. Enter with alphanumeric characters or symbols.

[(Select a group)]
Select one from "No group" or "グループ1 (Group 1)" to "グループ10 (Group 10)". Groups can be used for the Group search (P86).

3 [−][Done]

Adding Phonebook Entries from Received/Dialed Calls etc.

You can save entries to the Phonebook from the list or detail screen of the call history, mail, or message that contains a phone number or mail address. You can also save a currently entered/displayed phone number, etc. on the Phone number entry screen or site, etc.

1 Display the screen containing items to save

■**To save phone numbers from the Redial list screen (P56)/Redial detail screen (P57)/Received calls list screen (P58)/Received calls detail screen (P58)**
Press [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Add to phonebook".
- To save phone numbers from the Redial list screen/Received calls list screen, select the target number first.
- If the phone number is already saved in the Phonebook, "Add to phonebook" is not available.

■**To save phone numbers from the Phone number entry screen**
Press ● [Save].

■**To save a sender or recipient mail address**
On the Mail detail screen, press [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Save" ▶ "From Address".
- If there are several mail addresses, select the one to save first.

■**To save addresses/phone numbers included in the body text in a mail**
Move the cursor to the address/phone number to save to the Phonebook ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Save" ▶ "No./addr. in body".

■**To save addresses/phone numbers displayed on a site/Screen memo**
Move the cursor to the address/phone number to save to the Phonebook ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Add to Phonebook" ▶ "Yes".

2 Perform the following operations

[New registration]
Add a new entry to the Phonebook. Go to Step 3.
- The Add to phonebook screen appears with the new entry entered.

[Add registration]
Save additional items to the saved entry. Press [−/] [Menu] on the Phonebook entry screen to change the Phonebook search mode.
→P85

▶ **Select a Phonebook entry to which the item is to be added**
- The Add to phonebook screen appears with the item added.
- If you add an item to the UIM Phonebook entry, the Add to phonebook screen appears with the items overwritten when the above step is performed.

3 Save/Modify the Phonebook entry ▶ [−] [Done]

- For saving procedure, refer to Step 2 in "Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" (P78).
- When saving additional data to an entry, the confirmation whether to overwrite appears. Select "Yes" to overwrite.

Note
- The data can also be saved to the Phonebook from the Scanned data screen with the bar code reader.→P220
- If you attempt to save characters longer than the maximum number of characters allowed, a warning screen notifying of the problem appears, then, the truncated string will be displayed on the Add to phonebook screen.

Saving/Changing a Group Name

You can group the entries on the FOMA terminal Phonebook and UIM Phonebook. Up to 31 groups can be saved on the FOMA terminal Phonebook, and up to 11 groups can be saved on the UIM Phonebook (including "No group").

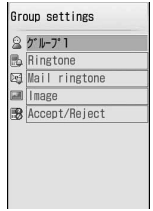
- "No group" cannot be edited.
- Only a name can be edited on the UIM Phonebook.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Search phonebook" ▶ "Group search" ▶ Move the cursor to the target group ▶ [Set]

- [Phone/UIM] : Switch between the terminal and the UIM group setting list screens.
- : View the settings of the selected group.
- For the operations on the screen (Group list screen) that appears for "Group search", refer to Step 2 in "Searching Phonebook" (P86).

Group setting list screen

2 [Set]



Group settings screen

3 Perform the following operations

[(Group name)]

Enter up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch characters. Enter with Kanji, Hiragana, pictographs, symbols, or Katakana, etc.

[Ringtone]*2

Set the ring tone for a call.

Music	:	Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data box".→P256 Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251).
Melody	:	Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data box".→P293
i-motion	:	Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
Terminal setting*1	:	Use "Select ring tone" settings.→P94

[Mail ringtone]

Set the ring tone for incoming mail.

- Available items are the same as for " Ringtone".

Continued on next page

[Image]*2

Set an image to a group.

My picture	: Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276
i-motion	: Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
Take picture	: Activate the camera and set the captured image.→P209
Terminal setting*1	: Use "Call display" settings.→P101

[Accept/Reject]

Set whether to accept/reject calls for groups.

▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Not set"/"Reject call"/"Accept call"

*1 If a movie/i-motion movie with video/sound is set for "Select ring tone" (P94) and "Call display" (P101), and the relevant voice/videophone call arrives, the default sound or video is played.

*2 If you set a movie/i-motion movie with video/sound for either item, the same movie/i-motion will be set for the other item automatically.

4 [−] [Done]

Note

<Accept/Reject>

- The setting in "Accept/Reject call" (P89) in the Phonebook takes priority.

Group Setting List Screen Sub Menu

1 Group setting list screen (P83) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Reset]

Reset the selected group settings. The group name is restored to default.

[Move]

Change the display position of the selected group.

▶ Select the new display position ▶ ● [OK]

[Set]

Change the selected group settings.→P83

[Reset all]

Reset all group settings and group order.

Search phonebook

Making a Call from Phonebook

- To search Phonebook entries set as secret, set "Secret mode" to "ON" beforehand.→P118

Making a Call from Phonebook

You can make a call by invoking the Phonebook.

1 Stand-by display ▶ ●

The entries searched by the default search mode appear on the Phonebook entry list screen.→P91

Phonebook list screen (Ex.: When searching all entries)

2 Select a Phonebook entry

The Phonebook detail screen appears with the phone number displayed.

- ●[Disp.]: Press ●[Call] on the Phone number display screen to make a call.

■ When multiple phone numbers are saved

- Use ◎ to select a phone number to call.
- Press ☎ to display the saved number list on the phone number selection screen. Use ◎ to move the cursor to the phone number ▶ ●[Select] to make a call.

3 −[Call]

- You can also make a call by moving the cursor to a phone number on the Phonebook detail screen and pressing ●[Disp.] ▶ ●[Call].

■ To make a videophone call

Press −[Menu] ▶ "Call function" ▶ "Video phone call".

Note

- If "Secret mode" is set to "Secret data only mode" (P118), only secret Phonebook entries (P80) can be searched/displayed.

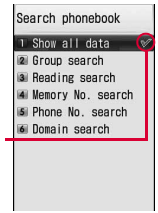
Searching Phonebook

You can use various ways to search Phonebook entries.

1 −[Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Search phonebook"

- −[Default]: Set the highlighted option as the search mode for the Phonebook list screen displayed when you press ●, etc. in Stand-by.

The default search mode is indicated.



Search phonebook screen

Continued on next page

2 Perform the following operations

[Show all data]

Display all Phonebook entries divided into reading lines (あ-わ lines, A-Z) and "他 (others)" (for readings other than the Japanese Kana syllables).

- Use ⊙ to switch the reading line.
- Press the keys 1 to 0 to switch the display to "Reading search" mode. Operations are same as "Reading search".

[Group search]

Search and display Phonebook entries by group (Group list screen). Use ⊙ to switch between FOMA terminal Phonebook and UIM Phonebook. Use ⊙ to select a group ▶ ●[Select] to display Phonebook entries saved in the group.

[Reading search]

Enter part of the reading and search all Phonebook entries. Enter up to 32 half-pitch characters for reading.

- All Phonebook entries are displayed when a reading is not entered.
- You can also search readings using other than the leading character.
- Press −[Chara] to switch the input mode.

[Memory No. search]

Display Phonebook entries on the FOMA terminal every 50 entries from memory no. "0" in order.

- Use ⊙ to switch the memory number.
- The UIM Phonebook cannot be displayed.
- Phonebook entries can also be displayed by entering memory numbers with dial keys.

[Phone No. search]

Enter part of the saved phone number and search all Phonebook entries. Enter up to 26 digits.

- All Phonebook entries are displayed when a phone number is not entered.
- You can search phone numbers using other than the leading digit.

[Domain search]

Display Phonebook entries that contain mail addresses by domain.

- Use ⊙ to switch the domain.
- Register a domain to search beforehand.→P91

Group List Screen Sub Menu

1 Search phonebook screen (P85) ▶ "Group search" ▶ −[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[View UIM/View phone]

Switch between the Group search screens of the UIM Phonebook and FOMA terminal Phonebook.

[Set]

The Group setting screen (P83) appears.

[Select]

Display Phonebook entries saved in the selected group.

Viewing Phonebook Entries

1 Stand-by display ▶ ●

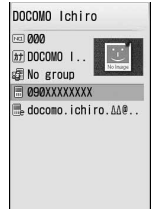
❶ **Save locations on the Phonebook**

- Save on the FOMA terminal Phonebook (The icon assigned to "Phone number1" appears.)
- Save on the UIM Phonebook

Phonebook list screen

2 Select a Phonebook entry

- When an image is set to the phonebook entry, the set image is displayed.
- Icons displayed for each item are same as those for the Add to phonebook screen.→P78



Phonebook detail screen

Operations on the Phonebook list screen

Select the Phonebook entry in which a phone number and a mail address are saved and press [☎] to make a call, and press [−][Mail] to create mail. If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved, the Phone number or mail address selection screen appears.

Operations on the Phonebook detail screen

When selecting a saved phone number, mail address, URL, ring tone, or videophone subtitle image, the following items appear at the lower right soft key. Press [−] to perform the following operations.

Call : Make a voice call to the selected phone number.
Mail : Create a mail addressed to the selected phone number/mail address.→P128
Connect : Connect to the site of the selected URL.
Play : Play/display the selected ring tone or videophone substitute image.

Phonebook List Screen Sub Menu

1 Phonebook list screen (P87) ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Mail/URL]

Create mail or access URL.

Compose mail : Create an i-mode mail addressed to the mail address or phone number of the selected Phonebook entry.→P128
Attach to mail : Create an i-mode mail with the selected Phonebook entry attached.→P128
Compose SMS : Create an SMS message addressed to the phone number saved in the selected Phonebook entry.→P163
Connect to URL : Connect to the site of the URL saved in the selected Phonebook entry.

Continued on next page

[Call function]

Select the calling method. If multiple phone numbers are saved, after selecting the calling method, select the number to call on the Phone number selection screen.

Video phone call : Make a videophone call.
Customize call : Change the saved phone number and make a call.
Int. call(Japan) : Add the country code for Japan "+81" automatically at the beginning of the phone number when you make a call from overseas to a phone number in Japan saved in the Phonebook.
- If the beginning of the phone number is "0", it is automatically deleted.

[Add new]

Create a new Phonebook entry.→P78

[Edit]

Edit the selected Phonebook entry.→P90

[Copy]

Copy or back up the selected entry.

to the UIM*1 : Copy the selected Phonebook entry to the UIM.
to the phone*2 : Copy the selected Phonebook entry to the FOMA terminal.
to microSD : Copy the selected Phonebook entry to a microSD card.
Backup : Back up all Phonebook data saved on the FOMA terminal to a microSD card.
- Images saved in the Phonebook cannot be copied.

[Delete]

Delete saved data from the Phonebook.

Focused data : Delete the selected Phonebook entry.
all in phone : Delete all Phonebook data on the FOMA terminal.
all in UIM : Delete all Phonebook data saved on the UIM.

[Multiple choice]

Select multiple Phonebook entries to copy or delete. After you select the save location of the entries to select from "Phone"/"UIM" (FOMA terminal Phonebook/UIM Phonebook), perform the following operations.

▶ Mark the entries to select ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

Copy to UIM*1
: Copy the selected Phonebook entries to the UIM.

Copy to phone*2
: Copy the selected Phonebook entries to the FOMA terminal.

Copy microSD
: Copy the selected Phonebook entries to microSD card.

Delete : Delete the selected Phonebook entries.

Mark/ Unmark : Mark or unmark all Phonebook entries.

[Search by]

Search the Phonebook in another mode.→P85

[Send Ir data]

Send a Phonebook entry to an external device via infrared communication.→P307

Focused data : Send the selected Phonebook entry.
all in phone : Send all data saved on the FOMA terminal Phonebook.
all in UIM : Send all data saved on the UIM Phonebook.

[Create domain list]*3

Create the domain list to be searched by the domain search.→P91

*1 Appear for the FOMA terminal Phonebook.
*2 Appear for the UIM Phonebook.
*3 Appear only for the domain search.

Phonebook Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Phonebook detail screen (P87) ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Mail/URL]
Create mail or access URL.

Compose mail : Create an i-mode mail addressed to the mail address or phone number saved in the displayed Phonebook entry.→P128

Attach to mail : Create an i-mode mail with the displayed Phonebook entry attached.→P128

Compose SMS : Create an SMS message addressed to the phone number in the displayed Phonebook entry.→P163

Connect to URL : Access the site of the URL saved in the displayed Phonebook entry.

[Call function]
Select the calling method.

Video phone call : Make a videophone call.

Customize call : Change the saved phone number and make a call.

Int. call(Japan) : Add the country code for Japan "+81" automatically at the beginning of the phone number when you make a call from overseas to a phone number in Japan saved in the Phonebook.
- If the beginning of the phone number is "0", it is automatically deleted.

[Edit]
Edit the displayed entry.→P90

[Copy]
Copy the displayed entry.

Copy item : Select and copy items from the saved entry displayed.

to the UIM*1 : Copy the displayed entry to the UIM.

to the phone*2 : Copy the displayed entry to the FOMA terminal.

to microSD : Copy the displayed entry to a microSD card.

[Delete]
Delete the displayed entry.

[Send Ir data]
Send the displayed entry via infrared communication.→P307

[Accept/Reject call]
Set to accept or reject calls per phone number saved on the FOMA terminal Phonebook.
You can select this only when you move the cursor to a phone number beforehand.
- A phone number saved in "Reject on List" (P119) cannot be set to "Accept call".

▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Not set"/"Reject call"/"Accept call"

*1 Appear for the FOMA terminal Phonebook.
*2 Appear for the UIM phonebook.

Editing Phonebook Entries

1 Phonebook detail screen (P87) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶"Edit" ▶ Edit each item

Use the same steps in "Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook" (P78) or "Adding Entries to UIM (FOMA Card) Phonebook" (P81) to edit items.

■ To change the memory number and save the entry

If you change the memory number and save the entry, the original entry remains with the original memory number and the edited entry is saved with a new memory number.

NO. (Memory No.) ▶ enter any un-assigned memory number (000-999).

2 After editing, press [−\] [Done] ▶ "Yes"

Deleting Phonebook Entries

Deleting One Entry/All Entries

Example: To delete an entry from the Phonebook entry list screen

1 Move the cursor to an entry to delete on the Phonebook list screen (P87) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Delete" ▶ Select a deleting method

Focused data	:	Delete the selected Phonebook entry.
all in phone	:	Delete all Phonebook entries saved on the FOMA terminal. The Terminal security code is required to delete.
all in UIM	:	Delete all Phonebook entries saved on the UIM. The Terminal security code is required to delete.

2 "Yes"

The selected/displayed Phonebook entry is deleted.

■ To delete a Phonebook entry from the Phonebook detail screen

You can delete only one Phonebook entry at a time from the Phonebook detail screen.

Phonebook detail screen (P87) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Delete" ▶ "Yes".

Selecting and Deleting Multiple Phonebook Entries

- If either of the FOMA terminal Phonebook or UIM Phonebook is displayed, Phonebook entries are deleted from the displayed Phonebook.

1 Phonebook list screen (P87) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Multiple choice" ▶ "Phone"/"UIM"

2 Mark the entries to delete ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Delete"

- After marking all entries to delete, select "Delete".

3 "Yes"

The selected Phonebook entries are deleted.

No. of phonebook

Checking Phonebook Storage Status

You can check the memory status on the FOMA terminal/UIM Phonebook.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "No. of phonebook"

- "Secret entry" is displayed when "Secret mode" is set to "ON" or "Secret data only mode".

Setting Phonebook

You can set Phonebook entries or images to be invoked from the Stand-by display.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Phonebook settings"

2 Perform the following operations

[Default mode]
Set the search mode invoked when accessing the Phonebook list screen directly from the Stand-by display.

[Create domain list]
Create the domain list to be searched by the domain search. Select an unsaved item in the list and enter a domain name.
▶ Enter a domain name ▶ ● [Set]

[Accept/Reject list]
Phone numbers saved on the Accept/reject call list in "Accept/reject call" are displayed.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Accept list"/"Reject list"
- Press [−] [Menu] to perform "Add", "Delete", or "Delete all" operation.

Editing the entered domain name
Move the cursor to the domain to edit on the domain list ▶ ●[Select] ▶ edit the domain name.
"@docomo.ne.jp" on the domain list cannot be edited.

Deleting the entered domain name
Move the cursor to the domain to delete on the domain list ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ select "Delete" ▶ "Yes".

Quick Search

Making a Call with a Few Key Operation

In Stand-by, enter a 1- or 2-digit number with the dial keys to quickly make a call to the phone number corresponding to the memory number of "0" to "99" on the FOMA terminal Phonebook. If you enter 3 or more digits, the phone numbers saved on the FOMA terminal Phonebook which contain the number sequence you entered are displayed.

Example: To enter a memory number to access a Phonebook entry

1 Enter a 1- or 2-digit number ▶ [call]

The content of the entry or phone number of the memory no. corresponding to the entered number appears.

■ If you enter 3 or more digits

The phone numbers saved in the Phonebook containing the entered number sequence appears. ◉ ▶ ◉ to select the phone number to call, and press [call].

- [−][Menu]: Display the sub menu of the Phone number entry screen.→P54
- [−][Mail]: If you enter a 1- or 2-digit number, an i-mode mail with the address found in the Phonebook entered will be created. If you enter 3 or more digits, an i-mode mail addressed to the entered or selected phone number will be created.→P128
- ◉: If you enter a 1- or 2-digit number, the Phonebook entry assigned to the previous or subsequent memory number is displayed. If you enter 3 or more digits, select a phone number to call.
- ◉: If the entered number is 1 or 2 digits, select multiple phone numbers saved in the accessed Phonebook.

Note

- When "Dialing Quick Search" in "Dialing" is set to "OFF", this function does not work.→P102
- If you enter a 2-digit number beginning with "0" such as "01", this function does not work because it is not recognized as a memory number.
- This function does not work for the UIM phonebook.

Displaying Call/Mail History

1 [−][Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Call/Mail history" ▶ Select a log to display

Received calls	:	Display received logs for voice/videophone calls.→P58
Redial	:	Display redial logs for voice/videophone calls.→P56
Received mails	:	Display received mail logs.→P155
Sent mails	:	Display sent mail logs.→P155

Note

- Received calls can also be displayed by pressing ◉ in Stand-by.
- Redial can also be displayed by pressing ◉ in Stand-by.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Sound Settings

Changing Ring Tone ····· Select ring tone 94
Setting Volume of Ring Tone, Alarm, etc. ····· Volume 95
Informing You of Incoming Calls and Alarms by Vibration ····· Vibrator 96
Setting Keypad Sound ····· Select effect tone 97
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected ····· Quality alarm 98
Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail ····· Mail ring duration 98
Muting Ring Tone from the FOMA Terminal ····· Manner mode 98
Changing Manner Mode Settings ····· Manner mode set 99

Screen/Light Settings

Changing Stand-by Display ····Stand-by display 99
Setting Image for Incoming Calls ····· Call display 101
Setting Dialing Screen Display ····· Dialing 102
Setting Wake-up Display ····· Wake-up display 102
Displaying Image Saved in Phonebook on Incoming Call Screen ····· Display phonebook image 103
Setting Display Backlight ····· Backlight 103
Displaying in Power Save Mode ····· Power saver mode 103
Setting a Color Theme for Display ····· Handset theme 104
Changing Main Menu Appearance ····· Menu settings 104
Switching to Menu Consisting of Frequently Used Functions ····· Simple menu 105
Setting Incoming Lighting/Blinking Colors or Patterns ····· Lighting LED 106
Setting Clock Display ····· Date&Time format 107

Select ring tone

Changing Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone for voice/videophone calls, mail, etc.

- In addition to the pre-installed ring tones and melodies, i-motion movies, melodies and Chaku-Uta® songs, Chaku-Uta Full® songs downloaded from i-mode sites or the Internet web sites can be set as ring tones.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Sounds&Vibration" ▶ "Select ring tone"

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: The ring tone setting screen of the selected item appears.

[Voice call]

Select the ring tone for a voice call.

Music : Select from Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved in "Music" of "Data box".→P256
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251).

i-motion : Select from movies/i-motion movies saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286

Melody : Select from melodies saved in "Melody" of "Data box". →P293

[Video call]

Select the ring tone for a videophone call.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

[Mail]

Select the ring tone for mail.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

[MessageR]

Select the ring tone for MessageR.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

[MessageF]

Select the ring tone for MessageF.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

[SMS]

Select the ring tone for a SMS.

- Available items are the same as for "Voice call".

3 [Done]

Note

- The following file formats can be set for a ring tone (however, some files such as restricted files or files including only movie or sound may not be set).
  SMF, MFi, MP4 (Mobile MP4), and AMR
- When movies/i-motion movies is set to ring tones (Chaku-motion), "Call display" (P101) is also changed to the same.
- Sound only movies/i-motion movies can be set for "Mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", and "SMS".
- If movies/i-motion movies with video are set as a ring tone, the incoming screen will be reset to default screen when you change the ring tone to movies/i-motion movies without video.
- Image only movies/i-motion movies cannot be set as ring tones.

Pre-installed Ring Tone List

i-motion		
975 miles	Alarm01 to 04	Central park
City of mist	Cube EP	Cycle beep
Heaven sent	Into the sea	Land mark
Lip stick	Many dishes	Message01 to 10
Power off	Power on	Rainbow
Ringtone01 to 07	Slappin' man	Step by step
Sweet pie	Try on	Under cover of darkness
Melody		
On my mind	Power off	Power on
Ring01 to 05	To the place	

Volume

Setting Volume of Ring Tone, Alarm, etc.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Sounds&Vibration" ▶ "Volume"

2 Perform the following operations

- : Adjust the volume of the selected item. When the volume level is set to the lowest, (Silent) is displayed and the tone does not sound. Every time the volume is adjusted, the tone for the item sounds at the new volume (except "Receiver volume").
  * The default ring tone sounds for movies other than preinstalled i-motion or "Alarm/Schedule".
- [Select]: The volume setting screen of the selected item is displayed.

[Incoming call]*
Adjust the ring tone volume for incoming voice/videophone calls.

[Mail/Message/SMS]*
Adjust the ring tone volume for Mail or MessageR/F.

[Alarm/Schedule]*
Adjust the alarm tone volume for Alarm/Schedule.

[Keypad tone]
Adjust the volume of keypad sound except dial tone.

[Slide tone]
Adjust the volume when the FOMA terminal is opened/closed.

[Dial sound]
Adjust the dial sound volume.

Continued on next page

[Power ON/OFF]
Adjust the sound volume when the FOMA terminal is turned on/off.

[Popup tone]
Adjust the sound volume when the popup window is displayed.

[Receiver volume]
Adjust the earpiece volume. The sound cannot be muted.

* When the volume level is set to the highest,→ (Step up) is displayed to increase the sound progressively.

3 [−] [Done]

Note
- Adjusting the receiver volume during a call→P69

Vibrator

Informing You of Incoming Calls and Alarms by Vibration

You can set the FOMA terminal to vibrate when a call or mail arrives or at a schedule alarm time.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Sounds&Vibration" ▶ "Vibrator"

2 Perform the following operations
- ◉: Set the vibration pattern of the selected item. Every time the vibration pattern is changed, the FOMA terminal vibrates at the new pattern.
- ●[List]: The vibration pattern setting screen of the selected item is displayed.

[Incoming call]
Set the vibration pattern for an incoming voice/videophone call.

[Mail/Message/SMS]
Set the vibration pattern when mail/MessageR/F is received.

[Alarm/Schedule]
Set the vibration pattern for the Alarm/Schedule alert.

[Touch media]
Set whether to vibrate the FOMA terminal at the touch panel operation.

[Pop-up]
Set whether to vibrate the FOMA terminal when the Popup screen appears.

[Power ON/OFF]
Set the vibration pattern when the FOMA terminal is turned on/off.

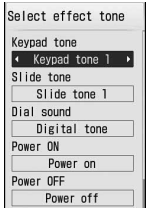
3 [−] [Done]

Select effect tone

Setting Keypad Sound

You can set the effect tone when a key is pressed or operation is performed.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Sounds&Vibration" ▶ "Select effect tone"



Effect tone selection screen

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.

[Keypad tone]*

Select an effect tone sounded when a key is pressed except Dial sound.

[Slide tone]*

Select an effect tone when the FOMA terminal is opened/closed.

[Dial sound]*

Select an effect tone when a dial key, [*] key, or [#] key is pressed in the Stand-by display or the Phone number entry screen (P52). If set to "Japanese", "English", or "Korean", the numbers entered with dial keys will be read out.

[Power ON]

Select an effect tone sounded when the terminal is turned on.

Music : Select from Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved in "Music" of "Data box".→P256
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251).

i-motion : Select from movies/i-motion movies saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
• Image only movies/i-motion movies cannot be set.

Melody : Select from melodies saved in "Melody" of "Data box". →P293

[Power OFF]

Select an effect tone sounded when the terminal is turned off.

• Available items are the same as for "Power ON".

[Low battery alert]

Set whether to sound an alarm when the battery level becomes low.

* Press [−/][Play] on the Effect tone select screen to sound the effect tone selected with ◎. Press [−/][Mute] to mute the effect tone. You can also check the effect tone by pressing [−\][Play] and ● on the Sound effect list screen. However, you cannot check the effect tone when "Silent" is set in "Volume".

3 [−\][Done]

Quality alarm

Sounding Alarm when a Line is Likely to be Disconnected

The FOMA terminal notifies you of a call almost disconnected due to poor signal quality with an alarm tone.

- If the signal rapidly deteriorates, the call may be disconnected without sounding an alarm tone.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Call feature" ▶ "Quality alarm" ▶ "Alarm OFF"/"Low alarm"/"High alarm"

Mail ring duration

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail

You can set how many times or how long the ring tone sounds when mail arrives.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Sounds&Vibration" ▶ "Mail ring duration"

2 Perform the following operations

- ◉[List]: List of items is displayed.

[Mail ring]

OFF	:	Set to mute a ring tone.
1 cycle	:	Set to sound a ring tone once for up to approximately 30 seconds according to the set ring tone length such as music or melodies.
Select time	:	Set the ring tone duration. ▶ ◉ ▶ Enter ring time between 1 and 30 seconds in the ring time entry field

3 [−] [Done]

Manner mode

Muting Ring Tone from the FOMA Terminal

Turn off the tones that sound from the FOMA terminal so as not to disturb others.

1 [#] (for 1+ seconds)

Canceling Manner mode

In Stand-by, press [#] (for 1+ seconds).

Note

- 2 types of Manner mode are equipped: "General manner" and "Original manner".→P99
- 📳 appears at the top of the screen when manner mode is activated.
- A playback confirmation screen appears when you attempt to play a melody, movie/i-motion movies while Manner mode is activated.
- Even when Manner mode is activated, the camera shutter tone sounds.
- While "Manner mode" is active, incoming voice/videophone call, mail/message, and alarm/schedule alert are notified with vibration. The vibration pattern follows "Vibrator" settings (if "OFF" is set, "Pattern 1" is applied).

Manner mode set

Changing Manner Mode Settings

Select the Manner mode action from "General manner" or "Original manner". Original manner enables you to change the each setting of Manner mode.

Example: To change the settings of Original manner

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Sounds&Vibration" ▶ "Manner mode set" ▶ Move the cursor to "Original manner" ▶ [−\] [Edit]

■ To select the Manner mode type
Move the cursor to "General manner"/"Original manner" ▶ press ●[Select].
The Manner mode setting is ended.

2 Perform the following operations

- ◎: Select the vibration pattern or volume of the selected item. When the volume level is the lowest, (Silent) is displayed and the sound is muted.
- ●[List]: Vibration patterns or volume setting screen of the selected item is displayed.

[Vibration]

ON : Notify of incoming voice/videophone call, mail/message, and alarm/schedule alert with vibration. The vibration pattern follows "Vibrator" settings (if "OFF" is set, "Pattern 1" is applied).

OFF : The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

[Incoming call vol.]*

Adjust the ring tone volume for incoming voice/videophone calls.

[Mail/SMS vol.]*

Adjust the ring tone volume for Mail/MessageR/F/SMS.

[Alarm/Schedule vol.]*

Adjust the alarm tone volume for Alarm/Schedule.

[Effect/Popup tone]

Adjust the effect tone or volume when the popup is displayed.

[Low battery alert]

Set whether to sound an alarm when the battery level becomes low.

* When the volume level is set to the highest, → (Step up) is displayed to increase the sound progressively.

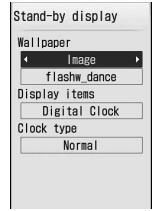
3 [−\] [Done]

Stand-by display

Changing Stand-by Display

You can set the items (wallpaper, clock, calendar, schedule) to be shown on the Stand-by display.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Stand-by display"



Stand-by display setting screen

Continued on next page

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.
- [−/]: [Preview]: The selected preview screen is displayed.

[Wallpaper]

Set a wallpaper.

Image	: Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box". →P276
i-motion	: Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
i-αppli	: Select a Standby i-αppli saved on the FOMA terminal. →P270
M-toy	: Select from "Dart", "Magicball", or "Maze" of the game. →P315

▶ ◎ ▶ On the data name field, ●[List] ▶ Select data

[Display items]*1

Set the display such as clock, calendar, etc. in the Stand-by display.

Do not show	: Items such as clock, calendar, etc. are not displayed.
Analog Clock	: Set to display the analog clock.
Digital Clock	: Set to display the digital clock.
Calendar	: Set to display the calendar or schedule.

[Clock type]*2

Set the display method of the clock.

- If "Dual clock" is selected, clock, date and time of 2 countries or cities are displayed in the Stand-by display.

[Calendar type]*3

Calendar : The calendar is displayed.

Calendar + Schedule

: The calendar and today's schedule event are displayed.

[2nd City]*4

Select the country, area, or city for the clock displayed at the bottom of the dual clock.

▶ ●[List] ▶ Use ✣ to move to the target area ▶ ●[Select] ▶ Use ✣ to move to the target city ▶ ●[Set]

- Press [−\]: [Search] to display the city name list. You can also enter a city name with dial keys to search for a city name.
- Press [−/]: [Menu] to search for a city or set Daylight Saving to ON/OFF.

*1 Cannot be selected if "M-toy" is set as Wallpaper.
*2 Appear when "Analog Clock" or "Digital Clock" is selected in "Display items".
*3 Appear when "Calendar" is selected in "Display items".
*4 Appear when "Dual clock" is selected in "Clock type".

3 [−\]: [Done]

Note

- Some data may not be displayed in the Stand-by display.
- The movie/i-motion movie or Flash movie set as the Stand-by display starts when the FOMA terminal is opened and the movie/i-motion movie stops when the terminal is closed. Also, press [☎] to play or stop the movie.
- Web To function is not available from a movie/i-motion movie set as the Stand-by display.

<Display items>
- The time zone is set to other than GMT+9 in "Auto time adjust" (P49) or "Local time zone" (P49) while "Analog Clock" or "Digital Clock" is set, "Clock type" is automatically changed to "Dual clock".

<Clock type>
- If the time zone is set to other than GMT+9 in "Auto time adjust" (P49) or "Local time zone" (P49), only "Dual clock" can be selected.
- After this option is set, press ● in Stand-by ▶ move the cursor to the clock display ▶ ●[OK] to display the following screen.
  - "Dual clock"
    The Date&Time settings screen (P49) appears when the Home clock (the upper clock) is selected, and the Stand-by display setting screen appears when the Sub clock (the lower clock) is selected.
  - Other clock
    The Alarm list screen (P320) is displayed. (If the date is selected, the Calendar screen of the schedule (P324) is displayed.)

<Calendar type>
- After this option is set, press ● in Stand-by ▶ move the cursor to the calendar ▶ ●[OK] to display the Calendar screen of the schedule (P324).
- After "Calendar + Schedule" is set, press ● in Stand-by ▶ move the cursor to the schedule ▶ ●[OK] to display the Schedule list screen (P325).

Call display

Setting Image for Incoming Calls

Set an image displayed on the screen when a call arrives.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Call display"

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.
- [Preview]: The selected preview screen is displayed.

[Incoming voice call]

Set an image displayed on the screen when a voice call arrives.

Image : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box". →P276

i-motion : Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286

▶ ▶ On the image name field, ●[List] ▶ Select an image

[Incoming video call]

Set an image displayed on the incoming videophone call screen.

- The set items and operations are the same as in "Incoming voice call".

3 [Done]

Continued on next page

Note

- A sound only movie/i-motion movie cannot be set as the Call display.
- If a movie/i-motion movie with sound is set to the incoming call screen, the "Select ring tone" (P94) is also changed to the same.
- If a movie/i-motion movie with sound is set as an incoming image, the ring tone settings are automatically reset to the default when you change it to a movie/i-motion movie without sound.

Dialing

Setting Dialing Screen Display

Set the screen displayed when numbers are entered in Stand-by.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Dialing"

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.

[Motion Dialing]

Set the display method of the entered numbers.

Lawn	: Display the entered numbers in the design of mowing the lawn.
Music book	: Display the entered numbers in the design of music scores.
OFF	: Display numbers with decoration set to OFF.

[Dialing Quick Search]

Set whether to search a Phonebook entry when number corresponding to the entry is entered with 1 digit or 2 digits.

[Dialing font color]

Set the font color of the number entered when "Motion Dialing" is set to "OFF".

3 [Done]

Wake-up display

Setting Wake-up Display

Set an image displayed on the screen when the FOMA terminal is started up.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Wake-up display"

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.
- [Preview]: The selected image is displayed.

[Wake-up display]

Set an image displayed on the screen when the FOMA terminal is started up.

Image	: Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box". →P276
i-motion	: Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286

▶ ▶ On the image name field, ●[List] ▶ Select an image

3 [Done]

Note

- Flash movies cannot be set as a wake-up screen.

Display phonebook image

Displaying Image Saved in Phonebook on Incoming Call Screen

Display the image set in the Phonebook entry when a call arrives from the number saved in the Phone book with Caller ID shown.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Display phonebook image" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Note

- The mage display priority for an incoming call is as follows:
  ① Image set to a Phonebook entry
  ② Image set to a Group in the Phonebook
  ③ Image set for the Call display

Backlight

Setting Display Backlight

You can set the Display backlight.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Backlight"

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.

[Display duration]
Set the backlight duration of the display between 5 and 30 seconds.

[Display brightness]
Set the backlight level of the Display.

[AC connected]
Set the lighting when the AC charger is connected.

Display setting : In accord with the setting in "Display duration" and "Display brightness".
Always ON : Light is always on.

3 [Done]

Note

- With the FOMA terminal closed (in Stand-by), the display turns off after a certain period of time regardless of "Display duration" setting.

Power saver mode

Displaying in Power Save Mode

You can set the backlight brightness of the display to the lowest power save level.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Power saver mode" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Handset theme

Setting a Color Theme for Display

You can select a combination of screen colors and a menu format.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Handset theme" ▶ Select a color/theme to set

2 "Grid"/"One by one"/"List"

Grid : Main menu icons are displayed in a grid. Use to select an icon.

One by one : Main menu icons are displayed one by one. Use to select an icon.

List : Main menu icons are displayed in a list. Use to select an icon.

- Displayed items vary depending on the selected color/theme.

Menu settings

Changing Main Menu Appearance

Menu guidance

Displaying Guidance for Main Menu

You can set whether to display the guidance for the icon selected on the Main menu.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Menu settings" ▶ "Menu guidance" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Menu customization

Changing Display Format of Main Menu

You can change the display format of the Main menu. Also, you can change the icon combination of the Main menu and save up to 2 patterns.

Example: To Change the combination of the Main menu icons

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Menu settings" ▶ "Menu customization" ▶ "Customize 1"/"Customize 2"

Select the save location of the icon combination from "Customize 1" or "Customize 2".

- To open a preview screen of the Main menu, move the cursor to an item to preview and press [−/] [Preview] on the "Menu customization" screen.

■ To keep the icon combination unchanged

Select "OFF".

The Main menu display follows the setting of "Handset theme".

Menu customization is ended.

Customization screen

2 Move cursor to an icon to change ▶ [Change] ▶ Select a new icon ▶ [−/] [Done] ▶ "Yes"

Select an icon from images saved in "My picture" of "Data box".

Resetting the Main menu to the default

On the customization screen to be reset, press [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Restore to default" ▶ "Yes".

Note

- JPEG or GIF images in 48×48 pixels or smaller can be used as an icon for customization. Images larger than this size can be set by changing the size or clipping images. The image of the first frame is displayed for an image in animation GIF format.

Simple menu

Switching to Menu Consisting of Frequently Used Functions

Each menu can be changed to "Simple menu" that contains only frequently used functions.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Menu settings" ▶ "Simple menu" ▶ "ON"

- [−/] [Preview]: The Simple menu preview screen is displayed.

■ Simple Menu Item List

Function name			Reference
Phone	Search phonebook		P85
	Redial		P56
	Received calls		P58
	Record message	Record msg. setting	P73
		Record msg. list	P74
	Add to phonebook		P78
	Own number		P332
Mail	Inbox		P143
	Outbox		P144
	Unsent message		P144
	Compose message		P128
	Check new messages		P139
i-mode	iMenu		P169
	Bookmark		P176
	Screen memo		P179
Camera	Photo-mode		P209
	Movie-mode		P212
	View photo		P276
	View movie		P286
Settings/ Tools	Ring tone settings	Select ring tone	P94
		Select effect tone	P97
		Volume	P95
		Vibrator	P96
	Stand-by display		P99
	Alarm		P320
	Calculator		P338
	Call cost/duration	Call duration	P334
		Call costs	P334
	Voice mail	Activate	P359
		Deactivate	
		Play messages	
Normal menu			P106

Continued on next page

Returning to Normal menu

Press [Menu] ▶ "Normal menu" ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Menu settings" ▶ "Simple menu" ▶ "OFF".

Note

- To use a menu option not displayed in the Simple menu, select "Normal menu". The normal Main menu appears temporarily.

Lighting LED

Setting Incoming Lighting/ Blinking Colors or Patterns

You can set the incoming or alarm illumination to ON/OFF, or set a combination of illumination colors for each item.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Lighting LED"

2 Perform the following operations

- [List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.
- [Preview]: The selected lighting pattern and color are displayed.

[Lighting LED]
Set whether to light/blink the illumination light.

[Incoming voice call]*
Set an illumination pattern/color for an incoming voice call.

[Incoming video call]*
Set an illumination pattern/color for an incoming videophone call.

[New mail]*
Set an illumination pattern/color for incoming mail.

[New MessageR]*
Set an illumination pattern/color for incoming MessageR.

[New MessageF]*
Set an illumination pattern/color for incoming MessageF.

[New SMS]*
Set an illumination pattern/color for incoming SMS.

[New Voice mail]*
Set an illumination pattern/color to indicate that a new message is recorded at the Voice mail center.

- To light the illumination when a new message is being recorded, select "Tone/Vibration message notification" (P359) ▶ "Yes".

[New Record message]*
Set an illumination pattern/color to indicate that a new message is recorded.

[Playing music]*
Set an illumination pattern/color during music playback.

[Alarm]*
Set an illumination pattern/color at Alarm time.

[Schedule/To do]*
Set an illumination pattern/color at the time of schedule events.

[During call]*
Set an illumination pattern/color during a call.

[Missed call]*
Set whether to blink the illumination if you missed a call.

[Unread message]*
Set whether to light or blink the illumination when there are unread messages.

* Available when "Lighting LED" is set to "ON"

3 [−] [Done]

Note
- The illuminations for "Missed call" and "Unread message" light/blink up to 6 hours, and other illuminations light/blink up to 30 seconds.

Date&Time format

Setting Clock Display

You can set the display format for date and time.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Date&Time" ▶ "Date&Time format"

2 Perform the following operations
- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.

[Date format]
Set the display format for the date.

[Time format]
Set the display format for the time.

3 [−] [Done]

Note
- YYYY=year, MM=month, and DD=day in the display.

Security Settings

Security Code

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal ··· 110
Changing Terminal Security Code ····· Change security code 112
Setting PIN Codes ····· PIN code 112
Unblocking a Blocked PIN ····· 113

Restricting Operations and Functions on Mobile Phone

Various Lock Functions ····· 113
Restricting Others from Using ····· Lock all 113
Using Omakase Lock ····· Omakase Lock 114
Restricting Making/Receiving Calls ····· 115
Restricting Display of Phonebook and Schedule etc. ····· Data access lock 116
Automatically Locking Key Operations ····· Auto key lock 117

Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls and Messages

Setting Display for Redial and Received Calls ····· Display Call/Mail logs 118
Displaying Information Set as Secret ····· Secret mode 118
Rejecting a Call from Specified Number ····· Reject on list 118
Rejecting All Incoming Calls ····· Reject all calls 120
Setting Actions when Calls Arrive from Anonymous Callers ····· Anonymous caller 120
Muting Ring Tone for a Caller Unset in Phonebook ····· Set mute ring(sec.) 121
Rejecting a Call from a Caller Unset in Phonebook ····· Reject unknown 122
Resetting Various Functions ····· Reset Settings 123
Deleting Saved Data All at Once ··· Clear memory 123

Other Security Settings

Other Security Settings ····· 124

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal

Some functions of the FOMA terminal require a password. In addition to the Terminal security code, the network security code, the i-mode password, etc. are offered. These passwords help you utilize your FOMA terminal.

- The entered passwords such as the Terminal security code, network security code, and i-mode password are displayed as "＊".

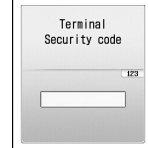
Cautions on security codes

- Avoid setting a password using your birthday, part of your phone number, your address or room number, 1111 or 1234, which can be easily guessed by others. Be sure to write down the set passwords and store them in a separate location.
- Do not reveal your passwords to others. DOCOMO is not responsible for damage caused by misuse of your security codes by others.
- If you forget your passwords, you need to bring your ID (driver's license, etc.), the FOMA terminal and UIM to a DOCOMO shop. For details, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.

Terminal Security Code

The Terminal security code is a 4- to 8- digit number. The Terminal security code is set to "0000" by default; you can change the code yourself.→P112

If the Terminal security code entry screen appears, enter the 4- to 8- digit code and press ●[OK].



Terminal security code entry screen

Network Security Code

The Network security code is a 4-digit number to be used for confirming subscriber's identity at an acceptance of order at a DOCOMO shop, docomo Information Center, or "各種お申込・お手続き (subscriptions & procedures)" and accessing network services. You can set any number at subscription, and can change the number yourself. If you have "docomo ID/Password" for "My docomo" which is a total support site for a PC, you can change the Network security code from a PC. From i-mode, you can change the Network security code by accessing "お客様サポート (user support)" then "各種お申込・お手続き (subscriptions & procedures)".

- For "My docomo" and "各種お申込・お手続き (subscriptions & procedures)", see the back of this manual.

i-mode Password

The 4-digit "i-mode password" is required to register/remove contents in My Menu, or subscribe to/cancel message service, fee-based i-mode services. (Some other information service providers may set individual passwords.)
The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default; you can change it yourself. From i-mode, you can change the password by accessing "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Change i-mode Password".

PIN1/PIN2 Codes

You can set PIN1 and PIN2 codes to the UIM. These codes are set to "0000" by default. You can change them yourself.→P112
The PIN1 code is a 4- to 8- digit number (code) required to identify the user every time the UIM is inserted into the FOMA terminal or the terminal power is turned on in order to prevent unauthorized use. The PIN1 code entry is required to make or receive calls, and operate the terminal.
The PIN2 code is a 4- to 8- digit number used to reset accumulated call charges, etc.

If the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter the 4- to 8- digit PIN1/PIN2 code and press ●[OK].

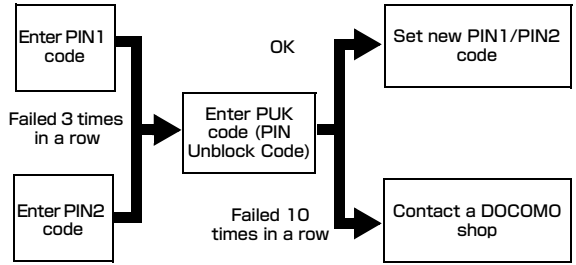
- Use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set previously if you purchase a new FOMA terminal and use the current UIM.

PIN1 code entry screen (Ex. For PIN1 code)

PUK Code (PIN Unblock Code)

The PUK code is an 8-digit number used to unblock the PIN1 or PIN2 code.→P113
You cannot change it yourself.

- If you fail to enter the correct PUK code 10 times in a row, the PIN1/PIN2 code is completely locked.



Change security code

Changing Terminal Security Code

You can change the Terminal security code.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ ⚙(Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Change security code"

2 Enter the current Terminal security code

The Change security code screen appears.

3 Enter a new Terminal security code

4 Re-enter the Terminal security code entered in Step 3

PIN code

Setting PIN Codes

PIN1 code request

Requiring the PIN1 Code when the Terminal is Turned On

Set to display the PIN1 code entry screen when the FOMA terminal is turned on, and reject the use of the FOMA terminal unless entering the PIN1 code.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ ⚙(Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "PIN code" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "PIN1 code request" ▶ "ON"/"OFF" ▶ Enter PIN1 code

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are not available in Japan even if you press [\−][Emergency] while the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed.

Change PIN1/PIN2 code

Changing PIN1/PIN2 Code

- Set "PIN1 code request" to "ON" before changing the PIN1 code.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ ⚙(Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "PIN code" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

2 "Change PIN1 code"/"Change PIN2 code" ▶ Enter the current PIN1/PIN2 code

The new PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears.

3 Enter the new PIN1/PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits)

The new PIN1/PIN2 code re-entry screen appears.

4 Re-enter the PIN1/PIN2 code entered in Step 3

Unblocking a Blocked PIN

If you enter an incorrect PIN1/PIN2 code 3 times in a row and the PIN lock screen appears, enter the PUK code to release the lock.

- You need to set a new PIN1/PIN2 code after unblocking the PIN code.

1 PIN lock screen ▶ Enter the PUK code (8 digits)

The new PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears.

2 Enter the new PIN1/PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)

The re-entry screen for confirmation appears.

3 Re-enter the PIN1/PIN2 code entered in Step 2

Various Lock Functions

Lock function	Description	Reference
Lock all	You can lock the FOMA terminal to prevent unauthorized use.	P113
Omakase Lock	If you lost the FOMA terminal, you can lock the terminal by remote control.	P114
Call/Mail lock	To prevent unauthorized use of the FOMA terminal, you can disable outgoing calls, address entries with dial keys, incoming calls or display of mail messages.	P115
Self mode	You can disable all network functions, such as making/receiving calls, using i-mode, or sending/receiving mails.	P116
Data access lock	You can specify certain functions to lock.	P116
Auto key lock	You can set the FOMA terminal to automatically lock the Keypad to avoid being used when you close the FOMA terminal and leave it for a certain seconds without any operations.	P117
Display Call/ Mail logs	You can hide redialed call, received call, sent mail, received mail logs.	P118
Secret mode	You can hide secret Phonebook entries or schedule events.	P118

Lock all

Restricting Others from Using

You can lock the FOMA terminal to prevent anyone from using it.

- When Lock all is activated, any operations other than turning power ON/OFF, making emergency calls, answering incoming voice/ videophone calls, and canceling Lock all are disabled.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/ Security" ▶ "Lock" ▶ "Lock all" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"/"No"

Note

- Even if mail or MessageR/F arrives while Lock all is activated, the Receive results screen or icon is not displayed.
- While Lock all is activated, the i-Channel ticker does not appear.

Continued on next page

Calling emergency numbers (110, 119, or 118) during Lock all

Emergency numbers (110, 119, or 118) can be called during Lock all. (Only when UIM is inserted)

▶ [−][Emergency] ▶ Select an emergency number ▶ ●[OK]

Canceling Lock all

Enter the Terminal security code. If an incorrect Terminal security code is entered 5 times in a row, the terminal automatically turns off.

Omakase Lock

Using Omakase Lock

This is a service you can lock your FOMA terminal by contacting DOCOMO or operating from My docomo, in case you lost the FOMA terminal. Your privacy will be protected. If you failed to activate Omakase Lock at the subscription and communication becomes available within a year, the lock is automatically activated. The FOMA terminal can be unlocked upon your request.

* Omakase Lock is a fee-based service. However, no charge applies if you are the docomo Premier Club member, or you subscribe to this service upon or during suspension of the FOMA terminal. Also, if you subscribe to Keitai Anshin Pack, you can use this service within the flat rate fee for Keitai Anshin Pack.

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

0120−524−360 Available 24 hours a day (In Japanese only)

* Setting/canceling the lock is available from the My docomo site using a PC.

* For details about Omakase Lock, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ **When Omakase Lock is set**

"Omakase Lock activated" appears in Stand-by and Omakase Lock is set.

- During Omakase Lock, operations except answering voice/videophone calls or turning power ON/OFF are unavailable and each functions (including the IC card functions) cannot be used.
- Receiving voice/videophone calls is available. In this case, only phone number appears and the name or image saved on the Phonebook does not appear.
- The received mails during Omakase Lock are stored in the i-mode center.
- Turning power ON/OFF is available. However, turning power OFF does not cancel the lock.
- The UIM or microSD card cannot be locked.

Note

- Even when other functions are activated, relevant functions are ended and the lock is activated.
- Even while other lock function is set, Omakase Lock can be used. However, if Omakase Lock is set during Public mode (Drive mode), voice/videophone calls also cannot be received.
- When the terminal is in out of service area, in Self mode or turned OFF, the lock cannot be activated. Also, depending on the usage status of the FOMA terminal, the lock may not be activated.
- If you subscribe to Dual Network Service and the mova service is in use, the lock cannot be activated.
- Even when the subscriber is different from the user of the FOMA terminal, the lock is activated upon the request from the subscriber.
- Omakase Lock can be canceled only if the UIM phone number that is the same as the one used when Omakase Lock is activated is inserted in the FOMA terminal. If the lock cannot be canceled, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.

Restricting Making/Receiving Calls

Call/Mail lock

Disabling Outgoing or Incoming Communications

You can disable making calls, entering an address with dial keys, answering calls, or displaying mails.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Lock" ▶ "Call/Mail lock" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

[Call/Mail lock set]
Set whether to activate the Call/Mail lock.

[Dialing call lock]*
Disable the following operations.
- Making calls by entering numbers with dial keys
- Making calls via the received call logs
- Making calls to redial phone numbers (making a number saved in the Phonebook or an emergency number such as "110", "119", or "118" is available)
- Saving, editing, or deleting a Phonebook entry (including exchanging data via infrared communication, or copying/moving to the microSD card)

[Send mail lock]*
Disable the following operations.
- Entering a mail address with dial keys
- Sending mail to an address in the redial or received call logs (sending mails to an address saved in the Phonebook)
- Performing data communications connecting to a PC, etc.
- Saving, editing, or deleting a Phonebook entry (including exchanging data via infrared communication, or copying/moving to the microSD card)

[Incoming call lock]*
Disable incoming calls. While this function is activated, a missed call icon does not appear and the received call log cannot be viewed.

[Received mail display lock]*
Disable viewing sent/received mails and MessageR/F. While this function is activated, an icon indicating incoming mail does not appear, and mails and received mail log in the FOMA terminal cannot be viewed.

* Can be set when "Call/Mail lock" is set to "ON".

3 [−] [Done]

Self mode

Stopping All Incoming/Outgoing Transmissions

You can disable all network functions, such as making/receiving calls, using i-mode, or sending/receiving mails. Infrared data communication is also unavailable.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Self mode" ▶ "ON"/"OFF" ▶ "Yes"

Note

- Self mode is deactivated if you call an emergency number (110, 119, or 118).
- While Self mode is activated, callers will hear a message indicating that the FOMA terminal is off or out of service area.
- The Voice mail service and the Call forwarding service still work in Self mode.
- All mails, MessageR/F received while in Self mode are stored at the i-mode center and SMS is stored at the SMS center. To receive them, deactivate Self mode and check new messages/SMS.

Data access lock

Restricting Display of Phonebook and Schedule etc.

You can lock specified functions to reject the use unless the Terminal security code is entered, or restrict the use of the FOMA terminal.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Lock" ▶ "Data access lock" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

[Data access Lock set]

Set whether to activate the Data access lock.

[Phonebook]*

The Phonebook cannot be used until the Terminal security code is entered.

- In the Redial list or logs, the phone number or mail address of the caller/sender will be displayed instead of the name saved in the Phonebook.
- Receiving Phonebook entries using infrared communication becomes unavailable.

[Data box]*

The files in Data box cannot be used until the Terminal security code is entered.

- Receiving data such as images or melodies to be saved in Data box using infrared communication becomes unavailable.

[Record message]*

The Record message cannot be used until the Terminal security code is entered.

- If the Record message is set to "ON" and locked, 1 does not appear in the Stand-by display even when a message is recorded.

[Schedule]*

The Schedule function cannot be used until the Terminal security code is entered.

- An alarm set for a Schedule event does not sound.
- Receiving schedule events using infrared communication becomes unavailable.

[i-mode]*

The i-mode function cannot be used until the Terminal security code is entered.

- i-mode connections from other than the i-mode menu screen, such as "Web To" become unavailable.
- i-Channel tickers are not displayed.
- Pattern definition for the scanning function becomes unavailable.
- Receiving bookmarks using infrared communication becomes unavailable.
- Communication from i-αppli is available.
- i-αppli update is available from i-αppli menu.

[i-αppli]*

i-αppli cannot be used until the Terminal security code is entered.

- Receiving i-αppli data using infrared communication becomes unavailable.
- If i-αppli is set as the Stand-by display, it will disappear from the Stand-by display.

* Can be set when "Data access Lock set" is set to "ON".

3 [−] [Done]

Note

- You can access the functions by entering the Terminal security code when:
  - You access a function from the Main menu or Custom menu
  - You press a key assigned to access the function in Stand-by
  - You access a function from the New task screen (P319) or Task list screen (P320)

Auto key lock

Automatically Locking Key Operations

You can set the FOMA terminal to automatically lock the Keypad to avoid being used while the FOMA terminal is closed and left for a certain period without any operations.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Auto key lock" ▶ Perform the following operations

OFF	:	Do not lock the Keypad automatically.
After 3 sec.	:	Lock the Keypad after closing the FOMA terminal or leaving it for 3 seconds from the last operation with the terminal closed.
After 5 sec.	:	Lock the Keypad after closing the FOMA terminal or leaving it for 5 seconds from the last operation with the terminal closed.
After 10 sec.	:	Lock the Keypad after closing the FOMA terminal or leaving it for 10 seconds from the last operation with the terminal closed.
After 15 sec.	:	Lock the Keypad after closing the FOMA terminal or leaving it for 15 seconds from the last operation with the terminal closed.
When LCD off	:	Lock the Keypad when closing the FOMA terminal or turning off the display with the terminal closed.

Note

- Auto Key lock is activated after canceling the Keypad lock.
- If "OFF" is set, the Keypad lock is not activated even when the FOMA terminal is closed.
- Keypad lock is not activated while functions such as 1Seg, Camera, or Music playback (except BGM playback) are in use.
- Keypad unlock→P30

Display Call/Mail logs

Setting Display for Redial and Received Calls

You can disable the display of redial, received call, sent mail, and received mail logs.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Display Call/Mail logs" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

2 Perform the following operations

The items set to "OFF" cannot be displayed.

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

[Redial logs]
Set whether to display the redial logs.

[Received call logs]
Set whether to display the received call logs.

[Sent mail logs]
Set whether to display the sent mail logs.

[Received mail logs]
Set whether to display the received mail logs.

3 [Done]

Note

- If "Received call logs" is set to "OFF", the recorded message list is not displayed.

Secret mode

Displaying Information Set as Secret

You can set whether to display secret Phonebook entries/Schedule events.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Secret mode" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Select a Secret mode setting

OFF : Display only general data other than secret data.
Secret mode : Display secret and general data.
Secret data only mode : Display only secret data.

Reject on list

Rejecting a Call from Specified Number

You can reject calls from the specific parties saved on the list.

- This function is available only when the caller sends Caller ID.
- It is recommended that you set the Caller ID request Service concurrently.

Saving Phone Numbers to Reject

You can save up to 20 phone numbers to be rejected.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Accept/Reject call" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Accept/Reject set" ▶ Move the cursor to "Reject on list" ▶ [−\][List] ▶ [−\][Add]

Reject on list screen

2 Perform the following operations

[Reject types]

Select an action for rejected calls.

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

Silent : Mute the ring tone. appears on the list.

Disconnect call : Incoming call actions are not performed. appears on the list.

[Reject number]

Specify the phone number to be rejected.

- [−/][Search]: Search and set a phone number from the Phonebook. The name saved in the Phonebook is displayed on the list.
- ●[Select]: Enter and set a phone number. The entered phone number is displayed on the list.

3 [−\][Done]

Note

- If the reject on list is not empty, you can save a new phone number on the Reject on list screen ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Add new".

Deleting a saved phone number

Select a number to delete on the Reject on list screen ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Delete"/"Delete all" ▶ "Yes".

Editing a saved phone number

Select a number to edit on the Reject on list screen ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Edit".

Setting the Reject on List

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Accept/Reject call" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Accept/Reject set" ▶ "Reject on list"

■ To cancel the rejection

Select "Accept" on the screen after selecting "Accept/Reject set".

Continued on next page

Note

- When the Reject call list is activated, and a call from a party saved as "Disconnect call" arrives, 1 appears in the Stand-by display and the call is recorded in the Received call log as a missed call. The other party hears a busy signal.
- i-mode or SMS messages are received regardless of the rejection settings.

Reject all calls

Rejecting All Incoming Calls

You can mute the ring tone for all incoming calls or disconnect calls before incoming call actions are performed.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Accept/Reject call" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Accept/Reject set" ▶ "Reject all calls" ▶ "Silent"/"Disconnect call"

Silent : Mute the ring tone for all incoming calls.

Disconnect call : Do not perform incoming call actions for all incoming calls.

■ **To cancel the rejection**

Select "Accept" on the screen after selecting "Accept/Reject set".

Note

- When a call arrives while "Disconnect call" is set, the call is not indicated and 1 appears on the Stand-by display. The call is recorded in the Received call log as a missed call. The other party hears a busy signal.
- i-mode or SMS messages are received regardless of the rejection settings.

Anonymous caller

Setting Actions when Calls Arrive from Anonymous Callers

You can set whether to accept or reject calls without Caller ID per reason for anonymous call.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Anonymous caller" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

[User unset]

Set options for incoming calls without Caller ID at the caller's will.

Disable : Cancel the setting.

Reject call : Reject incoming calls.

Silent alert : Mute the ring tone. You can select an image for the Incoming call screen from images saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276
▶ ● ▶ Select field ▶ "Image"/"i-motion" ▶ Select an image

Alert setting : You can select data for the Incoming call screen and ring tone from data in "Data box".

Incoming call screen
: ▶ ● ▶ Select field ▶ "Image"/"i-motion" ▶ Select image data

Ring tone : ▶ ● ▶ Select field ▶ "MUSIC"/"i-motion"/"Melody" ▶ Select a ring tone
- Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251) if selected a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "MUSIC".

[Pay phone]
Set an option for calls made from payphones.
- Set items and operations are the same as in "User unset".

[Not support]
Set an option for calls which Caller ID cannot be sent such as calls made from overseas or from a fixed line phone via forwarding services. (Caller ID may be sent depending on the carrier.)
- Set items and operations are the same as in "User unset".

3 [−] [Done]

Note
- If an anonymous call set to "Reject call" arrives while the Anonymous caller is activated, the call is not indicated and appears on the Stand-by display. The call is recorded in Received call log as a missed call. The other party hears a busy signal. Calls are rejected even when the Voice mail or Call forwarding service is activated. However, if Ringing time is set to 0 second or the FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off, network services are activated.
- i-mode or SMS messages are received regardless of the rejection settings.
- If a movie/i-motion movie with video/sound is set to "Select ring tone" (P94), "Call display" (P101), and the relevant voice/videophone call arrives, the playback of movie/i-motion movie takes priority over this setting even when "Alert setting" is selected and incoming call screen or ring tone is set to "Terminal setting".
- If a movie/i-motion movie with video/sound is set as either the ring tone or Incoming call screen in "Terminal setting", the same movie is set to the other item.

<User unset>
- If the Caller ID request service is activated, it takes priority over the settings of "Anonymous caller". The caller hears the voice guidance for a Caller ID request.

Set mute ring(sec.)

Muting Ring Tone for a Caller Unset in Phonebook

You can set the FOMA terminal not to ring immediately when a call arrives from a caller not saved to the Phonebook or without Caller ID. This prevents nuisance calls such as "one-ring call" that are disconnected after a short ringing time.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Sounds&Vibration" ▶ "Set mute ring(sec.)"

2 Perform the following operations
- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

[Set mute ring time]
Set whether to enable the Set mute ring time.

[Mute time]*
Set the time for which the ring tone is muted before the ringing action starts between 1 and 99 seconds.

[Missed call logs]*
Set whether to display the Received call logs for the call that was terminated in the time specified in "Mute time".

* Can be set when "Set mute ring time" is set to "ON".

3 [−] [Done]

Continued on next page

Note

- When a relevant call arrives while this function is activated, incoming call actions, such as sounding the ring tone, do not take place for the set time; however, the Incoming call screen appears.
- This function works even when "Secret mode" is set to "OFF" or a call from a secret Phonebook entry arrives.

<Set mute ring time>

- If this option is set longer than the response time of the Voice mail/Call forwarding service, network services start without the ringing action.
- If this option is set longer than "To answer" time of "Record message", the Record message starts without the ringing action.
- You cannot set "Set mute ring time" when "Reject unknown" is set to "ON".

Reject unknown

Rejecting a Call from a Caller Unset in Phonebook

You can set to reject calls from callers not saved to the Phonebook.

- This function is available only when the caller sends Caller ID.
- It is recommended that you set the Caller ID request service and "Anonymous caller" concurrently.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Accept/Reject call" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Reject unknown" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Note

- The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call actions for a rejected incoming call, however, the call is recorded in the Received call log. The other party hears a busy signal.
- Calls are rejected even when the Voice mail or Call forwarding service is activated. However, if the ringing time is set to 0 second, network services start.
- i-mode or SMS messages are received regardless of the rejection settings.
- You cannot activate "Reject unknown" when "Set mute ring time" is set to "ON" or "Data access lock" is set to "ON" with "Phonebook" checked.

Reset Settings

Resetting Various Functions

You can reset settings of various functions to the defaults.

- For functions that can be reset , refer to "Menu List" (P394).

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Reset/Clear" ▶ "Reset Settings" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

Note

- Perform "Reset Settings" with the battery level sufficient.
- During "Reset Settings", functions/communication cannot be used.

Clear memory

Deleting Saved Data All at Once

You can delete saved data.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Reset/Clear" ▶ "Clear memory"

2 Mark items to delete ▶ [−\] [Done] ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

■ Data to be deleted

Item	Data
Pre-installed data	Default data in "Data box"
User data	All data other than default data in "Data box"
PIM data	Data in "Phonebook&Logs"*1/"Stationery"*2/"1Seg", data in Inbox/Outbox*3, data in Bookmark, Screen memo, URL history, settings in Additional service and Additional guide of the network service

*1 The total calls cost is not deleted.
*2 Contents saved in Alarm are not deleted.
*3 Inbox/Out box folders, MessageR/F folders, and mail-connected i-αppli folder are not deleted.

Deleting data saved on the microSD card

You can delete all data saved on the microSD card.

▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Reset/Clear" ▶ "Clear microSD" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

Note

- Data saved on the UIM are not deleted.
- ♪Welcome Mail♪ is deleted.

<Pre-installed data>

- Some files that are used for default settings are not deleted.
- Deleted items such as i-αppli, Deco-mail picture, Deco-mail pictogram, wallpaper (Stand-by display), frames, stamps, and melodies can be downloaded from "WOW LG" i-mode site. Separate communication charges apply for downloading.

Other Security Settings

In addition to the security settings described in this chapter, the following functions/services are available.

Purpose	Function name/ Service name	Reference
To reject "nuisance call"	Nuisance call blocking service	P363
To reject a call from a caller without Caller ID	Caller ID request service	P364
To update software on the FOMA terminal when necessary	Software update	P423
To protect the FOMA terminal from harmful data	Scanning function	P426
To accept only necessary mails when receiving i-mode mails	Receive option	P138
To register or check safety messages through i-mode in case of disaster	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" Service	see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
To change a mail address	Change Mail Address	
To reject mail containing a URL	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URLs)	
To receive/reject mail from a specified domain	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/ Receive Mail Settings)	
To receive/reject mail via i-mode only		
To receive/reject mail from a specified address		
To set Spam Mail Prevention with easy steps	Spam Mail Prevention (Kantan Mail Settings)	see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
To reject incoming i-mode mail in excess of 500 a day from an i-mode terminal	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders)	
To reject SMS	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject SMS)	
To reject unsolicited mail	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail)	
To restrict incoming mail size	Limiting mail size	
To check the mail settings	Confirm Settings	
To disable mail functions temporarily	Suspending mail functions	
To check the rough location of the lost FOMA terminal	Keitai-Osagashi Service	

Mail

Mail Functions of FOMA Terminal ····· 126
i-mode Mail ····· 126
Displaying Mail Menu ····· Mail menu 127

Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-Mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail
····· Compose/Send i-mode mail 128
Creating and Sending Deco-mail ····· Deco-mail 131
Using a Template to Create Deco-mail
····· Template 134
Attaching a File ····· Attachment 135

Receiving and Operating i-mode Mail

When You Receive i-mode Mail
····· Receive mail automatically 137
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively
····· Receive option 138
Checking New i-mode Mail
····· Check new messages 139
Replying to i-mode Mail····· Reply to i-mode mail 140
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Address
····· Forward i-mode mail 140
Adding Mail Addresses/Phone Numbers to Phonebook ····· 141
Playing/Saving an Attached File from i-mode Mail ··· 141

Operating Mailbox

Displaying Mail in Inbox/Outbox or Unsent Messages
····· Inbox/Outbox/Unsent message 143

Using Mail History

Using Mail History
····· Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails 155

Configuring Mail Settings

Setting Mail Functions of the FOMA Terminal
····· Mail setting 157

Using Message Services

When You Receive MessageR/F
····· Receive Message 159
Checking New MessageR/F
····· Check new messages 160
Displaying New MessageR/F
····· MessageR/MessageF 161

Using SMS

Composing and Sending SMS
····· Compose/Send SMS 163
Automatically Receiving SMS Messages
····· Receive SMS 164
Checking New SMS Messages
····· Check new SMS 165
Setting SMS ····· SMS Settings 165

Mail Functions of FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal provides 2 mail types: i-mode mail and SMS.

- Using i-mode mail requires i-mode subscription.
- Using SMS requires no i-mode subscription.
- If you send i-mode mail or SMS containing some symbols (㈱, TEL, etc.) or pictographs, they may not be displayed correctly on a mobile phone other than i-mode terminal or on a PC.
- Mail function in Korean is supported only by SMS. If you receive e-mail in Korean via i-mode mail, text will not be displayed properly.

i-mode Mail

Upon subscription to i-mode, you can send and receive e-mail via the Internet, as well as between i-mode terminals. In addition to the message text, a total of 2MB in 10 files (pictures or movies, etc.) can be attached. Also, Deco-mail is supported, which you can change the color and size of message text or background color. You can also use Deco-mail pictogram to send richly expressive mail easily.

- For details about i-mode mail, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

SMS

You can send and receive text messages using only mobile phone numbers without subscription to i-mode.
Sending→P163, Receiving→P164, Checking→P165

SMS Addresses

The SMS destination address is the "subscribed mobile phone number".

- For destinations used for sending and receiving SMS to/from international carriers other than DOCOMO visit the DOCOMO's web site.

Number of Characters That Can be Sent or Received

The number of characters that can be sent and received in SMS is as follows:

Receiver	21 characters (including "+")
SMS text	Japanese (70 characters), Korean (70 characters)
	English (160 characters)

Sending and Receiving SMS in Korean

You can send and receive SMS in Korean to/from terminals that support Korean.

- As for sending/receiving Korean SMS to/from terminals using carriers other than DOCOMO (including international carriers) which support Korean and L-01A, it depends on the correspondence situation of each carrier. Visit DOCOMO's web site for details. Also, the number of characters that can be sent depends on the situation of each recipient carrier. For details, contact recipient carriers.
- SMS texts in Korean sent to a terminal which does not support Korean will not be displayed properly on the terminal.
- Switch Input Modes in the SMS Message to Korean→P166
- Inputting Korean→P350

When SMS Cannot be Received

SMS delivered to the SMS center will be immediately sent to your FOMA terminal. However, when your FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the SMS is stored in the SMS center.

Note

- The maximum storage period of SMS in the SMS center is 72 hours. The sender can specify the storage period within this maximum "SMS Validity Period".→P165
- Expired SMS is automatically deleted.
- SMS stored in the SMS center can be received by "Check new SMS".→P165
- When SMS stored in SMS center is delivered, it is deleted from the SMS center.

Mail menu

Displaying Mail Menu

1 Stand-by display ▶ [✉] ▶ Perform the following operations

Mail menu screen

[Inbox]
Display the Inbox list screen.→P143

[Outbox]
Display the Outbox list screen.→P144

[Unsent message]
Display the Unsent mail list screen.→P144

[Compose message]
Create new i-mode mail.→P128

[Check new messages]
Receive i-mode mail stored in the i-mode center by checking new messages.→P139

[Receive option]
You can check subjects of i-mode mail stored in the i-mode center, and select mail to be received, or deleted without reception from the i-mode center.→P138

[SMS]
Compose new SMS, or receive SMS stored in the SMS center by checking new SMS.→P163, P165

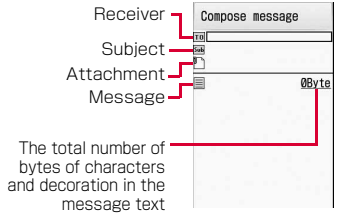
[Template]
Display a list of saved templates.→P134

[Mail setting]
Set mail functions.→P157

Compose/Send i-mode mail

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

1 Stand-by display ▶ (for 1+ seconds)



Compose message screen

2 Select TO (Receiver) field ▶ "Direct input" ▶ Enter the address

- Up to 50 half-pitch characters can be entered.
- The address can be selected from Sent message log, Received message log, Phonebook, or Mail group.→P129

3 Select Sub (Subject) field ▶ Enter the subject

- Up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters can be entered.

4 Select (Message) field ▶ Enter the message

- Up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Message text entry screen

5 [Send]

Note

- To decorate message text→P131
- To send with attachments→P135
- You can insert a line feed in the message text. The line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- A space inserted by pressing is counted as 1 half-pitch character.
- Characters may not be sent correctly to the receiver depending on the signal strength.
- Half-pitch katakana and pictographs except for mail exchanged between i-mode terminals may not be displayed correctly.
- The secret code is added automatically when mail whose address is set with the secret code is sent. However, the address of the sent mail does not display the added secret code.
- Even if i-mode mail is sent successfully, an error message "Send Fail" may appear depending on the signal strength.

- If you use Deco-mail pictogram (Picto.D) in mail, the mail is automatically sent as Deco-mail.
- If you send a mail with emotional pictographs to the other carrier's mobile phone, they will be automatically replaced with the similar pictographs that the carrier/mobile phone supports. However, they may not be displayed properly depending on the mobile phone type or its functions.
- i-mode mail that is successfully sent will be saved in Outbox. If the total number or total size of the stored sent mail exceeds the limit, the oldest message will be overwritten first. Protect sent messages that you want to keep.

Compose Message Screen Sub Menu

1 Compose message screen (P128) ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Send]
Send mail.

[Auto send]
You can set i-mode mail that was composed in out of service area to be sent automatically when the terminal moves to the place where signal can be received.

[Preview]
Display a preview of the mail to be sent.

[Save]
Save mail being created or edited in Unsent message.

[Mail address]
Add address : Send mail to multiple addresses (multi-address transmission). Up to 5 addresses can be added.
- Sent msg. log : Select an address from Sent message log.
- Rcv. msg. log : Select an address from Received message log.
- Phonebook : Select an address from Phonebook.
- Mail group : Select an address from Mail group.
- Direct input : Enter the receiver address directly.

Delete address : Delete a selected receiver address.

Change rcv. type : Set conditions to sort MessageR/F.
- Change to To : Change the selected receiver to To. The mail address entered in the To field will be shown to the recipient.
- Change to Cc : Change the selected receiver to Cc. You can specify additional addresses to send a copy of the same mail to other recipients in addition to the direct recipients. The mail address entered in the Cc field will be shown to other recipients.
  - The mail address may not be displayed depending on the recipient's mobile phone, device or mail software.
- Change to Bcc : Change the selected receiver to Bcc. You can specify addresses of recipients of the copy, however, the identity will not be shown to other recipients. The mail addresses entered in the Bcc field will not be shown to other recipients.

[Attachment]
Attach files or view/play, or delete them.→P135

[Template]
Load template : Open a template to create Deco-mail.→P134
Save template : Save the current Deco-mail as a template.

[Header/Sign.]
Attach header : Attach the set header.
Attach sign. : Attach the set signature.

Continued on next page

[Delete body]
Delete the message text.

Note

<Add address>
- When selecting a Phonebook entry with multiple mail addresses saved, you need to further specify which addresses are to be added for recipients.

<Template>
- If the message text is already entered, a confirmation whether to delete the text appears. To load the template, select "Yes".

Message Text Entry Screen Sub Menu

1 Message text entry screen (P128) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Decorate mail]
Open the palette to select the decoration to Deco-mail (Decoration). →P132

[Common phrases]
Enter or edit Common phrases.→P349

[Edit character]
Select a character or decoration in message text to copy, cut, or paste. Undo the last entry or pasting of characters.→P354

[Edit dictionary]
Edit a dictionary stored in the FOMA terminal.→P355

[Quote]
Quote the contents of a Phonebook entry, etc.→P348

[Input setting]
Configure the character entry.→P348

[Special input]
Enter a space, line feed, Kuten code, etc.→P349

[Header/Sign.]
Header : Attach the set header.
Signature : Attach the set signature.

[Jump]
Top : Move to the top of the displayed message text.
Bottom : Move to the bottom of the displayed message text.

[Image info.]
Display detailed information about an image behind the cursor.

[Preview]
Open the preview screen of the message text.

Deco-mail

Creating and Sending Deco-mail

You can create your own designed mail by adding decorations such as changing font size, font color or background color, or inserting images while editing an i-mode mail message.

- Deco-mail up to 100KB can be sent.
- Up to 20 images within 90KB can be inserted.
- Some terminals may receive Deco-mail that is larger than 10,000 bytes as mail containing a URL to browse.

The set decoration appears at the cursor position.

Message text entry screen

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Compose message"

2 Enter the receiver and subject

- Entering the receiver and subject→P128

3 Select (Message) field ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Decorate mail"

Palette display screen

4 Use the palette to decorate the message text

■ **To select a decoration before entering characters**
For operations, refer to "Decorating Text" (P132).

■ **To decorate entered characters**
For operations, refer to "Changing Decoration" (P134).

5 [−] [Close]

■ **To view the Deco-mail message**
Press [−] [Menu] ▶ "Preview".

6 ● [Set] ▶ [−] [Send]

Continued on next page

Note

- If you exchange Deco-mail with Deco-mail incompatible i-mode terminals, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- After decorated text is deleted, the decoration codes may remain and this may result in a reduction in the number of characters available to enter in the text field. Cancel any decoration before deleting the text. When you delete the text by pressing [C] for 1+ seconds, the text including any decoration will be deleted.
- If a template contains an image that cannot be sent by mail, the image may be deleted.

Decorating Text

1 Message text entry screen (P128) ▶ [−]/[Menu] ▶ "Decorate mail" ▶ Perform the following operations

- [−]/[Close]: Switch from palette functions to character entry.

[(Insert image)]

Data Box : Insert an image saved in "My picture" to the message text. ▶ Move the cursor to the folder ▶ ●[Open] ▶ Select an image

Still image photography : Capture and insert a still image. ▶ Take a picture ▶ ●[(Save)]

[(Background color)]

Set a background color of the message text.

[(Insert line)]

Insert a line in message text.

[(Edit decoration)]

Specify the range of text to decorate.→P134

- This option cannot be selected when no text has been entered in the message.

[(Char decoration)]

Select decorations to apply to characters.→P133

[(Cancel decoration)]

Delete decoration in the line at the cursor.

[(My decoration)]

Apply My decoration : Apply a character decoration which is saved beforehand.

Edit My decoration : Save your favorite character decoration.→P133

[(Undo)]

Restore a set decoration to the previous state.

[(Reset all settings)]

Delete all set decorations.

Note

- When characters with "Telop" or "Swing" set are selected and copied or cut, "Telop" or "Swing" will not take effect.

<Insert image>
- Up to 90KB or 20 images can be inserted. The number of available attachments may be reduced depending on the file size. If the maximum number of images or size is exceeded, a warning message appears.
- By default, images are saved in the "Decomail picture" and "Decomail picto" folders.
- If the same image is inserted more than once, it is considered that one image is inserted.

Decorating Characters

1 Message text entry screen (P128) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Decorate mail" ▶ Select (Char decoration)

2 Perform the following operations

[(Font color)]
Set the color for characters.
▶ Select a color ▶ Enter text
- You can also select a color from the palette by pressing [−] [Palette].

[(Font size)]
Set a font size.

[(Blink)]
Set the text to blink.
- To cancel blinking, select (Blink).

[(Move･Align)]
Set the display of the text.
- To cancel the setting, select (Move · Align (Default)).

(Telop) : Set a telop to the text.
- Characters entered between and appear as a telop.

(Swing) : Set the text to swing.
- Characters entered between and swing.

(Left) : Align characters to be entered or images to be inserted to the left.

(Center) : Align characters to be entered or images to be inserted to the center.

(Right) : Align characters to be entered or images to be inserted to the right.

Note

<Font size>
- The size of Deco-mail pictogram cannot be changed.

<Font color>
- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To restore the default color, select (Font color) from the color palette.

<Blink>
- When characters set to blink are displayed on the preview screen or the Compose message screen, the characters stop blinking after a certain period of time.

Changing Decoration

1 Message text entry screen (P128) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Decorate mail" ▶ Select (Edit decoration)

2 Use ⊕ to specify the start point

- [−\] [SelAll]: Select the entire message.

3 Use ⊕ to specify the end point ▶ Select a decoration

- Decorating operations→P133

Template

Using a Template to Create Deco-mail

Templates are form data for Deco-mail with decorations such as the font size and image insertion already set. In addition to the pre-installed templates, you can use templates downloaded from sites.

1 Compose message screen (P128) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Template" ▶ "Load template" ▶ "Yes"

- If the mail has message text entered, the entered text will be deleted and the template will be loaded.

2 Select a template ▶ ● [Select]

The selected template is inserted in the message text.

- Selecting a template then pressing ⊕ allows you to select the template while viewing.
- You can edit the message text after inserting a template.

Creating a New Template

Create user-defined templates. Created templates are saved in "Template" of Mail menu.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Template" ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "New template"

2 Create templates

- Decorating operations→P132

3 After creating a Template ▶ ● [Set] ▶ ● [Select] ▶ Edit the title ▶ [−\] [Done]

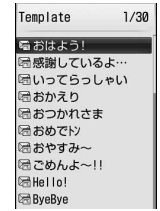
Note

- If message text in the mail is not decorated, a template cannot be saved.

Editing Templates

You can edit user-defined templates.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Template"



Template list screen

2 Select a template ▶ ●[Edit] ▶ Edit the template

- Decorating operations→P132

3 After editing the template ▶ ●[Set] ▶ "Overwrite save"/"New save"

Overwrite save : Save the edited template over the source template.
New save : Save the edited template as a new template.
▶ ●[Select] ▶ Edit the title

4 [−][Done]

Template List Screen Sub Menu

1 Template list screen (P134) ▶ Move the cursor to a template ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Compose message]
Compose a new message with the selected template.

[New Template]
Create a new template.→P134

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected template.
Delete selected : Select and delete templates.
▶ Mark templates to delete ▶ [−][Done] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−/][Menu] to select "Select all" or Deselect all".

Delete all : Delete all templates.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Edit title]
Edit the title of the selected template.

[Detail info]
Display the properties of the selected template.

Attachment

Attaching a File

You can send i-mode mail with images or melodies attached.

- Up to 2MB or 10 files can be attached. The number of available attachments may be reduced depending on the file size.
- The following file types can be attached:
  - Images (JPEG, GIF)
  - Movie/i-motion
  - Melody
  - Phonebook
  - Schedule event
  - To do
  - Bookmark
- A file prohibited to be attached to mail or to be output from the FOMA terminal cannot be attached.

1 Compose message screen (P128) ▶ Select (Attachment) field ▶ Perform the following operations

[Image]

My picture : Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276
Activate camera : Capture and attach a still image.
▶ Take a picture ▶ ●[(Save)]

Continued on next page

[Movie]

i-motion : Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".

Activate camera : Capture and attach a movie.
▶ Take a movie ▶ ●[(Save)]

[Melody]

Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data box".
▶ Move the cursor to the folder ▶ ●[Open] ▶ Select a melody

[Phonebook]

Select a Phonebook entry.

[Calendar]

Select a schedule event saved in the FOMA terminal.
▶ Select a date ▶ Select a Schedule event

[To do]

Select To do saved in the FOMA terminal.

[Bookmark]

i-mode : Attach a bookmark saved in "Bookmark" of "i-mode".

Full browser : Attach a bookmark saved in "Bookmark" of "Full browser".

[Others]

Attach a file saved in the "OTHER" folder in a microSD card.

Note

- GIF images and attached melodies cannot be received with an i-mode terminal using the mova service.
- A movie/i-motion movie over 2MB cannot be attached. Reduce the size under "Clipping" to the available size before attaching it.→P292
- Depending on the recipient terminal, a movie may be displayed coarsely or as sequential still images. When sending a movie/i-motion movie which size is over 500KB to i-mode terminals other than 2MB-compatible ones, a movie captured with following setting is recommended.
  Size restriction: 500KB, Select Size: QCIF (176×144), Quality: Super fine
- Some i-motion movies may not be attached.

Playing/Displaying/Deleting an Attached File

1 Compose message screen (P128) ▶ Select a desired attachment field with a file attached ▶ Perform the following operations

[Play/disp file]

Play or display the selected attachment.

[Delete]

Delete the selected attachment.

Note

- To add another attachment, select an (Attachment) field with no file attached.

Receive mail automatically

When You Receive i-mode Mail

When the FOMA terminal is in the service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent from the i-mode center.

1 After the i-mode mail is received, appears at the top of the screen

When the reception is completed, the Receive results screen appears.

- The previous screen returns if no operation is performed for approximately 30 seconds.
- Selecting "Mail" opens the Inbox list screen.
- Until the detail screen of received i-mode mail is opened, appears at the top of the screen and 1 (the number indicates the number of messages) appears in Stand-by.

Receive results screen

Note

- When new i-mode mail is delivered, other i-mode mail and MessageR/F stored in the i-mode center are received at the same time.
- When receive option for i-mode mail has been set, sent i-mode mail is stored in the i-mode center. You can check the subject of i-mode mail stored in the center before selecting and receiving the mail.→P138
- If received mail was sent from a terminal that is capable of setting To, Cc, or Bcc, you can check how the mail was addressed to you on the FOMA terminal.→P146

- Melodies, movies, and still images can be received as attachments to i-mode mail. Incompatible files may be automatically deleted at the i-mode center. If an attached file is deleted, "添付ファイル削除 (Attached file deleted)" is added to the message text.
- Files attached to a mail cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal when the FOMA terminal does not support the file type. Those files can be saved to a microSD card or forwarded.→P140
- Up to 100KB of i-mode mail including attachments can be automatically downloaded. Attachments over 100KB can be manually downloaded from the i-mode center.→P141
- You can set whether to receive attached melodies or images under "Receive attach file".→P157
- If the size of a received mail exceeds the number of characters set under "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Mail Settings" ▶ "Limit Mail Size", you can select and download the attached file or the data whose name appears in the message text.→P141
- If the total number or total size of the received mail (i-mode mail and SMS) stored in the FOMA terminal exceeds the limit, the oldest read message will be overwritten first. Protect the received messages you want to keep.
- Incoming mail is saved at the i-mode center when:
  - Power is OFF
  - A videophone call in progress
  - Self mode is activated
  - The terminal is out of service area
  - Omakase Lock
  - "Receive option set" is set to "ON"
  - Inbox is full with protected or unread mail
- When mail is kept at the i-mode center, or appears. When the terminal power is off or the terminal is out of service area, these icons may not be displayed even there is i-mode mail at the i-mode center.
- If multiple i-mode mail messages or MessageR/F are received concurrently, the ring tone set to the last received i-mode mail or MessageR/F sounds.

Displaying New i-mode Mail

1 Receive results screen (P137) ▶ "Mail" ▶ Select a folder

2 Select mail to be displayed

Received mail detail screen

Note

- Images attached to i-mode mail may not be properly displayed.
- Attachments incompatible with the FOMA terminal cannot be saved to "Data box", however, they can be forwarded or saved to a microSD card (when saving in a microSD card, the file name will be changed to "OTHER001" to "OTHER999").

Receive option

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check the subject of i-mode mail stored in the i-mode center, and select mail to receive or delete at the i-mode center before downloading new messages. To use the Receive option, set "Receive option set" to "ON" in advance.

Setting Receive Option

Set "Receive option set" to "ON" to receive selected i-mode mail.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Receive option" ▶ ●[Select] ▶ "ON"

After this option is set, i-mode mail will not be received automatically.

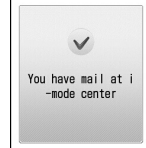
Note

- To set "Receive option" to "OFF", perform from "Receive option set" (P157).

If You Receive i-mode Mail when Receive Option is Set

1 Notification of received mail screen appears

Press ● [OK] or 2abc/ to close the notification screen.



Notification of received mail screen

Note

- ✉ or ✉ indicating the incoming i-mode mail will not be displayed, and the mail ring tone will not sound.
- The i-Channel ticker stops while the Notification of received mail screen is displayed.

Setting Receive Option for i-mode Mail

After "Receive option" is set to "ON", perform the following steps to select and receive i-mode mail.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Receive option"

For subsequent steps, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ Icons displayed on the Receive option screen indicating attachments

Icon	File type
📷	An image is attached.
🎥	An i-motion movie is attached.
♪	A melody is attached.
📄	Another type of file is attached.

Note

- Even when "Receive option set" is set to "ON", all messages will be received when "Check new messages" is used. If you do not want to receive mail, exclude "Mail" from the items to be checked.→P157
- Receive option can also be performed from "iMenu". Select "iMenu" ▶ "メニューリスト (Menu List)" ▶ "メール選択受信 (Receive option)".

Check new messages

Checking New i-mode Mail

i-mode mails that could not be received for a reason, such as because the FOMA terminal was out of service area, are stored in the i-mode center. You can receive stored i-mode mail by checking the i-mode center.

- ✉ appears at the top of the screen when mail is kept at the i-mode center.
- You can select items to check (mail or MessageR/F) under "Check new messages" (P157).
- You cannot check new messages when the FOMA terminal is out of service area.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Check new messages"

When checking is completed, the Check results screen appears.

Note

- Even when i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode center, ✉ may not appear on the screen if mail arrived while the FOMA terminal power was turned off.

Reply to i-mode mail

Replying to i-mode Mail

You can reply to the sender of i-mode mail. Replying can be made by entering new text or quoting the text of received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (P143) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Reply/Forward" ▶ "Reply"/ "Reply with quote"

- You can reply to mail also by pressing [−] [Reply] on the Received mail detail screen.
- If the mail is sent to multiple receivers, you can select "Sender" to reply only to the sender or select "All" to reply the sender and all other receivers.

2 Enter the subject and the message text

- "Re:" is added to the subject.
- When replying by quoting, ">" is added at the beginning of the quoted message.
- Editing the subject and message→P128.

3 [−] [Send]

Note

- After exceeding the storage capacity of Outbox, a reply cannot be created. Delete mail saved in Outbox before replying.
- The reply to received Deco-mail with quotation has original decoration and images entered in the message text. However, restricted images will not be entered.

Forward i-mode mail

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Address

You can forward received i-mode mail to other address.

1 Received mail detail screen (P143) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Reply/Forward" ▶ "Forward"

2 Enter the receiver

- "Fw:" is added to the subject.
- Editing the receiver and message text→P128.

3 [−] [Send]

Note

- When a file prohibited to be attached to mail or to be output from the FOMA terminal is attached or pasted to an i-mode mail to be forwarded, the file will be deleted.
- After exceeding the storage capacity of Outbox, you cannot forward it. Delete mail saved in Outbox before forwarding.
- If you forward a received Deco-mail, the original decoration and images remain entered in the message text. However, restricted images will not be entered.

Adding Mail Addresses/Phone Numbers to Phonebook

You can save mail addresses and phone numbers in received mail to the Phonebook.

Registering an Address/Phone Number from the Message Text

1 Received mail detail screen (P143) ▶ Move the cursor to the address/number to save ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Save" ▶ "No./addr. in body"

Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Received/Dialed Calls etc" (P82).

Saving a Receiver, Sender Address, or Phone Number

1 Received mail detail screen (P143) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Save" ▶ "From Address"

If there are multiple recipients/senders, further select the addresses/phone numbers to register.
Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Received/Dialed Calls etc." (P82).

Playing/Saving an Attached File from i-mode Mail

You can play or save an image, melody, movie, or i-motion movie attached or pasted to i-mode mail.

Retrieving Selected Attached File

When the size of a received message including attachments exceeds 100KB, you will need to download the attachments from the i-mode center.

- All the attached files selected are downloaded regardless of the setting of "Receive attach file" option in "Communication" of "Mail setting".
- Expired files cannot be downloaded.

1 Received mail detail screen (P143) ▶ Select a file name

Note

- When there is less available space for Inbox than the file size, the attachment cannot be retrieved.

Displaying/Playing/Saving/Deleting an Attached File

1 Received mail detail screen (P143) ▶ Move the cursor to the attached file

- ●[Select]: Display/play the selected attachment.

2 −[Menu] ▶ "Attachment" ▶ Perform the following operations

[View/Play]
Display/play the selected attachment.

[Save]
Save the selected attachment.
- Obtained images will be saved in the "i-mode" folder in "My picture" of "Data box". (If the image can be used as a Deco-mail pictogram, it will be saved in the "Deco-mail picto" folder.)
- Movies/i-motion movies will be saved in the "i-mode" folder in "i-motion" of "Data box".
- Melodies will be saved in the "i-mode" folder in "Melody" of "Data box".
- Phonebook entries will be saved to Phonebook in the FOMA terminal.
- Schedule events will be saved to Schedule in the FOMA terminal.
- To do tasks will be saved to To do list in the FOMA terminal.
- Bookmarks will be saved in "Bookmark" in "i-mode" or "Full browser".
- Attached files other than the above can be saved in the "OTHER" folder in a microSD card.

[Delete]
Delete the selected attachment.

Note
- Large i-mode mail may be rejected by the i-mode center, and an error message may be returned to the source address.
- i-mode mail that is 100KB (with attachments included) or smaller can be automatically downloaded. Attachments larger than 100KB can be manually downloaded from the i-mode center.
- You can set a size limit for i-mode mail messages.
- When the image size is larger than the screen, it is shrunk and displayed.
- Some images and movies/i-motion movies may not be displayed or played.
- When "Melody auto play" is set to "ON", an attached melody is played automatically when you open a received i-mode mail.
- A software that supports i-motion is required to play an i-motion mail on a PC.

Saving Inline Images

1 Received mail detail screen (P143) ▶ −[Menu] ▶ "Save" ▶ "Inline image"

2 Select an image ▶ ●[Edit] ▶ Edit the file name ▶ −[Save]

- To set as Stand-by display, select "Yes".

Inbox/Outbox/Unsent message

Displaying Mail in Inbox/ Outbox or Unsent Messages

- To display contents of a folder with security set, enter the Terminal security code.

Displaying Received Mail

- Up to 1,000 incoming i-mode mail and SMS messages can be saved in Inbox. However, the savable number depends on the amount of the data.
- By default, "♪Welcome Mail♪" is saved. Packet communication charges do not apply for this mail.
- You cannot reply to "♪Welcome Mail♪".

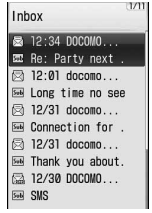
1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Inbox"

- [−][Add]: You can add a folder.

Inbox list screen

2 Select a folder

- [−][Reply]: Reply to the sender and multiple recipients.→P140



Received mail list screen

3 Select a message

- ●: Open the previous or next mail.
- [−][Reply]: Reply to the sender and multiple recipients.→P140

Received mail detail screen

Displaying Sent Mail

- Up to 500 i-mode mail, SMS, and unsent messages can be saved in Outbox. However, the savable number depends on the amount of the data.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Outbox"

- [−][Add]: You can add a folder.

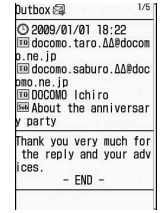
Outbox list screen

2 Select a folder

Sent mail list screen

3 Select a message

- ●: Open the previous or next mail.
- [−][Edit]: Open the Compose message or SMS screen.→P128, P163



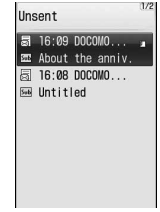
Sent mail detail screen

Displaying Unsent Messages

- Messages saved in Unsent message are included in the maximum number of savable messages in Outbox.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Unsent message"

- [−][Delete]: Delete i-mode mail or SMS.



Unsent message list screen

2 Select a message

The Compose message/SMS screen appears depending on the type of the selected mail. You can also edit unsent mail.

Auto sort

Sorting Sent or Received Mail Automatically to Folders

Set conditions for automatically saving mail in specified folders.

1 Inbox list screen (P143)/Outbox list screen (P144) ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Auto sort"

2 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.

[From]

Set mail address or phone number as a sorting condition.

▶ "Address or number" ▶ "Direct input" ▶ Enter the mail address or phone number

- The address can be selected from the Recent address, Recent calls, or Phonebook.→P129

[Subject]

Set a mail subject as a condition.

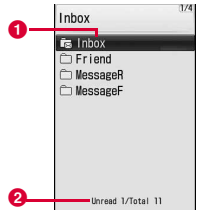
▶ "Input subject" ▶ Enter the subject

Note

- To add an additional sorting condition, select "Rule add" after Step 2. Up to 10 sorting conditions can be set.
- To cancel a sorting condition, select the condition to cancel ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Release" ▶ "Yes".
- To edit a sorting condition, select the condition to edit ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Edit".
- The same sorting conditions as ones set to another folder cannot be set. When you attempt to set the same sorting condition, a confirmation whether to change the sorting condition already set. Select "Yes" to cancel the setting already set and set the new sorting condition. Select "No" to cancel to input the new sorting condition.
- When setting a mail address as a sorting condition, the domain name (the string followed by @) should be included. For example, when selecting an address from the Sent message log or Received message log, if the message was exchanged based on their phone numbers, the address does not include the domain name. In this case, it is not recognized as a sorting condition.
- When setting a sorting condition to SMS, enter the phone number for "Form". You cannot set "Subject" as a sorting condition.
- To return to the list screen, press [クリア あと].

Received/Sent/Unsent Mail Screen Components

Inbox/Outbox List Screen



Ex.: Inbox list screen

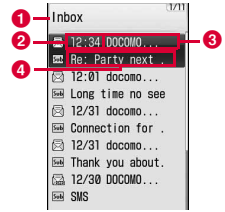
❶ **Folder name**

❷ **Number of unread messages/Total number of messages in the folder**
This is displayed on the Inbox list screen. For Outbox, only the total number of messages in the folder is displayed.

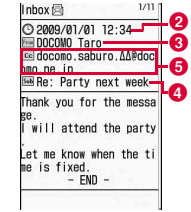
■ Icons displayed on the Inbox/Outbox screen

Icon	Description
	"Inbox"/"MessageR"/"MessageF"/"Outbox" (Default folders)
(Yellow)	User defined folder
	Auto sort
	Security is set
(Yellow)	Unread mail

Received Mail List Screen/Received Mail Detail Screen



Received mail list screen



Received mail detail screen

❶ **Displayed folder name**

❷ **Received date and time**
On the Received mail list screen, messages received before today have the date displayed, and messages received today have the time displayed.

❸ **Sender's phone number/mail address**
If the phone number or mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the name in the Phonebook appears.

❹ **Subject**
"SMS" is displayed for an SMS message.

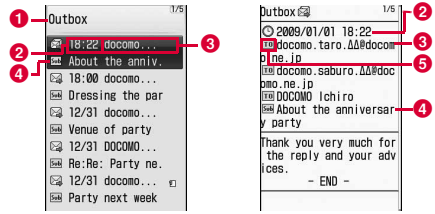
❺ **Address types and multiple recipients**
If mail is sent to multiple addresses, their address types (To or Cc) are displayed. If the mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the name in the Phonebook appears.

■ Icons displayed on the Received mail list screen/ Received mail detail screen

Icon	Description
✉/✉/✉	Unread i-mode mail/SMS/SMS report
✉/✉/✉	Read i-mode mail/SMS/SMS report
✉	Replied
✉	Forwarded
✉	Sender mail address to which the reply cannot be sent
✉/✉	Invalid multiple recipient addresses to which the reply cannot be sent
🔒	The message is protected.
📱	Saved in the UIM
🕐	Received date and time
🕐(🌐)	Different-Time zone SMS received
♪	Melody is attached.
✉	i-αppli can be started from the message text.
📎 (♪/🖼/🎞/📞/📋/📄/📎)	Melody/still Image/movies/Phonebook entry/Schedule event/bookmark/other file is attached.
📎	Multiple files attached
📎	Damaged file
📎 (Gray)	Deleted attachment (Example: For a still image)
📎	Attached file un-retrieved
📎	Attached file deleted without retrieving
📎	Attached file interrupted while retrieving
📎	Acquisition failed.
📱	Attached file with the UIM security function activated
Sub	Subject
From/From Cc/From Bcc	The message sent with the address as To, Cc, or Bcc
TO/Cc	Multiple recipient address types other than own address (To/Cc)

* Different icons indicated with ( ) appear on a detail screen.

Sent Mail List Screen/Outbox Detail Screen



Sent mail list screen

Sent mail detail screen

❶ **Displayed folder name**

❷ **Sent date and time**
On the Sent mail list screen, messages sent before today have the date displayed, and messages sent today have the time displayed.

❸ **Recipient phone number/mail address**
If the phone number or mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the name in the Phonebook appears.*
* When the name is set to appear in "Switch view"→P153

❹ **Subject**
"SMS" is displayed for an SMS message.

❺ **Receiver type**
Indicate the receiver type of the sent mail (To, Cc, or Bcc).

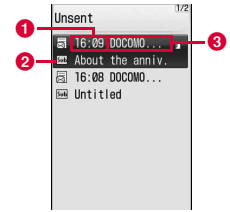
Continued on next page

■ Icons displayed on the Sent mail list screen/Sent mail detail screen

Icon	Description
/SMS	Sent i-mode mail/SMS
	i-mode mail sent to multiple recipients
	Failed to be sent
	The message is protected.
	SMS saved in the UIM
	Sent date and time
	Melody is attached.
	i-αppli can be started from the message text.
(/Still Image/Movies/Phonebook entry/Schedule event/Bookmark/other file is attached.	Melody/still Image/movies/Phonebook entry/Schedule event/Bookmark/other file is attached.
	Multiple files attached
	File with UIM security function attached
Sub	Subject
TO/Cc/Bcc	Sent as To/Cc/Bcc

* Different icons indicated with ( ) appear on a detail screen.

Unsent Mail List Screen



Unsent mail list screen

❶ **Saved date and time**
Messages saved before today have the date displayed, and messages saved today have the time displayed.

❷ **Subject**
"SMS" is displayed for an SMS message.

❸ **Recipient phone number/mail address**
If the phone number or mail address is saved in the Phonebook, the name in the Phonebook appears.*
* When the name is set to appear in "Switch view"→P155

■ Icons displayed on the Unsent mail list screen

Icon	Description
/SMS	Unsent i-mode mail/SMS
	i-mode mail with auto send reserved

* Other than the above, same icons as for sent mail are used.

Inbox/Outbox List Screen Sub Menu

1 Inbox list screen (P143)/Outbox list screen (P144) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Manage folders]

Add folder : Add a folder.

Delete folder : Delete the selected folder.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

Rename folder : Change the name of the selected folder.

Reorder folder : Select the display position of the folders and sort folders.

Folder lock : Set or release security to the selected folder.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Delete message]

Read in folder* : Delete all read messages in the Inbox folder.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

All in folder : Delete all messages in the Inbox/Outbox folder. (Except the protected messages)
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

All with protected : Delete all messages in the Inbox folder. (Including the protected messages)
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Auto sort]

Set conditions for mail to be saved automatically in the selected folder.→P145

[Send all Ir data]

Send all mail in Inbox/Outbox via infrared communication.

▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Enter the authentication password ▶ "Yes"

[Copy all microSD]

Copy all messages in the selected folder to the microSD card.

▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Memory status]

Display number of messages in the Inbox/Outbox and Unsent message folders.

[Clear inbox]*

Delete the user created folders and mail saved in "Inbox" and "user-defined folder". (Except the protected messages and folders containing the protected messages)

▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

* Not displayed for sent mail list screen.

Note

<Manage folders>

- If [−/] [Add] is pressed on the Inbox or Outbox list screen, a folder can be added.

<Rename folder/Reorder folder/Delete folder/Auto sort>

- This option is not available for the default "Inbox", "Outbox", "MessageR", and "MessageF" folders. However, "Auto sort" is available for the "MessageR" and "MessageF" folders.

Continued on next page

<Delete message>
- A folder containing protected mail cannot be deleted.
- Protected mail and SMS saved in the UIM are not deleted.
- When unread mail exist, or when "Delete folder" is selected for a folder containing mail, a confirmation for deletion appears. Select "Yes" to delete.

Received Mail List Screen Sub Menu

1 Received mail list screen (P143) ▶ Move the cursor to mail ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Reply/Forward]

Reply : Reply to the selected mail.→P140
Reply with quote : Reply to the selected mail by quoting the received message text.→P140
Forward : Forward the received mail to another receiver.

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected message.
Delete selected : Select and delete messages.
▶ Mark mail to delete ▶ [−] [Done] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−/] [Menu] to select "Select all", "Deselect all", or "Switch view".

Delete all read : Delete all read messages in the folder.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"
Delete all : Delete all mail in the folder.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Move folder]

Move one : Move the selected mail to another folder.
Move selected : Select mail messages and move them to another folder.
▶ Mark mail to move ▶ [−] [Done] ▶ Select a destination folder
- Press [−/] [Menu] to select "Select all", "Deselect all", or "Switch view".

Move all : Move all mail in the folder to another folder.

[Status setting]

Protect : Protect or unprotect the selected mail.
Read : Mark unread mail as read.
Memory status : Display the number of messages in Inbox.

[View setting]

Switch view : Set mail display method.
Sort : Set conditions to sort messages.

[Filter]

Display messages that meet certain conditions.

Address : Display only mail from a specific address.
▶ Select an item ▶ Select/input the address
Subject : Display only mail with a specific subject.
Unread : Display only unread mail.
Read : Display only read mail.
Protected : Display only protected mail.
Not protected : Display only unprotected mail.
Attached file : Display only mail with a file attached.
Mail : Display only i-mode mail.
SMS : Display only SMS and SMS reports.
all : Display all mail in the folder.

[Export]

Ir exchange : Send the selected mail or all mail in the folder via infrared communication.→P307

Copy to microSD : Copy the selected mail or all mail in the folder to the microSD card. Copying all mail in the folder requires you to enter the Terminal security code.

UIM : Copy or move the selected SMS to the FOMA terminal or UIM.

[Auto sort]

Automatically save mail to the specified folder.→P145
▶ Set sorting condition ▶ [−]([Done]) ▶ Select a folder

[Multiple choice]

Select multiple mail to perform operations.

- Press [−]([Menu]) to perform "Delete", "Move folder", "Protect", "Read status", "Select all", or "Release all" operation.

Note

<Delete>

- If there are unread messages, a confirmation for deletion appears. Select "Yes" to delete.

<Filter>

- Address of exact match or subjects which meet right truncation of certain conditions are displayed.

Received Mail Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Received mail detail screen (P143) ▶ [−]([Menu]) ▶ Perform the following operations

[Reply/Forward]

Reply or forward the displayed mail to another receiver.→P140

[Move folder]

Move the displayed mail to another folder.

[Delete]

Delete the displayed mail.

[Protect]

Protect or unprotect the displayed mail.

[Save]

From Address : Save the mail address of the sender or multiple recipients to the Phonebook.→P141

No./addr. in body : Save the phone numbers or email addresses in the displayed mail to the Phonebook.→P141

Inline image : Save images contained in the displayed mail.→P142

Template : Save Deco-mail as a template.
▶ ●([Select]) ▶ Edit the title ▶ [−]([Done])

Continued on next page

[Copy]

Copy contents of the displayed mail.

Body : Select and copy contents of message text.→P354

Subject : Copy the subject.

Mail address : Copy address. If there are multiple addresses, select an address from the Mail address list screen.

[Attachment]

Save, play/view, or delete files attached to the displayed i-mode mail. →P142

[View setting]

Font size : Set a font size for the message text on the Mail display screen

Scroll : Set the number of lines scrolled when ⊛ is pressed on the Mail display screen.

[Export]

Ir exchange : Send the selected mail or all mail in the folder via infrared communication.

Copy microSD : Copy the selected mail or all mail in the folder to the microSD card. Copying all mail in the folder requires you to enter the Terminal security code.

UIM : Copy or move the selected SMS to the FOMA terminal or UIM.

Note

<Protect>
- Up to 1,000 mails can be protected.

<Delete>
- Protected mail cannot be deleted.

Sent Mail List Screen Sub Menu

1 Sent mail list screen (P144) ▶ Move the cursor to mail ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Edit]

Edit and send sent mail.→P128, P163

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected message.

Delete selected : Select and delete messages.
▶ Mark mail to delete ▶ [\−][Done] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−/][Menu] to select "Select all", "Deselect all", or "Switch view".

Delete all : Delete all mail in the folder.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Move]

Move one : Move the selected mail to another folder.

Move selected : Select mail messages and move them to another folder.
▶ Mark mail to move ▶ [\−][Done] ▶ Select a destination folder
- Press [−/][Menu] to select "Select all", "Deselect all", or "Switch view".

Move all : Move all mail in the folder to another folder.

[Protect]

Protect one : Protect the selected mail.

Protect selected : Select and protect messages.
▶ Mark mail to protect ▶ [−][Done]
• Press [−/][Menu] to select "Select all", "Deselect all", or "Switch view".

Protect all : Protect all mail in the folder.

Cancel one : Unprotect the selected mail.

Cancel selected : Select and unprotect messages.
• The operations are same as "Protect selected"

Cancel all : Unprotect all mail in the folder.

[View setting]

Switch view : Set mail display method.

Sort : Set conditions to sort messages.

[Filter]

Display messages that meet certain conditions.

Address : Display only mail sent to a specific address.
▶ Select an item ▶ Select/input the address

Subject : Display only mail with a specific subject.

Protected : Display only protected mail.

Not protected : Display only unprotected mail.

Attached file : Display only mail with a file attached.

Mail : Display only i-mode mail.

SMS : Display only SMS.

all : Display all mail in the folder.

[Export]

Ir exchange : Send the selected mail or all mail in the folder via infrared communication.→P307

Copy to microSD
: Copy the selected mail or all mail in the folder to the microSD card. Copying all mail in the folder requires you to enter the Terminal security code.

UIM : Copy or move the selected SMS to the FOMA terminal or UIM.

[Memory status]

Display the number of messages in Outbox.

[Multiple choice]

Select multiple mail to perform operations.
• Press [−/][Menu] to perform "Delete", "Move folder", "Protect", "Select all", or "Release all" operation.

Note

<Filter>
• Address of exact match or subjects which meet right truncation of certain conditions are displayed.

Sent Mail Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Sent mail detail screen (P144) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Edit]

Edit and send sent mail.→P128, P163

[Move folder]

Move the displayed mail to another folder.

[Delete]

Delete the displayed mail.

Continued on next page

[Protect]
Protect or unprotect the displayed mail.

[Save]
From Address
: Save the mail address to the Phonebook.→P141

No./addr. in body
: Save the phone numbers or email addresses in the displayed mail to the Phonebook.→P141

Inline image
: Save images contained in the displayed mail.→P142

Template
: Save Deco-mail as a template.
▶ ●[Select] ▶ Edit the title ▶ −[Done]

[Copy]
Copy contents of the displayed mail.

Body : Select and copy contents of message text.→P354
Subject : Copy the subject.
Mail address
: Copy address. If there are multiple recipients, select addresses to copy.

[Attachment]
Save, play/view, or delete files attached to the displayed i-mode mail. →P142

[View setting]
Font size : Set a font size for the message text on the Mail display screen
Scroll : Set the number of lines scrolled when ⊛ is pressed on the Mail display screen.

[Export]
Ir exchange : Send the selected mail or all mail in the folder via infrared communication.
Copy microSD
: Copy the selected mail or all mail in the folder to the microSD card.
UIM : Copy or move the selected SMS to the FOMA terminal or UIM.

Note

<Protect>
- Up to 500 mails can be protected.

<Delete>
- Protected mail cannot be deleted.

Unsent Mail List Screen Sub Menu

1 Unsent mail list screen (P144) ▶ Move the cursor to mail ▶ −/[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Delete]
Delete one : Delete the selected message.
Delete selected : Select and delete messages.
▶ Mark mail to delete ▶ −[Done] ▶ "Yes"
- Press −/[Menu] to select "Select all", "Deselect all", or "Switch view".

Delete all : Delete all unsent messages.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[View setting]

Switch view : Set mail display method.
Sort : Set conditions to sort messages.

[Filter]

Display messages that meet certain conditions.

Address : Display only mail sent to a specific address. ▶ Select an item ▶ Select/input the address
Subject : Display only mail with a specific subject.
Attached file : Display only mail with a file attached.
Mail : Display only i-mode mail.
SMS : Display only SMS.
all : Display all unsent messages.

[Ir exchange]

Send the selected mail or all mail in the folder via infrared communication.→P307

[Copy microSD]

Copy the selected mail or all mail in the folder to the microSD card. Copying all mail in the folder requires you to enter the Terminal security code.

[Cancel auto send]

Cancel the auto send setting.

[Auto send fail reason]

Display the reason for auto send failure.

[Memory status]

Display number of unsent messages.

Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails

Using Mail History

Up to 30 entries will be saved in each the Received mail logs and Sent mail logs. Also, up to 60 entries of sent/ received mail will be saved in "Recent". These logs can be used to compose mail and save addresses to the Phonebook.

- If the maximum number of recordable entries has been exceeded, the oldest entry will be overwritten first.

Example: To display the Received mails

1 Stand-by display ▶ ● (for 1+ seconds)

■ **To display the Sent mails**
Stand-by display ▶ ● (for 1+ seconds)

■ **To display the Recent mails**
Stand-by display ▶ ⌐ (for 1+ seconds)

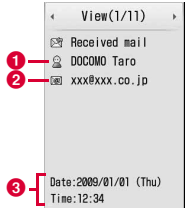
Ex.: Received mail list screen

Continued on next page

2 Select an entry in the log

- [−][Mail]: Create mail to the receiver or sender of the selected entry.

❶ The name saved in the Phonebook
❷ Other party's mail address
❸ Received/sent date and time



Ex.: Received mail detail screen

■ Icons displayed on the Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails

Icon	Description
	Received mail
	Sent mail
	Received SMS
	Sent SMS
	Mail and SMS that were received/sent while roaming*

* The received/sent date and time is shown in the local time.

Received Mails/Sent Mails/Recent Mails Sub Menu

1 Use ◉ to move the cursor to a log entry to use ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Voice call]
Make a voice call to the selected log entry.

[Video phone call]
Make a videophone call to the selected log entry.

[Compose mail]
Create mail to the address or sender of the selected log entry. Go to Step 3 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).

[Add to phonebook]
Save the mail address of the selected log entry to the Phonebook. Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Received/Dialed Calls etc." (P82).
- Save only unsaved mail addresses.

[Customize call]
Edit the phone number of the selected log entry and dial.

[Change list]*
Recent calls : Display all incoming and outgoing call log entries.
Recent mails : Display all received and sent mail log entries.
Received calls : Display incoming call log entries.
Received mails : Display received mail log entries.
Redial : Display phone redial log entries.
Sent mails : Display sent mail log entries.

- The item for the currently displayed log is not shown.

[Delete]
Delete the selected log entry.

[Delete all]*
Delete all log entries.

* Not displayed on the detail screen of Received mails/Sent mails/Recent mails.

Mail setting

Setting Mail Functions of the FOMA Terminal

Communication

Configuring Communication Settings

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "Communication" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Receive option set]

To enable/disable the Receive option (P138), set whether to receive i-mode mail automatically.

ON : Mail will not be received automatically.
OFF : Mail will be received automatically.

[Receive attach file]

Specify attached files to be retrieved when i-mode mail is received.

▶ Mark items to download ▶ [−] [Done]

[Check new messages]

Specify request items when using "Check new messages".

▶ Mark items to check ▶ [−] [Done]

Note

<Receive option set>

- When this option is set to "ON", i-mode mail cannot be received automatically. Incoming i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode center, and the Notification of received mail screen (P138) appears.

<Receive attach file>

- If the attached file set not to be received arrives, the file name is contained in the message text.→P141

Edit

Editing Header/Signature/Quotation

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "Edit" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Edit header]

Set a header to be inserted to i-mode mail text.

▶ ● [Edit] ▶ Enter a header

[Edit signature]

Set a signature to be inserted to i-mode mail text.

▶ ● [Edit] ▶ Enter a signature

[Edit quotation]

Set a symbol indicating quotation from received mail used for replying by quoting.

▶ ● [Select] ▶ Enter a quotation mark ▶ [−] [Done]

[Auto attach]

Set whether to automatically attach a header or signature when composing i-mode mail.

▶ Mark items to be attached ▶ [−] [Done]

Display

Configuring Display Settings

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "Display" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Font size]

Set a font size for text on the Mail detail screen.

- Pressing [1], [2], or [3] on the Received mail detail screen also changes the font size.

Continued on next page

[Scroll]
Set the number of lines scrolled when ◉ is pressed on the Mail detail screen or the Preview screen.

[Mail list view]
Set mail display method on the Mail list screen.

[Folder security]
Set security for Inbox/Outbox and Unsent message in Mail menu. To display security-enabled mail, the Terminal security code must be entered.

▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Mark items to enable ▶ −[Done]

[Melody auto play]
Set whether to automatically play attached or pasted melodies on the Mail display screen.

[Receiving display]
Set whether to notify with a ring tone or Receive results screen when i-mode mail or MessageR/F is received while operating the FOMA terminal (displaying other than Stand-by display).

Alarm mode : Notify with a ring tone or the Receive results screen.
- The Receive results screen is not displayed depending on the function in use such as while calling or activating Camera.

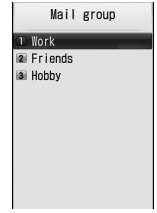
Operation mode : Prioritize the FOMA terminal operation and does not notify with a ring tone or the Receive results screen, etc.
- When receiving i-mode message or Message R/F while the display is turned off, the display does not light up.

Mail group

Registering Mail Group

Register mail addresses to a mail group so that you can easily specify a certain group of multiple recipients.
Up to 10 mail groups can be created. Up to 5 recipients can be registered to a mail group.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "Mail group"



Mail group list screen

2 −[Add] ▶ Enter a mail group name ▶ ◉[Set]

3 Select the registered mail group ▶ Select a receiver field ▶ Select a registration method ▶ −[Done]

Sent address : Select an address from Sent mails.
Rcv. address : Select an address from Received mails.
Phonebook : Select an address from the Phonebook.
Direct input : Enter the receiver address directly.

Mail Group List Screen Sub Menu

1 Mail group list screen (P158) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Delete group]
Delete the selected mail group.

[Add group]
Create a new mail group.

[Rename group]
Edit the selected mail group name.

[Write Mail]
Create i-mode mail to the selected mail group.→P128

Others

Configuring Other Settings

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "Others" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Check settings]
Check the contents set in "Mail setting".

[Reset settings]
Reset the contents set in "Mail setting" to the default.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

Note

<Reset settings>
- The header and signature will not be reset.

Receive Message

When You Receive MessageR/F

When the FOMA terminal is in service area, MessageR/F is sent automatically from the i-mode center. When MessageR/F arrives, the display, ring tone, or vibration notifies you of new messages.

- Up to 100 MessageR or MessageF can be saved respectively. However, the number of savable messages varies depending on the message size.

Viewing New MessageR/F

When MessageR/F arrives, the latest message appears automatically.

- "Auto-display" can be configured to allow the detail screen to automatically open after receiving a MessageR/F.→P160

1 Automatically receive MessageR/F when it arrives

- After receiving a MessageR/F, the Receive results screen is displayed.
- The previous screen returns if no operation is performed for approximately 30 seconds.

Auto-display

Displaying MessageR/F Automatically

Set automatic display method of MessageR/F.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "Display" ▶ "Auto-display" ▶ Perform the following operations

MessageR preferred	:If a MessageR and MessageF are received simultaneously, MessageR is automatically shown.
MessageR only	:Only MessageR is automatically displayed.
MessageF preferred	:If a MessageR and MessageF are received simultaneously, MessageF is automatically shown.
MessageF only	:Only MessageF is automatically displayed.
Auto-display off	:Messages are not displayed automatically.

Melody auto play

Playing a Melody Automatically When MessageR/F is Displayed

Set whether to automatically play a melody when MessageR/F is displayed.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "Display" ▶ "Melody auto play" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Check new messages

Checking New MessageR/F

MessageR/F that were not received because the FOMA terminal was out of service area are stored at the i-mode center, and , , or will appear at the top on the screen.
Checking new messages downloads the stored MessageR/F.

- You cannot check new messages when the FOMA terminal is out of service area.
- Set items to check (mail and MessageR/F) in "Check new messages" (P157).

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "Check new messages"

When checking is completed, the Check results screen appears.

2 "MessageR"/"MessageF"

Note

- Incoming MessageR/F is saved at the i-mode center when:
  - Power is OFF
  - A videophone call in progress
  - Self mode is activated
  - The FOMA terminal is out of service area
  - Omakase Lock
  - MessageR/F on the FOMA terminal is full

MessageR/MessageF

Displaying New MessageR/F

When MessageR/F arrives from the i-mode center, R or F appears at the top of the screen.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "MessageR/F" ▶ "MessageR"/"MessageF"

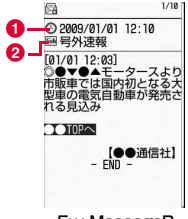
❶ Received date and time
❷ Subject

Ex.: MessageR list screen

2 Select MessageR/F

- [−]/[Delete]: Delete the selected MessageR/F

❶ Received date and time
❷ Subject



Ex.: MessageR detail screen

■ Icons displayed on the MessageR/F list/detail screen

Icon	Description
/	Unread MessageR/F
/	Read MessageR/F

* Icons other than above are the same as for Received mail.→P147

MessageR/F List Screen Sub Menu

1 MessageR/F list screen (P161) ▶ Move the cursor to a message ▶ [−]/[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected MessageR/F.

Delete selected : Select and delete MessageR/F.
▶ Mark MessageR/F to delete ▶ [−][Done] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−]/[Menu] to select "Select all", "Deselect all", or "Switch view".

Delete all read : Delete all read MessageR/F.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

Delete all : Delete all MessageR/F.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[View setting]

Switch view : Set the display method of the MessageR/F list screen.

Sort : Set conditions to sort MessageR/F.

Continued on next page

[Filter]
Display only the MessageR/F that meet certain conditions.

Subject : Display only the MessageR/F with a specific subject.
Unread : Display only the unread MessageR/F.
Read : Display only the read MessageR/F.
Protected : Display only the protected MessageR/F.
Not protected : Display only the unprotected MessageR/F.
Attached file : Display only the MessageR/F with an image or melody attached.
all : Display all MessageR/F.

[All to read]
Mark all MessageR/F to "read".

[Protect]
Protect one : Protect the selected MessageR/F.
Protect selected : Select and protect MessageR/F.
▶ Mark MessageR/F to protect ▶ [−][Done] ▶ "Yes".
• Press [−/][Menu] to select "Select all", "Deselect all", or "Switch view".
Protect all : Protect all MessageR/F.
Cancel one : Unprotect the selected MessageR/F.
Cancel selected : Select and unprotect MessageR/F.
• The operations are same as "Protect selected"
Cancel all : Unprotect all MessageR/F.

[Memory status]
Display the number of MessageR/F.

Note

<Delete>
• If there are unread MessageR/F, a confirmation for deletion appears. Select "Yes" to delete.

MessageR/F Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 MessageR/F detail screen (P161) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Delete]
Delete the displayed MessageR/F.

[Protect]
Protect or unprotect the displayed MessageR/F.

[Save]
No./addr. in body : Save the mail address or phone numbers in the displayed MessageR/F to the Phonebook.
Inline image : Save or check information about an image inserted in the currently displayed MessageR/F.
Background image : Save the background image used in the displayed MessageR/F.

[Attachment]
View/Play : Display/play an attached file of the currently displayed MessageR/F.
Save : Save an attached file of the currently displayed MessageR/F.
Delete : Delete an attached file of the currently displayed MessageR/F.

[View setting]

Font size : Set a font size for the message text on the Mail display screen

Scroll : Set the number of lines scrolled when ◎ is pressed on the Mail display screen.

Note

<Protect>
- Up to 100 MessageR or MessageF can be protected respectively.

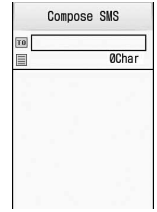
<Delete>
- Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Compose/Send SMS

Composing and Sending SMS

- You can send and receive SMS to/from parties of international carriers other than DOCOMO. Visit DOCOMO's web site for countries and international carriers available.
- You can send and receive SMS in Korean to/from terminals that support Korean.
- As for sending/receiving Korean SMS to/from terminals using carriers other than DOCOMO (including international carriers) which support Korean and L-01A, it depends on the correspondence situation of each carrier. Visit DOCOMO's web site for details. Also, the number of characters that can be sent depends on the situation of each recipient carrier. For details, contact recipient carriers.
- Switch Input Modes in the SMS Message to Korean→P166

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "SMS" ▶ "Compose SMS"



Compose SMS screen

2 Select TO (Receiver) field ▶ "Direct input address" ▶ Enter the phone number

- Up to 21 digits (including "+") can be entered.
- On the Phone number entry screen, you can press [−/] [Menu] to select "Int. call", "Select prefix", or "Cancel". To cancel the entry, press [−\] [Cancel].
- The address can be selected from Sent message log or Received message log, or Phonebook.→P129

3 Select (Message) field ▶ Enter the message

- The number of characters which can be entered differs depending on the settings in "SMS input character".

4 [−\] [Send]

Continued on next page

Note

- For a destination of an international carrier other than DOCOMO, enter in the order of "+" (Press 0 for 1+ seconds), "Country Code", and "other party's mobile phone number". For the mobile phone number, skip the leading "0", if any. Numbers may be entered in the order of "010", "Country Code", and the "other party's mobile phone number" (to reply to overseas SMS received, enter "010").
- Characters may not be sent correctly to the other party depending on the signal strength.
- When you send an SMS to a receiver who uses an international carrier and some of the characters you send are not supported by the carrier, those characters may not be displayed correctly.
- Even if you set "Caller ID notification" to "Not notify", your Caller ID is sent to the other party.
- You cannot reply to SMS sent with Unknown ID or from a public phone.
- When sending SMS, "Pictographs" and "Pictograph idioms" other than ♥ and 📠 are displayed as half-pitch space in receiver's screen.
- SMS texts in Korean sent to a terminal which does not support Korean will not be displayed properly on the terminal.

Compose SMS Screen Sub Menu

1 Compose SMS screen (P163) ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Send]
Send SMS.

[Save]
Save SMS being created or edited as an unsent message.

[Report request]
Set whether to request an SMS report when SMS is delivered.→P165

[Validity period]
Set the period of time that a sent SMS can be kept undelivered at the SMS center.→P165

Receive SMS

Automatically Receiving SMS Messages

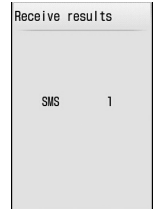
When the FOMA terminal is in service area, SMS is automatically received.

- Up to 1,000 received SMS messages including i-mode mail can be saved. However, the savable number depends on the amount of the data.

1 When SMS is received ✉ appears at the top of the screen

When the reception is completed, the Receive results screen appears.

- The previous screen returns if no operation is performed for approximately 30 seconds.
- Selecting "SMS" opens the Inbox list screen.
- Until the detail screen of received SMS opens, ✉ appears at the top of the screen and ✉1 (the number indicates the number of messages) appears in Stand-by.



Receive results screen

Viewing New SMS

1 Receive results screen (P164) ▶ "SMS" ▶ Select a folder

2 Select an SMS message to display

Received mail detail screen

Check new SMS

Checking New SMS Messages

SMS that could not be received for a reason such as because the FOMA terminal was out of service area, are stored in the SMS center. You can receive stored SMS by checking the SMS center.

- You cannot check new messages when the FOMA terminal is out of service area.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "SMS" ▶ "Check new SMS"

When the reception is completed, the Check results screen appears.

SMS Settings

Setting SMS

SMS Report Request

Set whether to request an SMS report after the SMS is delivered. If this option is set to "ON", an SMS report indicating that the SMS has been delivered to the receiver will be sent to you.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "SMS" ▶ "SMS report request" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Note

- An SMS report will show the sent time and the phone number of the receiver.

SMS Validity Period

Set the period of time that a sent SMS will be kept undelivered at the SMS center because the recipient terminal is out of service area, etc.

- If "0 day" is selected, sending the SMS message is retried after a while, then the message is deleted from the SMS center.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "SMS" ▶ "SMS validity period" ▶ Select the period

SMS Input Character

Set the SMS input mode.

1 Mail menu screen (P127) ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "SMS" ▶ "SMS input character" ▶ Select an item to set

Japanese(70Chara)	:	You can input Japanese letters. Up to 70 characters can be input.
JP/KR(70Chara)	:	You can input Japanese and Korean letters. Up to 70 characters can be input.
English(160Chara)	:	You can input English letters. Up to 160 characters can be input.

SMS Center

Set the SMS center.

You usually do not need to change this setting.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Network" ▶ "SMS center" ▶ Perform the following operations

[SMSC]

DOCOMO	:	Set DOCOMO as the SMS center.
Others	:	Set a carrier other than DOCOMO as the SMS center.

[Address]

When "Others" is selected for "SMSC", enter connection address.

[Type of number]

Set when "Others" is selected for "SMSC".

international	:	If the SMS center phone number is for international calls, select this option.
unknown	:	If you do not know whether the SMS center phone number is for international calls, select this option.

2 [−] [Done]

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

i-mode ····· 168
Displaying i-mode Menu ····· i-mode Menu 168

Displaying a Site

Displaying a Site ····· 169
Viewing and Operating Sites ····· 172
Subscribing to a Site in My Menu ····· My Menu 173
Changing i-mode Password ····· Change i-mode Password 174
Displaying Internet Web Pages ····· Internet Access 174
Saving Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access ····· Bookmark 176
Saving Site Contents ····· Screen memo 178

Downloading Images, Melodies etc. from Sites

Downloading Data from Sites ····· 180

Useful Functions of i-mode

Using Phone To/Mail To/Web To/Media To/i-αppli To Function ··· Phone To/Mail To/Web To/Media To/i-αppli To function 182

Setting i-mode

Setting i-mode ····· i-mode setting 184

Using Certificates

Operating SSL Certificate ··· SSL Certificate Info 187

Using i-motion

i-motion ····· 187
Downloading i-motion from Sites ····· i-motion Download 188

Using i-Channel

i-Channel ····· 189
Displaying i-Channel ····· 190
Setting i-Channel ····· i-Channel Setting 191

i-mode

i-mode is a service that makes use of the display of the FOMA terminal supporting i-mode (i-mode terminal) to enable you to use online services such as sites (programs) access, Internet access and i-mode mail.

- i-mode is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription.
- For details about i-mode, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Before using i-mode

- Contents of sites (programs) and Internet web sites (web pages) are generally protected by copyright law. Data, such as text or images you download to the i-mode terminal from sites (programs) or web pages, can be used only for personal entertainment, but cannot be used, in whole or in part, as it is or after modification, for sale or redistribution, without the consent of the copyright holders.
- If you insert another UIM or turn the FOMA terminal power on without the UIM, depending on the model of the FOMA terminal, still images, movies, melodies downloaded from sites, mail attachments (still images, movies or melodies), screen memos, or MessageR/F cannot be viewed or played.
- When a file with UIM restrictions is set as the Stand-by display or ring tone, the setting will revert to its default if a different UIM is inserted or the terminal power is turned on without a UIM.

i-mode Menu

Displaying i-mode Menu

You can use i-mode functions from the i-mode menu.

1 Stand-by display ▶ ● ▶ Perform the following operations

i-mode menu screen

[iMenu]
Connect to the i-mode center.→P169

[Bookmark]
Display the Bookmark folder list screen.→P176

[Screen memo]
Display the Screen memo list screen.→P179

[Last URL]
Open the last viewed i-mode site or web page.→P171

[Go to location]
Enter a URL to connect to the Internet.→P174

[i-Channel]
Display the i-Channel menu screen.→P191

[MessageR/F]
Display a list of MessageR/F.→P161

[Check new messages]
Check whether i-mode mail or MessageR/F is stored at the i-mode center.→P160

[i-mode setting]
Configure the FOMA terminal i-mode functions.→P184

[Full browser]
Display the Full browser menu screen.→P194

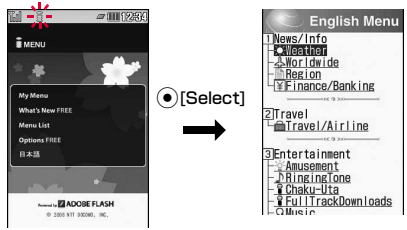
Displaying a Site

You can use various services offered by IP (Information Providers).

- Services vary depending on the IP (Information Providers). Some sites require a separate subscription.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶ "Menu List"

appears at the top of the screen during i-mode communication.



- Press [−][Stop] to cancel a page download.

2 Select an item (link)

- [−][Bk.mark]: Save the URL of the current site as a Bookmark.
- [☎]: Exit i-mode. Select "Yes".

Note

- When a number appears in front of a link item, press the corresponding dial key to access the site. Some sites may not be possible to connect.
- Some sites may require "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" to be sent in order to gain access.
  The "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" is sent to the IP (Information Provider) so that the IP can recognize you and provide customized information. The ID is also used to judge whether the contents that the IP provides can be used on your mobile phone. The "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" is sent via the Internet to the IP and it may be seen by a third party. This action does not reveal your postal address, age, or sex to the IP.

Site Display Screen Sub Menu

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ −/[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Bookmark]

Save : Save the URL of the current site as a Bookmark. Go to Step 2 in "Saving in Bookmark" (P176).
List : Display the Bookmark folder list screen.→P176

[Screen memo]

Save : Save the current page as a Screen memo.→P178
List : Display the Screen memo list screen.→P179

[Save image]

Save images or background images contained in the current page. →P180

[Show properties]

URL : Display the URL of the current page.
Page properties : Display the URL and title of the current page.
Certificates : If the current page is an SSL page, the SSL certificate is displayed.

[Go to location]

Input address : Enter a URL to access the web page. Go to Step 2 in "Displaying Internet Web Pages" (P174).
URL history : Select an entry in the URL history to access the web page. Go to Step 2 in "Using URL History" (P175).

[Home]

Connect to the URL set as "Home".

[Reload]

If the current site is updated, display the updated page.

[Compose message]

Create i-mode mail with the URL of the current page pasted in the message text. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).
Select from the following options when a linked item is selected.
This page : Paste the URL of the current page.
Link page : Paste the URL of the link.

[Add to Phonebook]

Save a phone number or mail address on the site to the Phonebook. →P173

[Display]

Change char code : If characters are not displayed correctly, change the character encoding.
Retry : Play Flash movie/an animation contained in the current page from the beginning.

[Settings]

Image display : Set whether to display images contained on the current page.
Sound effect : Set whether to play sound effects of the Flash movie contained in the current page.
i-motion type : Specify the i-motion type to download.→P189

[Switch to Full Browser]

Switch to the Full browser.→P201

Note

<Change char code>

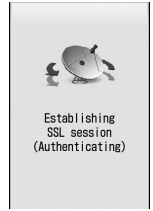
- If characters are not displayed correctly, repeat the steps. However, after the character code is changed 4 times, the default character encoding returns.
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even after repeatedly changing the encoding.
- The new character encoding is valid only for the current page.

<Image display>

- Images may not be displayed correctly even when "Image display" is set to "On". In this case, ☒ appears.

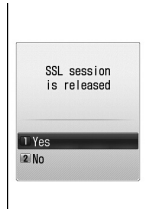
Downloading an SSL page

The screen shown on the right appears when you access an SSL site. After the download is completed, the SSL page opens and 🔒 appears on the top of the screen.



Returning to a normal site

The screen shown on the right appears when you return to a non-SSL site. Select "Yes" to return to a normal site, and 🔒 disappears.



Note

- If the SSL Certificate has already expired or the site does not support SSL, a warning indicating that this site may not be secure may appear. To connect, select "Yes". However, your personal information (credit card number or contact address) may not be sent safely.

Last URL

Opening the Last Viewed Web Page

After i-mode is terminated, the URL of the last opened page is saved in "Last URL". You can re-connect to the last accessed page using Last URL.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "Last URL" ▶ ●[Connect]

Viewing and Operating Sites

This section describes basic operations on sites.

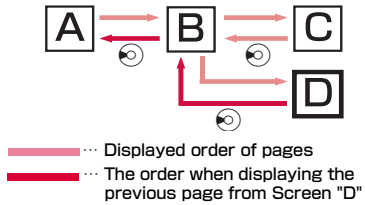
Going Back to Previous Page/Going to Next Page

The FOMA terminal temporarily saves the displayed sites data in a cache.
Data saved to the cache can be displayed, without revisiting the site, by pressing ●.

- However, the site will be reloaded if the data is larger than the cache size, or if the site requires the latest information always be loaded.
- Entered characters or settings at the site will not be stored in the cache.
- Terminating i-mode deletes data from the cache.

Example: When pages are displayed in the order of Screen "A" → "B" → "C" → "B" → "D"

If opening the pages in the order "A"→"B"→"C", then returning to "B", and opening "D", "C" is deleted from the cache. Pressing ● displays "B"⇔"D".



Note

- Operation on sites may differ when a Flash movie is displayed.

Selecting Links or Items

You may need to perform operations using the following items while connecting to i-mode. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Name	Display example	Details
Radio button	(Not selected) (Selected)	You can select only 1 item.
Check box	(Not selected) (Selected)	You can select multiple items.
Text box		You can enter text. Select a text box to display the text entry screen.
Pull-down menu	Select a plan Select a plan Plan 1 Plan 2 Plan 3 Plan 4 Plan 5	Select an item from an option list. Click pull-down menu to display the items.

Note

<Text box>

- Perform the following operations to quote and enter information saved in the FOMA terminal, such as about Phonebook entries, your own number, or data scanned with the bar code reader. [−/][Menu] ▶ "Quote" ▶ "Phonebook"/"Own number"/"Bar code"

Displaying Flash Movies

The FOMA terminal supports Flash movies, an animation technology using images and sounds. You can access sites that provide various kinds of animations. You can also download a Flash movie and set it for the Stand-by display.

Note

- Even if a Flash movie is displayed, the animation may not work correctly.
- Some Flash movies use data about your FOMA terminal. To allow Flash movies to use the data, set "Use phone info" to "Use".
- If the Flash movie contains audio, it will be played at the volume set for "Incoming call". To turn off sound effects, set "Sound effect" to "OFF".→P184
- If you play a Flash movie with vibration set, the FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of "Vibrator" (P96) settings on the FOMA terminal.
- Flash movies are not displayed if "Images" is set to "Not display".
- Flash movies which are saved in Data box or Screen memo may appear differently depending on the saved part.
- Flash sound effects are not played if they are set to the Stand-by display/Call display.

Adding a Mail Address/Phone Number to Phonebook

You can save a phone number or mail address displayed at a site to the Phonebook.

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ Move the cursor to a phone number/mail address ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Add to Phonebook" ▶ "Yes"

Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Received/Dialed Calls etc." (P82).

My Menu

Subscribing to a Site in My Menu

Frequently accessed sites can be saved in My Menu for quick access.

- Up to 45 entries can be saved in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be saved in My Menu.

1 Display a site to save ▶ "マイメニュー登録 (Save in My Menu)"

- Item names may vary depending on the site.

2 Select i-mode password text box ▶ Enter the i-mode password ▶ "決定 (OK)"

- The entered i-mode password is masked by asterisks "＊".
- i-mode password→P174

Note

- When you subscribe to a fee-based site in "Menu List", the site is automatically added to My Menu.

Accessing a Site from My Menu

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶ "My Menu" ▶ Select the site to access

Change i-mode Password

Changing i-mode Password

"i-mode Password" (4 digits) is required to save to/delete from My Menu, subscribe to/unsubscribe from message services or fee-based i-mode sites, or configure mail settings. The password is set to "0000" by default. Change it to a number of your own choice for safety. Do not reveal your i-mode password to others.

1 i-mode menu screen(P168) ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Change i-mode Password"

2 Select the "Current Password" text box ▶ Enter the i-mode password (4 digits)

3 Select the "New Password" text box ▶ Enter a new i-mode password (4 digits)

4 Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" text box ▶ Enter the new i-mode password (4 digits)

5 "Select"

Note

- If you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring a picture ID such as your driver's license to a service counter such as a DOCOMO shop to have the i-mode password reset to "0000".

Internet Access

Displaying Internet Web Pages

You can view a web page by entering its URL. Use half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols to enter a URL.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "Go to location" ▶ "Input address"

2 Enter the URL ▶ ●[Set]

- Up to 2,033 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Note

- Web pages that do not support i-mode may not be displayed correctly.
- When the same URL as a history entry is accessed, the old URL is overwritten and the entry is displayed at the top of the URL history as the latest URL.

Using URL History

Up to 10 previously entered URLs are stored in the URL history. You can access a web page by using the URL history.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "Go to location" ▶ "URL history"

URL history list screen

2 Select the URL to access

Note

- If more than 10 URLs are saved in the history, the oldest URL will be overwritten first.
- The visited URL is displayed at the top of the URL history.

URL History List Screen Sub Menu

1 URL history list screen (P175) ▶ Move the cursor to a URL history entry ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Connect]
Connect to the selected site in the URL history.

[Edit URL]
Edit and connect to the URL of the selected history.
▶ Edit URL ▶ ●[Set]

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete a selected URL history entry.

Del. selected : Select and delete entries in the URL history.
▶ Mark the URL history entries to delete ▶ [−] [Done] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−/][Menu] and select "Select all" or "Release all".

Delete all : Delete all entries in the URL history.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Compose message]
Create i-mode mail with the URL of the selected history entry pasted in the message text. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).

Bookmark

Saving Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access

Save frequently accessed sites or web pages in Bookmark to quickly display the pages.

Saving in Bookmark

- Up to 100 URLs can be saved in the Bookmarks folder.

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ −[Bk.mark]

2 Edit the title ▶ −[Done] ▶ Select a destination folder

- If there is already the same URL saved, a confirmation to overwrite appears. Select "Yes".

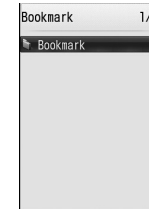
Note

- Up to 256 half-pitch characters can be entered for a URL saved as a Bookmark.
- Up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters can be saved for a Bookmark title.
- If the maximum number of Bookmarks has been saved, a confirmation whether to select items to delete appears. To select, "Yes" ▶ select a folder ▶ select Bookmark to delete ▶ select a destination folder.

Accessing a Homepage/Site from Bookmark

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "Bookmark"

- −[Add]: You can add a folder. Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for a folder name.



Bookmark folder list screen

■Icons displayed on the Bookmark folder list screen

Icon	Description
(Gray)	"Bookmark" (pre-installed folder)
(Blue)	User defined folder

2 Select a folder

Bookmark list screen

3 Select the Bookmark URL to access

- [−][URL]: Display the URL.

Bookmark Folder List Screen Sub Menu

1 Bookmark folder list screen (P176) ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Manage folder]

Create folder : Add a folder. Up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters can be entered for a folder name.
Rename folder : Edit the selected folder name.
Sort folder : Sort the selected folders.

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected folder. ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"
Delete all : Delete all Bookmarks. ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Send all Ir data]

Send all Bookmarks via infrared communication.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Enter the authentication password ▶ "Yes"

[Copy all microSD]

Copy all Bookmarks to a microSD card.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Memory status]

Display the number of saved Bookmarks.

Note

<Rename folder/Sort folder/Delete one>
- The pre-installed "Bookmark" folder cannot be renamed, moved, or deleted.

<Delete one>
- If there is a bookmark in the folder, a confirmation to delete appears. Select "Yes" to delete.

Bookmark List Screen Sub Menu

1 Bookmark list screen (P177) ▶ Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Connect]

Connect to the selected Bookmark site.

[Edit title]

Edit the title or URL of the selected Bookmark.
▶ Edit the title or URL ▶ [−][Done]

Continued on next page

[Move]

Move this : Move the selected Bookmark to another folder.

Move selected : Select and move Bookmarks.
▶ Mark the Bookmarks to move ▶ [−][Done] ▶ Select a destination folder
- Press [−/][Menu] and select "Select all" or "Release all".

Move all : Move all Bookmarks in the folder to another folder.

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected Bookmark.

Del. selected : Select and delete Bookmarks.
▶ Mark the Bookmarks to delete ▶ [−][Done] ▶"Yes"
- Press [−/][Menu] and select "Select all" or "Release all".

Delete all : Delete all Bookmarks.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[URL Info]

Display the URL of the selected Bookmark.

[Copy URL]

Copy the URL of the selected Bookmark.

[Compose message]

Create i-mode mail with the selected Bookmark attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).

[Ir exchange]

Send : Send the selected Bookmark via infrared communication.

Send all : Send all bookmarks in the folder via infrared communication.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Enter the authentication password ▶ "Yes"

[Copy microSD]

Copy one : Copy selected Bookmark to microSD card.

Copy all : Copy all Bookmarks in the folder to microSD card.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Memory status]

Display the number of saved Bookmarks in the folder.

Screen memo

Saving Site Contents

You can save the current page as a Screen memo. Saved Screen memo pages can be opened without connecting to i-mode.

Saving Screen Memos

- Up to 50 Screen memos can be saved. However, fewer pages can be saved depending on the saved data size.
- Up to approximately 100KB per page can be saved.

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Screen memo" ▶ "Save" ▶ "Yes"

Note

- If the maximum number of Screen memos have already been saved, a confirmation whether you want to select a screen memo to delete appears. To select, "Yes" ▶ select a Screen memo to delete.

Viewing Screen Memos

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "Screen memo"

Screen memo list screen

2 Select the Screen memo to display

The Screen memo detail screen is displayed.

- [−]/[URL]: Display the URL.

Note

- The page saved as a Screen memo has the information at the time it was saved. The Screen memo may not contain the latest information.

Screen Memo List Screen Sub Menu

1 Screen memo list screen ▶ Move the cursor to the Screen memo ▶ [−]/[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Display]
Display the selected Screen memo.

[Edit title]
Edit the title of the selected Screen memo. Up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters can be entered for a title.

[Delete]

Delete one : Delete the selected Screen memo.

Del. selected : Select and delete Screen memos.
▶ Mark the Screen memos to delete ▶ [−]/[Done] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−]/[Menu] and select "Select all" or "Release all".

Delete all : Delete all Screen memos.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[URL Info]
Display the URL of the selected Screen memo.

[Protect on/off]

One on/off : Enable/disable protection for the selected Screen memo.

Select on/off : Select a Screen memo and protect or unprotect it.
▶ Mark the Screen memo to protect ▶ [−]/[Done] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−]/[Menu] and select "Select all" or "Release all".

Unprotect all : Unprotect all Screen memos.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Memory status]
Display the number of Screen memos.

Screen Memo Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Screen memo detail screen ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Save image]
Save an image or background image contained in the current Screen Memo. Go to Step 2 in "Saving Images from a Site or Screen Memo" (P181).

[Show properties]

URL	:	Display the URL of the displayed Screen memo.
Page properties	:	Display the title and the URL of the displayed Screen memo.
Certificates	:	If the displayed Screen memo is an SSL page, the SSL certificate is displayed.

[Add to Phonebook]
Save a phone number or mail address on the site to the Phonebook. →P173

[Retry]
Play a Flash movie or an animation contained in the Screen memo from the beginning.

[Sound effect]
Set whether to play sound effects of the Flash movie contained in the displayed Screen memo.

On : The Flash movie sound effects will be played.
Off : The Flash movie sound effects will not be played.

[Edit title]
Edit the title of the displayed Screen memo. Up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters can be entered for a title.

[Delete]
Delete the Screen memo that is currently displayed.

[Protect on/off]
Protect or unprotect the displayed Screen memo.

Note

<Delete>
- Protected Screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them before deleting.

<Protect on/off>
- Up to 10 Screen memos can be protected. The number of Screen memos that can be protected may vary depending on the data size.

Downloading Data from Sites

You can download files or data such as images or melodies from sites and save them to the FOMA terminal or microSD card.

Save image

Saving Images from a Site or Screen Memo

You can save images contained in the current page or Screen memo to the FOMA terminal.

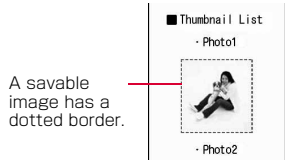
- Obtained images will be saved in the "i-mode" folder in "My picture" of "Data box" or microSD card.
- Savable images are in JPEG, GIF, or SWF format and up to 100KB.

Example: To save the image displayed on a site

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Save image"

2 "Select image" ▶ Select an image

■To save the background image from a site
Select "Save backgnd".



3 "Yes"

- Additionally, select the destination when a microSD card is inserted on the FOMA terminal. However, images in SWF format is automatically saved to the FOMA terminal.
- If you saved the image on the FOMA terminal, a confirmation appears asking whether to set the saved image as Stand-by display. Select "Yes" to set it.

Note

- Images cannot be saved if "Images" is set to "Not display".
- Some images saved on the FOMA terminal may not be displayed properly even if they are displayed on the site.
- Some obtained images may not be displayed correctly.
- Image files in JPEG, GIF, or Progressive JPEG* formats cannot be displayed after they are saved if the size (pixels) exceeds the following. However, they can be output to external devices such as by attaching to mail.
  - JPEG or Progressive JPEG image files that exceed 2592×1944 pixels
  - GIF image files that exceed 800×600 pixels

* Progressive JPEG is an image format that is used in the Internet. The image looks coarse at the beginning of the download and the image sharpness improves as the download progresses.

i-melody

Downloading Melodies from a Site

- Downloaded melodies are saved in the "i-mode" folder in "Melody" of "Data box" or microSD card.

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ Select a melody

After the download completes, a confirmation appears.

2 "Save"

Play : Play the downloaded melody.

File property : Display information about the downloaded melody.

Back : Return to the site without saving the melody.

- Additionally, select the destination when a microSD card is inserted on the FOMA terminal.

Note

- Download may not be possible depending on the site.
- Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.
- Some downloaded melodies may have a section to be played already specified. These melodies will be played entirely in the playback, however, when the melody is set for a ring tone etc., only the specified part is played.

Template download

Downloading Templates from a Site

You can download templates for Deco-mail.

- Downloaded templates are saved in "Template" (P134) of the Mail menu.

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ Select a template

After the download completes, a confirmation appears.

2 "Save"

Preview : Display the downloaded template.

Compose message : Use a downloaded template to create Deco-mail.

Return : Return to the site without saving the template.

3 [−] [Done]

- To rename and save a file, select ● ▶ rename the file ▶ [−] [Done].

Download Dictionary

Downloading Dictionaries from a Site

- Downloaded dictionaries are saved in "Download dictionary" (P356).
- Up to 10 dictionaries can be saved. However, only 5 dictionaries are available.

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ Select a dictionary

After the download completes, a confirmation appears.

2 "Save"

View : Display information about the downloaded dictionary.

Cancel : Return to the site without saving the dictionary.

3 Select a saving destination

- If you are only using 4 or fewer dictionaries, a confirmation whether to enable the downloaded dictionary appears. Select "Yes" to enable it.

Note

- Using Downloaded Dictionaries→P356

Phone To/Mail To/Web To/Media To/i-αppli To function

Using Phone To/Mail To/Web To/ Media To/i-αppli To Function

When a phone number, mail address or URL is highlighted on a site or in mail, you can use it to easily make a call, send i-mode mail, or access the web page. Also, when 1Seg information is highlighted, you can watch 1Seg or set timer for starting 1Seg.

- Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, or Media To function in mail sent from a PC may not be available.

Phone To/AV Phone To Function

Make a voice call (Phone To)/videophone call (AV Phone To) to the highlighted phone number at a site or in mail.

1 Select a phone number ▶ Perform the following operations

Make Call : Make a voice call.
Video Phone : Make a videophone call.
Copy : Copy the selected phone number.
Add to Phonebook : Add the selected phone number to the Phonebook.
Go to Step 2 in "Adding Phonebook Entries from Received/Dialed Calls etc." (P82).

Note

- The Phone To/AV Phone To function may not be available depending on the site.
- The order of displayed items varies for mail.

Mail To Function

You can send a mail to an i-mode mail address highlighted on a site page or in mail.

1 Select a mail address

- Go to Step 3 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).

Note

- The Mail To function may not be available depending on the site.
- Correct the mail address before sending mail, if necessary.

Web To Function

Access a URL highlighted on a site or in mail.

1 Select a URL

- For mail, additionally press ●[Connect].

Note

- The Web To function may not be available depending on the site.
- The appearance of the URL may vary depending on the site.
- The Web To function may be available using a highlighted item other than a URL.

Media To Function

You can watch 1Seg or set timer for starting 1Seg.

1 Select 1Seg information ▶ "Yes"

Note

- The Media To function may not be available when other functions are running.

i-αppli To Function

You can start i-αppli from a URL highlighted on a site or in i-mode mail.

- If "Site i-αppli To" (P269) or "Mail i-αppli To" in "Set i-αppli To" is not marked, the i-αppli will not start.

1 Select i-αppli information ▶ "Yes"

Note

- Some i-αppli, that immediately start directly from the site using the i-αppli To function, may not be saved.

i-mode setting

Setting i-mode

Set the functions for i-mode or MessageR/F.

Communication

Configuring Communication Settings

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "Communication" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Connection timeout]
Set the timeout duration until the connection is automatically terminated if no response is returned due to network traffic.→P185

[Check new messages]
Specify request items when using "Check new messages".
▶ Mark the items to check ▶ [−] [Done]

Display

Configuring Display Settings

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "Display" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Images]
Set whether to display images or Flash movies contained on sites or in Screen memos.

[Sound effect]
Set whether to play sound effects of Flash movies contained on sites or in Screen memos.

[Use phone info]
When a Flash movie is displayed on a site or in a Screen memo, information saved on the FOMA terminal may be required. Set whether to use the information from the FOMA terminal in this case.

[Font size]
Set the font size for sites or Screen memos.

[Scroll]
Set the number of lines to scroll with each press of ⊛ on sites or Screen memos.

[Message list]
Set the display method of the MessageR/F list screen.

1 line subject	:	Display only the subject in 1 line.
1 line name	:	Display the received date and time in 1 line.
2 lines	:	Display the subject and received date and time in 2 lines.

[Auto-display]
Set how MessageR/F is displayed automatically.→P160

[Melody auto play]
Set whether to automatically play a melody when MessageR/F is displayed.→P160

Note

<Images>
- Images may not be displayed correctly even when "Image display" is set to "On". In this case, ☒ appears.

<Sound effect>
- Even if "Sound effect" is set to "ON", some sound effects may not sound depending on the Flash movie.

<Use phone info>
- When this option is set to "Use", the battery level, signal strength, Date & Time, Ring Volume, Language, and terminal model information may be sent to IP (Information Provider) via the Internet, and a third party may intercept the information.

Home
Configuring Home Setting

Set the home URL by selecting "Home" from the Site display screen sub menu.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "Home"

2 Select "Enable" ▶ Select "http://" field ▶ Enter the URL ▶ [−] [Done]

Note
- If "Home" is set to "Disable", selecting "Home" does not open the specified page. The URL entered in the "http://" field will remain intact.

Others
Configuring Other Settings

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "Others" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Check settings]
Check the options set in "i-mode setting".

[Reset settings]
Reset the options set in "i-mode setting" to the default.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

Connection timeout
Setting Connection Timeout

Set the timeout duration until the connection is automatically terminated if no response is returned due to network traffic.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "Communication" ▶ "Connection timeout" ▶ "60 seconds"/"90 seconds"/"Unlimited"
- If "Unlimited" is selected, the connection will not be automatically terminated.

Note
- Even if this option is set to "Unlimited", the connection attempt may be terminated due to the signal strength etc.

Host selection

Changing Access Point from i-mode

* If you use the DOCOMO i-mode service, changing the access point is not required.

Set an Access Point Name (APN) used when you use services other than i-mode (DOCOMO). i-mode and i-mode mail become unavailable when you connect to an APN other than DOCOMO.

Adding Access Points

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Network" ▶ "Host selection"

Host selection screen

2 [−] [Add] ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Perform the following operations

[Host name]
Enter the host name within 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.

[Host number]
Enter the number of the access point within 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

[Host address]
Enter the host address within 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

[Host address 2]
Enter the host address for i-Channel within 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

3 [−] [Done]

Changing Access Point

1 Host selection screen (P186) ▶ Select the access point to change

Host Selection Screen Sub Menu

1 Host selection screen (P186) ▶ Move the cursor to the access point ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

- Not available while "i-mode" is selected.

[Add new]
Add a new access point.→P186

[Edit]
Edit the access point settings.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Edit the settings ▶ [−] [Done]

[Delete]
Delete the selected access point.
▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

[View]
Display the selected access point settings.
- [●] [Edit]: Edit the access point settings.

Note

- Pake-hodai/Pake-hodai full/Pake-hodai double is not applied to packet communication with an APN other than "i-mode".
- When an access point is changed, the i-Channel ticker does not appear. When the information is auto-updated or you download the latest information by pressing [9] in Stand-by, the ticker will appear automatically.
- If the current access point is deleted, "i-mode" will be set as the default host.

SSL Certificate Info

Operating SSL Certificate

You can view an SSL Certificate, or set a certificate valid or invalid.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "Certificates"

- ●[Select]: Display the contents of the selected certificate.

2 Move the cursor to the certificate ▶ [−][Invalid]/[Valid]

- Press [−]/[Menu] to select "Certificate Info" or "Valid/Invalid".

Certificates used for SSL communication

These certificates are issued by an authentication company, and are saved on the FOMA terminal by default.

i-motion

i-motion movies are movies with video and sound. They can be obtained from i-motion sites, played, saved, and set as the Stand-by display or a ring tone, etc.

i-motion Types

There are 2 types of i-motion movies.

■ Standard type

There are 2 formats of the Standard type.

① The format in which an i-motion movie can be played after download (Up to 500KB)

② The format in which an i-motion movie can be played during the download (Up to 500KB)

- Some standard type i-motion movies cannot be saved.

■ Streaming type

This type allows you to play a movie while downloading. Up to 2MB of i-motion movie can be played. The data is deleted after playback. It cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.

Note

- i-motion movies that can be downloaded and played are in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format. i-motion movies in ASF format cannot be downloaded or played.

i-motion Download

Downloading i-motion from Sites

Up to 1,000 i-motion movies can be saved. However, the savable number depends on the amount of the data.

- Downloaded i-motion movies are saved in the "i-mode" folder in "i-motion" of "Data box" or microSD card.

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ Select an i-motion movie

- When "i-motion auto play" is set to "ON", an i-motion movie is played automatically after downloaded.
  Operations during Playback→P287

■Streaming-type i-motion movies

- The Playback confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to play the i-motion movie during the download.
- When "i-motion type" is set to "Standard type", you cannot play the i-motion movie. Switch to "Std/Streaming", then download the i-motion movie again. →P189

2 After download, クリア/ぬ9 ▶ "Save"

Play :Play a downloaded i-motion movie.

File property :Display detailed information about the downloaded i-motion movie.

Back :Return to the Site display screen without saving the i-motion movie.

- Additionally, select the destination when a microSD card is inserted on the FOMA terminal.
- If you saved the i-motion movie on the FOMA terminal, a confirmation appears asking whether to set the saved movie as Stand-by display. Select "Yes" to set it.

Note

- Depending on the connected site or i-motion movie, some i-motion movies may not be downloaded or played during the download.
- If you play a movie while downloading it, the movie may stop playing or the image may become distorted due to signal strength etc.
- Some i-motion movies cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Some i-motion movies have playback restrictions. appears for an i-motion movie with playback count. appears for an i-motion movie with playback period or playback limit. i-motion movies which has restricted term for playback cannot be played before/after the term.
- Some downloaded i-motion movies may not be played correctly.

When a Link is Set in Ticker

When a ticker is set in an i-motion movie, the ticker is displayed during playback. If a phone number, a mail address, or a URL is included in the ticker, you can use Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, or Web To functions after the i-motion playback is finished.

1 After an i-motion playback is finished ▶ Select an item

i-motion auto play

Setting Whether to Play i-motion Automatically

Set whether to play an i-motion movie automatically when downloading from a site or mail.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "i-motion" ▶ "i-motion auto play" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Note

- Even if this option is set to "OFF", streaming-type i-motion movies are automatically played.

i-motion type

Specifying Type of Downloading i-motion

Set the type of the new i-motion movie to download from a site.

1 i-mode menu screen (P168) ▶ "i-mode setting" ▶ "i-motion" ▶ "i-motion type" ▶ Select a type

Standard type : Only standard-type i-motion movies will be downloaded.

Std/Streaming : The standard or streaming type i-motion movies will be downloaded.

Note

- To download streaming type i-motion movies, "Std/Streaming" must be set.

i-Channel

i-Channel is a service which provides information such as news or weather forecasts to i-Channel compatible terminals. Automatically received latest information is displayed and runs in a ticker on the Stand-by display. Also, pressing 3C displays the latest information in the channel list. (Display channel list→P190)

- i-Channel is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription (The i-mode contract is necessary for this subscription).

i-Channel has 2 types of channels: "Basic channels" provided by DOCOMO and "Favorite channels" provided by IP (Information Provider). Packet communication charge does not apply to automatic update of information delivered to "Basic channels". You can register your favorite channels on "Favorite channels". For this channel, packet communication charge applies for automatic update of information. Note that packet communication charges apply separately to view detailed information for these two channels. For using International roaming service, packet communication charges apply for both automatic updating and viewing detailed information.

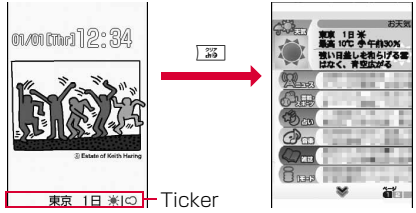
- For details about i-Channel, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The i-Channel service is provided in Japanese only.

Displaying i-Channel

If you subscribe to i-Channel, information appears in a ticker on the Stand-by display as the information is received.

- To automatically display the ticker, set "Ticker display" to "ON". →P191
- When Public mode (Drive mode) is set, the ticker will not be displayed.

1 Stand-by display ▶ [クリア]



2 Select a channel item

The site is connected and detailed information is displayed.

- ⊙: The Channel list screen returns.

Note

- While information is being received, 📡 blinks.
- Even when the information arrives, a ring tone does not sound nor does the terminal vibrate. The illumination does not light/blink either.
- Information may not be received when the FOMA terminal power is turned off, while the FOMA terminal is out of service area, or when the signal reception is weak. Press [2 abc] in Stand-by to receive information, then the obtained information is displayed automatically in the ticker on the Stand-by display. Also, information may not be received if the default settings are kept. In this case, press [2 abc] in Stand-by to receive and automatically display the information in the ticker on the Stand-by display.
- In some conditions, information may be received only when a channel list is displayed.
- If you change the access point in "Host selection", the access point of i-Channel is also changed (normally, you do not need to change the settings).
- The ticker will not appear after i-Channel is unsubscribed.
- When an i-motion movie is set to the Stand-by display, the ticker will not appear during playback.
- There may be a message notifying of failure to acquire channel information if:
  - the i-Channel access point has been changed
  - the UIM has been replaced

i-Channel Setting

Setting i-Channel

You can set whether to display the ticker on the Stand-by display or to set the ticker display speed. Also you can delete all i-Channel information on the FOMA terminal.

1 Stand-by display ▶ ● ▶ "i-Channel" ▶ Perform the following operations

[i-Channel list]

Display the Channel list screen.→P190

[Ticker setting]

Ticker display : Set whether to display a ticker on the Stand-by display.
Ticker speed : Set the ticker display speed.
Ticker font size : Set the ticker font size.
Ticker font color : Set the ticker font color.

[Reset i-Channel]

Delete all i-Channel information on the FOMA terminal and restore defaults. Ticker display is also reset to its default.

Note

<Ticker display>

- If you unsubscribe the i-mode service before unsubscribing i-Channel, the "Ticker display" setting remains.

Full Browser

Displaying Web Pages Designed for PC
·····Full browser 194
Setting Full Browser ·····Full Browser Settings 202

Full browser

Displaying Web Pages Designed for PC

With Full browser, FOMA terminal can display web pages designed for PC.

- Some pages may not be displayed correctly.
- Up to approximately 2MB per page can be displayed.
- Note that accessing web pages containing lots of images or performing communication with large amount of data such as data download makes communication charge high. For details about packet communication and billing plan, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Displaying Full Browser Menu

1 Stand-by display ▶ ● ▶ "Full browser" ▶ Perform the following operations

Full browser menu screen

[Home]
Display a web page which URL is set as "Home".

[Bookmark]
Display the Bookmark folder list screen.

[Last URL]
Display the last accessed web page.

[Go to location]

Input address : Enter a URL to access a web page.→P195
URL history : Select an entry in the URL history to access a web page. Go to Step 2 in "Using URL History" (P175).

[Full Browser Settings]
Set Full browser functions.→P202

Displaying a Web Page by Entering URL

1 Full browser menu screen (P194) ▶ "Go to location"

2 "Input address" ▶ ●[Select] ▶ Enter the URL ▶ [−][Done]

- Up to 2,033 half-pitch characters can be entered.

3 "Yes" ▶ "OK" ▶ Select communication method

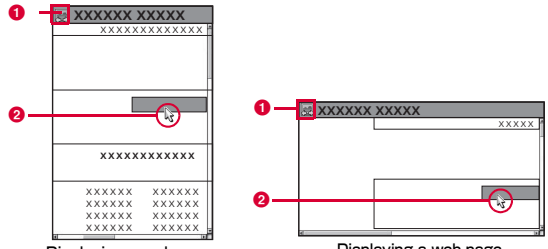
Yes (once)
: Connect this time only.

Yes (permanently)
: After this, connect automatically without confirmation.

No : Not connected.

- During Full browser communication, appears at the top of the screen.
- To cancel the page retrieval while retrieving, press [−][Stop].
- Once a URL is input, you can use the URL history to open its web page by selecting on the Full browser menu screen (P194) ▶ "Go to location" ▶ "URL history". For details, refer to "Using URL History" (P175) in i-mode section.
- To close a web page, press ▶ "Yes".

Full Browser Screen



Displaying a web page (vertical)

Displaying a web page (horizontal)

❶ **Display mode**
: Horiz. Scroll On

❷ **Pointer**
: When selecting an item : When selecting a link

■Key operations while viewing a web page

Key	Description
, /	Scroll the screen to the direction of the key press
[−]/[Menu]*	Display the sub menu
[−][Action]*	Display the Action menu
●	Select a link
Dial keys/[*]/[#]	Shortcut Operations→P196

* Appear in a vertical screen only.

Shortcut Operations

Some operations can be done directly by pressing dial keys while displaying a web page. The following operations are assigned by default. The assigned operations can also be modified.

■ Shortcut operations

Key	Description
1 (Zoom out)	Minify the view
2 (Scroll up)	Scroll up on the screen
3 (Zoom in)	Magnify the view
4 (Scroll left)	Scroll left on the screen
5 (PagePilot)	Display the whole page→P198
6 (Scroll right)	Scroll right on the screen
7 (Back to previous page)	Display the previous page
8 (Scroll down)	Scroll down on the screen
9 (Go to next page)	Display the next page
0 (Bookmark list)	Display the list of saved Bookmarks
* (Switch to the left widow)	Display the left window while displaying multiple windows.
# (Switch to the right widow)	Display the right window while displaying multiple windows.

Changing operations assigned to shortcuts

① While displaying a web page ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ "Shortcut List"
The Shortcut list screen appears.

② Move the cursor to a shortcut to change its assigned operation ▶ ● [Edit] ▶ Select the operation to assign ▶ −\ [Done]

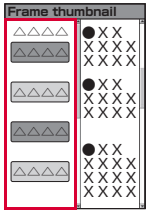
Note

- When "Access Setting" (P202) of Full browser is set to "No", the Access setting screen is displayed to confirm whether to use Full browser when starting Full browser. Selecting "Yes" sets the Access setting to "Yes" and displays a web page. This setting is still valid after Full browser is quit. Some web pages may take a while to be displayed.
- The following functions are not supported.
  - Displaying Flash movies - Plug-ins - Playing sound
  - Saving Screen memo - Phone To (AV Phone To)
- Some web pages automatically establish communication. When initiating communication, a confirmation appears.
- SSL/TLS applied web pages can be displayed with Full browser. SSL/TLS are methods to protect privacy and communicate safely with authentication/encryption technologies.
- When user certificate stored in FOMA terminal is required for SSL/TLS communication, selection screen for certificate appears.
- Tilting the FOMA terminal to the left automatically switches to the horizontal screen.

Displaying a Framed Web Page

A web page composed of multiple frames can be displayed.

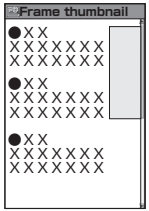
1 Display a web page composed of multiple frames.



Frame thumbnail screen

2 Select a frame to display as full frame

- To return to the Frame thumbnail screen, press [2 abc 9].



Full frame screen

Note

- For a web page composed of many frames, all frames may not be displayed.

Displaying in Multiple Windows

You can open multiple windows at a time and display those by switching.

- Up to 5 windows can be opened. The maximum number of window may not be opened depending on frame numbers or contents of the pages.

1 While displaying a web page ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Window Operat." ▶ "New Window" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Open]
Display the Bookmark folder list screen.

[Go to location]
Input address : Enter a URL to access a web page.→P195
URL history : Select an entry in the URL history to access a web page. Go to Step 2 in "Using URL History" (P175).

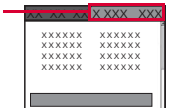
[Home]
Display a web page which URL is set as "Home".

[Link]
Display a linked page

Continued on next page

Note

- Tabs are displayed on the top of the screen.
  To switch windows, press [−/][Menu] ▶ "Window Operat." ▶ "Change Window" ▶ select a window name to display.
  The tab of the displayed web page appears to the front.



Operations in Full Browser

The operations in Full browser is basically same as those on sites from Go to location menu of i-mode (P172). Here describes different parts of the operation.

Full Browser Screen Sub Menu

1 While displaying a web page ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Goto Page]

Back : Display web pages accessed previously.
Forward : When displaying web pages backwards, display next page of the currently displayed web page.
Visit History : You can access a web page by using the URL history.
Home : Display a web page which URL is set as "Home".

[Reload]

Reload the displayed web page.

[Bookmark]

Register a web page as Bookmark or display the list of the Bookmark folder.

[Go to location]

Input address : Enter a URL to access a web page.→P195
URL history : Select an entry in the URL history to access a web page. Go to Step 2 in "Using URL History" (P175).

[Display]

Set display settings for web pages.

Zoom :
Zoom In : Magnify the view of the web page.
Zoom Out : Minify the view of the web page.
Zoom : Set zoom factor for a web page display.

Display Mode : Change display mode of a web page.→P203

PagePilot : Minify the whole view of the displayed web page and select a range to display.
▶ Move the cursor to the part to display ▶ ●[Select]

All frames : Display a frame thumbnail screen when a full frame screen is displayed.

Goto on Page : Display the top/end of the web page.
Go to Top : Go to the top of the displayed web page.
Go to End : Go to the end of the displayed web page.

Search : Search text in the displayed web page. When the search text is found, the text is highlighted.
▶ Select the search text field ▶ Enter the text to search ▶ [−][Done]
To search the exact match word only, mark "Whole Words Only".
To search a word distinguishing upper case from lower case, mark "Case Sensitive".
To display in order of search result, press [−/](Prev]/ ●[Next].
Press [ﾒﾓ] to exit the search.

Character code : Change character code of the displayed web page.
Every time you change the character code, the code switches in order of Shift-JIS → EUC → JIS → UTF-8.

Play animation : Play GIF animation displayed from the beginning.

Title Info : Display the title of the displayed web page.

URL Info :

URL Info : Display the URL of the displayed web page.
• Press [−/][Menu] ▶ "Copy" to copy the URL.

Link Info : Display the URL of the selected link.
• Press [−/][Menu] ▶ "Copy" to copy the URL.

SSL Info : Display the certificate of the web page.

[Window Operat.]

New Window : Open another web page loaded from the Open/Go to location/Home/Link in a new window. →P197

Open as Back : Open another web page loaded from the Open/Go to location/Home/Link in a background window.→P197

Open Link : Display the selected link in a new window.
• If a movie is linked, a new window is closed and a movie application starts.

Close Window : Close the displayed web site.

Change Window : Select a web page from the list of pages displayed in multi windows.

[Save Image]

Save images on a web page to the FOMA terminal or microSD card.
▶ **Select an image to save ▶ "Yes"**
• If microSD card is inserted, select save location in addition.

[Text]

Text Copy : Copy text on a web page.
Select the start point of a range including text to copy ▶ Select the end point ▶ Select the start point ▶ Select the end point
• Press [−] [SelAll] to copy all text.

Text Paste : Paste copied text to the selected text box.

Continued on next page

[Compose msg]

Create i-mode mail with the URL of the displayed web page in the message text. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).

Select from the following options when a linked item is selected.

This page : Paste the URL of the displayed web page.
Link page : Paste the URL link of the selected web page.

[Setting]

Image display : Set whether to display images.
Set as Home : Set the displayed web page as "Home".
TLS : Set whether to use TLS. Normally, changing the setting is not necessary.

[Shortcut List]

You can check operations assigned to the dial keys in the list. The assigned operations can be modified as well.→P196

Note

- For some web pages, characters may not appear correctly or their view may differ from the actual web pages on PC. When characters appear incorrectly, "Change character code" (P199) may fix the problem.
- When no data is obtained for a web page with communication error etc., ☒ may appear on the screen. In this case, reloading the web page (P198) may fix the problem.

<Save Image>

- You can save images up to 500KB.
- For BMP/PNG formats, images are automatically saved in "OTHER" folder of microSD card. These images cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal.

Full Browser Screen Action Menu

1 While displaying a web page ▶ [−] [Action] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Open Link]

Display a linked page

[Link Info]

Display the URL of selected link.

[Save Image]

Save images on a web page to the FOMA terminal or microSD card. →P199

[Text Paste]

Paste copied text to the selected text box.

[Zoom In]

Magnify the view of the web page.

[Zoom Out]

Minify the view of the web page.

[Display Mode]

Change display mode of a web page.→P203

[PagePilot]

Minify the whole view of the displayed web page and select a range to display.→P198

[Go to Top]
Go to the top of the displayed web page.

[Go to End]
Go to the end of the displayed web page.

[Text Copy]
Copy text on a web page.→P199

Note

- Some menu items above may not appear depending on the operation.

Uploading Images

You can upload JPEG/GIF images saved in the FOMA terminal to a web page.

- Upload method varies depending on web pages. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Note

- You can upload images up to 80KB. However, when multiple images and characters are included, the maximum size is 100KB altogether.
- Uploading may not be available for some web pages.
- Images which are restricted to stay in the FOMA terminal cannot be uploaded.

Bookmark

Saving in Bookmark

1 While displaying a web page ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Bookmark" ▶ "Add"

2 Select the title field ▶ Edit the title ▶ [−\] [Done] ▶ Select the folder to save

Note

- The operations available for Bookmark folder list or Bookmark list are the same as those for i-mode.→P176

Switching to Full Browser from i-mode

You can switch the view in i-mode to the view in Full browser.

- Some web pages may not appear correctly.

1 In i-mode view ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Switch to Full Browser" ▶ "OK"

Full Browser Settings

Setting Full Browser

Set browser functions.

Communication

Configuring Communication Settings

1 Full browser menu screen (P194) ▶ "Full Browser Settings" ▶ "Communication" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Access Setting]

Check the information about using Full browser.

- When you use Full browser changing settings, please read the information in the Access Setting carefully.

[Cookie Setting]

Set whether to validate Cookie. Cookie is the system to store information such as user name, access date, or access times in the FOMA terminal temporarily when accessing web pages and use those data when accessing the same page next time.

- DOCOMO is not responsible for your information passing to a third party with Cookie validated.
- When selected "Valid (notify)", you can select the option from "Sending", "Receiving", or "Sending/receiving".

[Delete Cookie]

Delete Cookie.

▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Referer Setting]

Set whether to send Referer (information that where a page is linked from) when accessing a web page by selecting a link.

- DOCOMO is not responsible for your information passing to a third party with sending Referer.

[TLS]

TLS is a method to protect privacy and communicate safely with authentication/encryption technologies. Set whether to use TLS. Normally, changing the setting is not necessary.

Note

<Access Setting>

- When inserting another UIM, Access Setting becomes invalid.

<Cookie Setting>

- When inserting another UIM, Cookie Setting becomes "Invalid".
- When changing the setting from "Invalid" to "Valid"/"Valid (notify)", and when UIM information does not match, the Terminal security code is required.

View

Configuring View Settings

1 Full browser menu screen (P194) ▶ "Full Browser Settings" ▶ "View" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Zoom]
Set zoom factor for a web page display.

[Display Mode Setting]
Set display method of a web page.

Horiz. Scroll On : Display a web page in the same way as the view on PC. Scrolling up/down, or to the right/left is available.

Horiz. Scroll Off : Display a web page fit to the display width. Scrolling up and down is available.

[Set Image display]
Set whether to display images.

[PagePilot Display]
Use ✣ to keep scrolling to minify the whole view of the displayed web page and select a range to display.→P198

[Pointer Movement Range]
Distance for the pointer to move can be set.

[Pointer Acceleration]
Acceleration speed for the pointer can be set.

[Bookmark Display]
Display method for saved Bookmark folder can be set.

[Window Open Guard Setting]
Set the action when getting an instruction to open a new window from JavaScript on a web page.

Valid : A new window does not open.

Invalid : A confirmation appears when opening a new window.

[Script Setting]
Set whether to validate JavaScript. JavaScript is a program which works on web pages.

- Some web pages may not appear correctly with "Invalid" setting.

Home URL

Configuring the Home Setting

1 Full browser menu screen (P194) ▶ "Full Browser Settings" ▶ "Home URL"

2 ●[Select] ▶ Enter URL ▶ −[Done]

- Up to 2,033 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Others

Configuring Other Settings

1 Full browser menu screen (P194) ▶ "Full Browser Settings" ▶ "Others" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Check Settings]
Display the setting list of Full browser.

[Reset Settings]
Reset the Full browser settings.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

Camera

Copyrights and Portrait Rights

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute contents such as text, image, music, or software downloaded from web sites on the Internet, or images captured with this product without permission from the copyright holder except when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed under copyright laws. Note that it may be prohibited to capture or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use. Refrain from taking portraits of other persons and uploading such portraits to web sites without their consent, as this violates portrait rights.

Please be considerate of other people's privacy when capturing and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before Using Camera ····· 206
Capturing Still Images ····· Photo-mode 209
Capturing Movies ····· Movie-mode 212
Changing Settings for Shooting ····· 215
Changing Camera Settings ···· Camera settings 216
Using Bar Code Reader ····· Bar code reader 219

Before Using Camera

Notes for Capturing Images

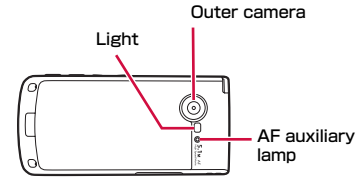
- The camera employs high-precision technology, but some pixels or lines may seem brighter or darker than others. Also, when you capture images in places with insufficient lighting, noises seen as white lines increase. This is normal.
- Clean the lens with a soft cloth before capturing. If the lens is stained with fingerprints or oil, the captured image may be out of focus or blurred.
- Do not leave the FOMA terminal in a warm place or under a direct sunlight for a long period. The image or video to capture may deteriorate.
- If you capture under a fluorescent light, mercury lamp, or sodium lamp flickering at high speed, flickering such as stripes may appear. The color tone of still images or movies may vary depending on the capturing timing.
- Do not expose the lens to direct sunlight for a long period of time and do not point at the sun or a bright light directly. The image may become discolored or the camera may fail.
- Do not cover the lens with your finger, hair, or the strap when capturing.
- Capturing a fast moving object may result in an image slightly off from the image displayed on the screen at the time of capturing, or the image may be blurred.
- When the battery level is low, you may not be able to save captured still images or movies. Check the battery level before using the camera.
- Captured still images or movies may differ from the actual subjects in brightness or color tone.
- Even in Manner mode, the shutter tone sounds at a fixed volume. The shutter tone sounds from the speaker even when a Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal.

Using Camera

Hold the FOMA terminal in a horizontal position for using camera. You can use camera with the terminal closed or opened. Also, you can select the Inner or Outer camera, depending on the situation. Switching Cameras→P211, P214

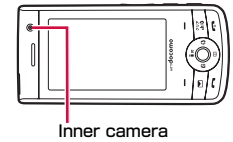
■ Outer camera

This is useful for taking pictures of scenery or other people. The screen output is similar to what you see (normal image). The Auto focus adjusts the focus of still image capturing of the Outer camera.→P210



■ Inner camera

Useful for taking pictures of yourself. Inverted (mirrored) images are shown in the frame. Captured image can be saved as either of mirrored image or normal image.→P210

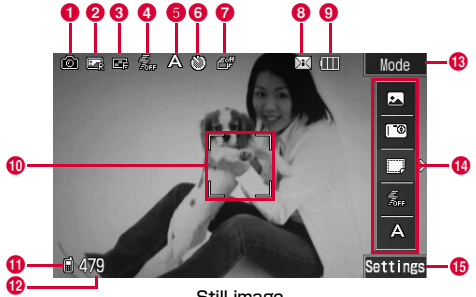


Note

- The light can only be used for the Outer camera.

Capture Screen Components

The meanings of marks (icons and others) on the still image/movie capture screen are as follows:



Still image capture screen

Movie capture screen

❶ **Camera-mode→P209, P212**
- Photo-mode
- Movie-mode

❷ **Image size→P216, P218**
- 5M (2560×1920)
- 3M (2048×1536)
- 2M (1600×1200)
- 1M (1280×960)
- VGA (640×480) (Outer camera)
- VGA (480×640) (Inner camera)
- CIF (352×288)
- Wallpaper (240×400)
- Wallpaper (400×240) (Still image)
- WQVGA (400×240) (Movie)
- QVGA (320×240)
- QCIF (176×144)
- Sub-QCIF (128×96)
- Phonebook (120×160)
- Menu-icon (48×48)

❸ **Quality→P217, P218**
- Super fine (Still image)
- Super fine (Movie)
- Fine (Still image)
- Fine (Movie)
- Normal (Still image)
- Normal (Movie)

❹ **Light→P211, P214**
- Off
- When taking
- Always on
- Auto

Continued on next page

❺ **Scene mode→P216**
Auto
Portrait
Landscape
Sports
Sunset
Night mode
• Set this when capturing in a dark place, etc.

Macro→P211
Macro ON

❻ **Auto timer→P216**
None 3sec 5sec 10sec

❼ **Continuous mode→P217**
Off Auto Manual

❽ **Receiving mail→P32**

❾ **Battery level→P46**

❿ **Focus frame→P210**
The frame color changes to indicate status when the Auto focus is used.

⓫ **Storage location→P217, P218**
Handset memory
microSD card

⓬ **Number of available shots (Still image capture screen)/ Maximum capturing time (Movie capture screen)→P430, P431**

⓭ **Soft key display (Operations by pressing [−])**
The display and functions are switched depending on the screen. You can switch the Camera mode here.→P209, P212

⓮ **Sub menu**

⓯ **Soft key display (Operations by pressing [−])**
The display and functions are switched depending on the screen. The settings menu is displayed here.→P216, P218

⓰ **Type→P218**
Sound+Video Movie only Sound only

⓱ **Size restriction→P218**
No restriction 2Mbyte 500Kbyte

⓲ **Elapsed time/total time**
Shows the capture elapsed time/total time

⓳ **Capture progress bar**
Shows the capture elapsed time in a bar

Save Format of Still Images and Movies

	Still image file		Movie file
File format	JPEG		MP4 (Mobile MP4)
Resolution	Outer camera	5M (2560×1920) 3M (2048×1536) 2M (1600×1200) 1M (1280×960) VGA (640×480) CIF (352×288) Wallpaper (240×400) Wallpaper (400×240) QVGA (320×240) QCIF (176×144) Sub-QCIF (128×96) Phonebook (120×160) Menu-icon (48×48)	VGA (640×480) WQVGA (400×240) QVGA (320×240) QCIF (176×144) Sub-QCIF (128×96)
	Inner camera	VGA (480×640) CIF (352×288) Wallpaper (240×400) Wallpaper (400×240) QVGA (320×240) QCIF (176×144) Sub-QCIF (128×96) Phonebook (120×160) Menu-icon (48×48)	QCIF (176×144) Sub-QCIF (128×96)

	Still image file	Movie file
Encoding format	–	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
File extension	.jpg	.3gp
Display name of the file	The year, month, date, hour, and minute of the time of capture are added automatically. Example: If taken at 10:10:10 on 2009/1/1 Photo-mode: "P2009_0101_101010" Movie-mode (QCIF or smaller): "V2009_0101_1010_X (X is a sequential number)" Movie-mode (QVGA or larger): "MOLXXX" (XXX is a sequential number) Movie-mode (sound only): "MMFXXXX" (XXXX is a sequential number) * The movie display name does not describe the recorded time in second.	
Maximum file size	Approx. 3MB	QCIF: Approx. 58MB VGA (saved in microSD card): Approx. 900MB

Photo-mode

Capturing Still Images

- Captured still images are saved in the "Camera" folder in "My picture" of "Data box" on the FOMA terminal. To change the saving destination to the microSD card, access "Memory in use" (P217).

1 Stand-by display ▶ ●

Still image capture screen

■Key operations on the still image capture screen

Key	Description
●[(Take)], ●	Shutter
▲/▼	Zoom
◎	Show/hide icons and the sub menu*
1, ー[Mode]	Change Camera-mode
ー/[Settings]	Display setting menu
●(halfway)	Start the Auto focus
	Exit Photo-mode
0	Switch camera→P211
2	Select size→P216
3	Image quality→P217
4	Light→P211
5	Scene mode→P216
6	Auto timer→P216
7	Continuous mode→P217
✱/#	Brightness control

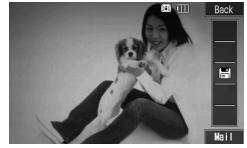
* Press ◎ once to hide sub menus and twice to hide icons.

Continued on next page

2 Point the camera to the subject ▶ ●[(Take)]/

The shutter tone sounds and the still image is taken.
The Confirm save screen appears, and you can select whether to save the image.

- Press [−/][Mail] on the Confirm save screen to create i-mode mail with the captured still image attached.



Confirm save screen
(Ex.: Outer camera)

3 ●[(Save)]/

The captured image is automatically saved in the destination specified under "Memory in use" (P217) and the Complete save screen will be displayed.

■To cancel saving

Press [−][Back] or [ ].

Complete save screen

- You can use the Auto focus when capturing by Outer camera.→P210
- When using the Inner camera, images on the capture screen and Confirm save screen are displayed as a mirror image, however, the image will be saved as a normal image.
- Press [−/][Edit] on the Complete save screen to edit the captured still image.→P281

Using the Auto focus

When you capture images by Outer camera, the subject in the center of the screen is automatically focused on. When is pressed halfway on the Still image capture screen and you wait for a while, AF auxiliary lamp turns on and auto adjustment starts, then the focus frame turns red. The focus frame turns green when focused and then AF auxiliary lamp turns off. Then fully press to take a picture. Releasing allows you to set focus again.

For images captured with "Continuous mode"

You can select or display images to save on the Confirm save screen.

- To save images, mark images to save ▶ press [−/][Menu] ▶ "Save".
- To send selected images via mail, mark an image (only 1 image) to send ▶ press [−/][Menu] ▶ "Mail".
- To display only the selected images, mark images to display ▶ press [−/][Menu] ▶ "View".

When "Auto saving" (P217) is set to "ON"

Pressing ●[(Take)]/ captures a still image and automatically saves it in the destination specified under "Memory in use" (P217).
After the Complete save screen appears, the Still image capture screen returns. However, in Continuous mode, the save notification screen appears instead of the Complete save screen.

Saving a still image captured with Inner camera as a mirror image

If "Auto saving" (P217) is set to "OFF", the captured image can be saved as a mirror image (flipped vertically).

▶ Press " (Save mirror image)" on the Confirm save screen

- You can view the image as a normal image by selecting " (View normal image)" on the Confirm save screen.

Note

- Even when Manner mode is activated, the shutter tone sounds when capturing.
- If "Select size" is set to "5M (2560×1920)", the zoom feature cannot be used.

Still Image Capture Screen Sub Menu

1 Still image capture screen (P209) ▶ Perform the following operations

- When the sub menu is not displayed, press ●.

[(Album)]
Display captured images, etc. in "My picture" of "Data box".

[/ (Switch camera)]
Switch between the Inner and Outer cameras.

[(Take)]
Press ● to shoot.

[/ / / / (Light)]*
Set conditions for lighting.
- If " (Auto)" is selected, the light automatically turns on/off depending on surrounding light.

[/ / / / / / (Macro)]*
Switch between each scene mode and macro functions.
- When the macro function is selected, the focus is fixed at approximately 10cm, which is very close to the lens (the Auto focus function cannot be used).

* Not available for the Inner camera.

Complete Save Screen Sub Menu

1 Complete save screen (P210) ▶ Perform the following operations

[(Album)]
Display captured images, etc. in "My picture" of "Data box".

[(Send via mail)]
Create i-mode mail with the captured still image attached.

[(New picture)]
Return to the Still image capture screen.

[(Set as)]

Set as stand-by	:	Set the captured image as the Stand-by display wallpaper.
Add to phonebook	:	Save a new entry with the captured image to the Phonebook. ▶ "New registration" ▶ Save an entry to the Phonebook ▶ [−][Done]
Update phonebook	:	Add the captured image to the existing entry in the Phonebook. ▶ "Add registration" ▶ Select a Phonebook entry ▶ Edit and save the Phonebook entry ▶ [−][Done] ▶ "Yes"
Wake-up display	:	Set the captured still image as the Wake-up display.

[(Delete)]
Delete the captured still image.

Panorama Shot

You can create a panoramic image from 3 captured still images taken by moving the FOMA terminal rightward.

- This option is available when the image size is "VGA (640×480)" to "Sub-QCIF (128×96)"
- This function is not available for the Inner camera.

1 Stand-by display ▶ ●

2 −[Settings] ▶ "Shot mode" ▶ "Panorama shot" ▶ −[Preview]

Indicate where the current frame is

Panorama shot screen

3 ●[(Take)]/●

4 Move the FOMA terminal rightward ▶ ●[Take]/●

5 Move the FOMA terminal rightward ▶ ●[Take]/●

A panoramic image made up of the 3 images is displayed.

6 ●[(Save)]/●

Note

- The right edge of the previously taken image is displayed at the left edge of the current capture screen, helping you to frame for the next shot.
- Pressing −[Stop] while capturing starts over capturing.

Movie-mode

Capturing Movies

- If "High-speed" is set to ON, the image in the size of VGA (640×480), WQVGA (400×240), QVGA (320×240) can be captured.
- Movies with the size of "QVGA (320×240)" or larger can be saved only in a microSD card.
  Movies captured in "QCIF (176×144)" or "Sub-QCIF (128×96)" are saved in the "Camera" folder in "i-motion" of "Data box" on the FOMA terminal. To change the saving destination to the microSD card, access "Memory in use" (P218).

1 Stand-by display ▶ ●(for 1+ seconds)

Movie capture screen

■Key operations on the Movie capture screen

Key	Description
●[Rec (Rec.)], ●	Start recording
▲/▼	Zoom* (available while capturing)
✿	Show/hide icons and the sub menu* (or brightness control while recording)
1, −[Mode]	Change Camera-mode
−/[Settings]	Display setting menu
清/ｸﾘｱ	Exit Movie-mode
0	Switch camera→P214
2	Select size→P218
3	Type→P218
4	Size restriction→P218
5	Light ON/OFF
6	Video quality→P218
＊/#	Brightness control

* Press ✿ once to hide sub menus and twice to hide icons.

2 Point the camera to the subject ▶ ●[Rec (Rec.)]/●

The tone sounds and starts capturing movie.

- −/[❚❚/●]: Pause/resume the recording.
  * Pause is not available when "Type" is "Sound only".
- −[Cancel] or 清/ｸﾘｱ: Stop the capturing.

Capturing movie screen

3 ●[■]/● to stop recording

The tone sounds and stops capturing movie.
The Confirm save screen appears, and you can select whether to save the movie.

- From the Confirm save screen, press −/[Play] or select "▷ (Play)" to play the captured movie.
- Select "✉ (Send via mail)" on the Confirm save screen to create i-mode mail with the captured movie attached.

Confirm save screen

4 ●[💾 (Save)]/●

The captured movie is automatically saved in the destination set under "Memory in use" (P218) and the Complete save screen appears.

■To cancel saving
Press −[Preview] or 清/ｸﾘｱ.

Complete save screen

- When using the Inner camera, the image on the capture screen is displayed as mirror images, however, it is saved as a normal image.
- Press −[Mail] on the Complete save screen to create i-mode mail with the captured movie attached.
- Press −/[Play] on the Complete save screen to play the recorded movie.

When "Auto saving" (P218) is set to "ON"
Pressing ●[■]/● stops the recording and automatically saves it in the destination specified under "Memory in use" (P218).
The Complete save screen appears and the Movie capture screen returns.

Continued on next page

Note

- Even when Manner mode is activated, the shutter tone sounds when capturing starts and ends.
- Movie capturing will be terminated when it is interrupted by a call. After the call is terminated, the Confirm save screen appears, and you can save the movie recorded until the interruption.
- Playing movies on a PC→P411, playing movies recorded in High-speed on the FOMA terminal→P290

Movie Capture Screen Sub Menu

1 Movie capture screen (P212) ▶ Perform the following operations

- When the sub menu is not displayed, press ●.

[(Album)]
Display captured movies, etc. in "i-motion" of "Data box".

[/ (Switch camera)]
Switch between the Inner and Outer cameras.

[(Rec.)]
Press ● to shoot.

[/ (Light)]*
Turn on/off the light.

[/ (High-speed)]*
Set the high speed recording ON/OFF.

- When this option is set to ON, you can record movies whose size are "QVGA (320×240)" or larger. When this option is set to OFF, you can record movies whose size are "QCIF (176×144)" or "Sub-QCIF (128×96)".

* Not available for the Inner camera.

Note

<High-speed>

- "High-speed" cannot be set if a microSD card is not inserted.
- Movies recorded in High-speed cannot be copied/moved or attached to mail.

Complete Save Screen Sub Menu

1 Complete save screen (P213) ▶ Perform the following operations

[(Album)]
Display captured movies, etc. in "i-motion" of "Data box".

[(Set as wallpaper)]
Set the captured movie as the Stand-by display wallpaper.

[(New movie)]
Return to the Movie capture screen.

[(Send via mail)]
Create i-mode mail with the captured movie attached.

[(Delete)]
Delete the captured movie.

Changing Settings for Shooting

Set the Camera functions according to the capturing conditions.

Using Zoom

Set the image zoom magnification.
Available maximum magnifications are as follows:

■ Outer camera

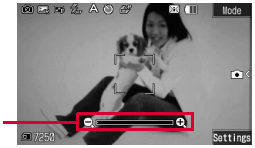
Camera-mode	Image size	Zoom	Maximum magnification
Photo-mode	5M (2560×1920)	–	–
	3M (2048×1536)	10 steps	Approx. 1.2 times
	2M (1600×1200)		
	1M (1280×960)		
	VGA (640×480)		
	CIF (352×288)		Approx. 2.0 times
	Wallpaper (240×400)		Approx. 2.5 times
	Wallpaper (400×240)		
	QVGA (320×240)		Approx. 3.4 times
	QCIF (176×144)		
	Sub-QCIF (128×96)		
	Phonebook (120×160)		
	Menu-icon (48×48)		
Movie-mode	VGA (640×480)	–	–
	WQVGA (400×240)		
	QVGA (320×240)		
	QCIF (176×144)	10 steps	Approx. 3.4 times
	Sub-QCIF (128×96)		

■ Inner camera

Camera-mode	Image size	Zoom	Maximum magnification
Photo-mode	VGA (480×640)	–	–
	CIF (352×288)	10 steps	Approx. 1.7 times
	Wallpaper (240×400)		Approx. 2.5 times
	Wallpaper (400×240)		
	QVGA (320×240)		Approx. 3.4 times
	QCIF (176×144)		
	Sub-QCIF (128×96)		
	Phonebook (120×160)		
	Menu-icon (48×48)		
Movie-mode	QCIF (176×144)		
	Sub-QCIF (128×96)		

Continued on next page

1 Still image capture screen (P209)/Movie capture screen (P212) ▶ Use [ ]/[ ] to adjust zoom magnification



Zoom magnification

Zoom settings
(Ex.: Still image capture screen)

Setting Auto Timer

Set the number of seconds from the time the shutter is pressed until an image is captured.

- The Auto Timer is not available for movie capturing.

1 Still image capture screen (P209) ▶ [ ][Settings] ▶ "Auto timer"

2 "None"/"3sec"/"5sec"/"10sec" ▶ [ ][Preview]

(the number represents the number of seconds) appears at the top of the screen.

3 [●][(Take)]/[ ]

Auto timer starts. An image is captured automatically after the set number of seconds.
After the shutter key is pressed, the timer sound rings until the image is captured.

Camera settings

Changing Camera Settings

Still Image Capture Screen Setting Menu

1 Still image capture screen (P209) ▶ [ ][Settings] ▶ "Preview"/"Others" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Select size]
Set the image size to take.

[Scene mode]*
You can take a suitable still image for the capturing conditions.

[Brightness]
Use [ ] to adjust the brightness.

[Filter]
Add an effect when capturing a still image.

[White balance]
Set hue/tint for the image. When set according to the capturing conditions, a naturally colored image can be produced.

[Auto timer]
Select the number of seconds from the time the shutter is pressed until an image is captured.

[Shot mode]

Normal : Take one still image.

Continuous mode : Press the shutter button to take images continuously.
- You can take up to 6 continuous images smaller than "CIF (352×288)" (including Wallpaper size), or up to 4 images of "CIF (352×288)".
- When "Auto" is selected, you can take continuous pictures by pressing the shutter once. When "Manual" is selected, you can take continuous pictures by pressing the shutter repeatedly.

Shoot with frame : Add a frame to the subject when capturing an image. Select a frame from "My picture". ▶ Move the cursor to the folder ▶ ●[Open] ▶ Select a frame

Panorama shot* : Take a panoramic image.→P212

[Image quality]

Select the image quality used when saving the still image.

[Memory in use]

Set the saving destination for the still image.

[Auto Saving]

Set whether to save the still image automatically.

[Hide icons]

Set whether to hide icons and sub menu automatically or manually.
- When "Auto" is selected, icons and sub menu disappear automatically if no operation is performed for approximately 3 seconds.

[Shake reduction]*

Set whether to enable the shake reduction function.

[Auto focus]*

Set the Auto focus.
- When "Face tracking" is selected, a face is recognized and focused automatically. Up to 3 faces can be detected.

[Shutter sound]

Set the shutter tone.

[Flicker tuning]

The flicker on the screen under a fluorescent light, etc. may be reduced.

Auto : Suppress the flicker automatically.

50Hz : Select this option in the location where the frequency of the power is 50Hz.

60Hz : Select this option in the location where the frequency of the power is 60Hz.

* Not available for the Inner camera.

2 −[Preview]

Note

<Continuous mode>
- This option is available when the image size is "CIF (352×288)" or smaller (including Wallpaper size).
- When "Auto" is selected, the Outer camera captures with intervals of approximately 0.7 seconds, and the Inner camera with approximately 0.2 seconds.
- When "Continuous mode" is set, "Auto timer" is disabled.
- If you press −[Stop] while capturing with "Manual", you can end capturing and the Confirm save screen appears.

<Shoot with frame>
- This option is available when the image size is "CIF (352×288)" to "Sub-QCIF (128×96)" (including Wallpaper size).

<Auto focus>
- When "Manual" is selected, the focus adjustment bar appears on the Still image capture screen which you can control by pressing ●. Also, icons and sub menu are always displayed.

Movie Capture Screen Setting Menu

1 Movie capture screen (P212) ▶ [−/][Settings] ▶ "Preview"/"Others" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Select size]
Set the movie size to take.
- You cannot select the size "QVGA (320×240)" or larger unless "High-speed" is set to ON.
- The frame rate is displayed on the right of the size.

[Color effect]
Add an effect when capturing movies.

[White balance]
Set hue/tint for the image. When set according to the capturing conditions, a naturally colored movie can be produced.

[Video quality]
Set the image quality used when saving the movie.

[Size restriction]*
Restrict the file size of a movie.

[Memory in use]
Set the saving destination for a movie.
- If "High-speed" is set to ON, "Handset memory" cannot be selected.

[Auto Saving]
Set whether to save the movie automatically.

[Hide icons]
Set whether to hide icons and sub menu automatically or manually.
- When "Auto" is selected, icons and sub menu disappear automatically if no operation is performed for approximately 3 seconds.

[Type]
Set whether video and sound are to be included in a movie.
- If "High-speed" is set to ON, "Sound only" cannot be selected.

[Common mode]*
Set file size for attaching to i-mode mail (up to 500KB).

[Flicker tuning]
The flicker on the screen under a fluorescent light, etc. may be reduced.

Auto : Suppress the flicker automatically.
50Hz : Select this option in the location where the frequency of the power is 50Hz.
60Hz : Select this option in the location where the frequency of the power is 60Hz.

* Not available if "High-speed" is set to ON.

2 [−\][Preview]

Note
- When setting "Common mode" to "ON", "Video quality" is not available to set.

<Flicker tuning>
- If you record the movie in the size of "QVGA (320×240)" in the room where 50Hz fluorescent light is used, flicker may not be reduced.

Using Bar Code Reader

You can scan information embedded in a JAN code or QR code using the Outer camera. You can create i-mode mail or connect to the Internet using the scanned information. You can also save or play the scanned information, image or melody.

- UP to 5 pieces of scanned information can be saved.
- Scan the code when the entire code is displayed on the screen.
- Hold the camera parallel to the code.

■ JAN codes

JAN code is a bar code representing numbers using vertical bars in different thickness and spaces. 8-digit (JAN8) or 13-digit (JAN13) bar code can be scanned.

- The scanned result of the following JAN code is "4942857123456".

4 942857 123456

■ QR codes

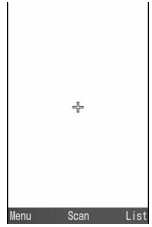
The QR code is one of the 2 dimensional codes that express text including Kanji, Kana, or Pictograph in the vertical and horizontal patterns. Some QR codes have an image or melody embedded, and there are split QR codes where multiple images contain 1 larger piece of information.

- The scanned result of the following QR code is "株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DOCOMO, INC.)".

Scanning Codes

- When scanning bar cords, use the Outer camera and hold the FOMA terminal approximately 10cm away from the code to scan.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Camera) ▶ "Bar code reader"



Scan screen

Continued on next page

■Key operations on the Scan screen.

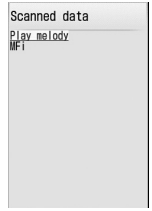
Key	Description
●[Scan]	Start the Auto focus
[−/][Menu]	Change the photo mode to Photo-mode/Movie-mode/Bar code reader
[\−][List]	List the saved scanned data
●[Retry]*	Readjust the Auto focus
[ｸﾘｱ]	Exit the Bar code reader

* Available only on the screen after adjusting the Auto focus by pressing ●[Scan].

2 Display the code to scan within the screen ▶ ●[Scan]

After the auto focusing, scan the code. When scanning completes, a tone sounds and the scanned data appears.

- When the bar code reader is activated, scanning starts automatically. When focused, scan the code automatically without pressing ●[Scan].
- When Manner mode is activated, the tone does not sound.



Scanned data screen (Ex.: For a melody)

3 Depending on the type of scanned data, performs the following operations

- Depending on the scanned data, the screen or operation may differ.
- Always save the scanned data if you want to use it later.
- Up to 16 split QR codes can be continuously scanned and combined.→P222

■**For phone number**
Select the displayed phone number to open the Phone number entry screen with the scanned phone number already entered.
If "Add to phonebook" is displayed, select it to save to the Phonebook.

■**For mail address**
Select the displayed mail address to create i-mode mail with the scanned mail address already entered.
If "Compose mail", etc. appears, select it to create i-mode mail with the scanned mail address or subject already entered.
If "Add to phonebook" is displayed, select it to save to the Phonebook.

■**For URL**
Select the displayed URL to access the URL.
If "Add bookmark" is displayed, select it to save as Bookmark.

■**For text**
The scanned characters are displayed.

■**For image**
The scanned image is displayed.

■**For melody**
Press ●[Play] to play the scanned melody. Press ●[Stop] during a playback, the melody stops.

■**For i-αppli**
If "Start i-αppli" is displayed, select it to launch.

Note

<Common functions>
- Bar codes other than JAN codes, QR codes, and 2 dimensional codes cannot be scanned.
- Bar codes may not be correctly scanned because of scratch, smudge, damage, printing quality, or reflection of light.
- Some codes may not be scanned depending on the type, size, or QR code version.
- If trying to save more than 5 pieces of data, a confirmation asking whether to delete older data first appears. To save the new data, select "Yes" ▶ select data to delete ▶ select "Yes".
- If Bar code reader cannot scan the code within approximately 30 seconds after being activated, a message indicating that scanning failed appears. If the Bar code reader cannot scan the code after a certain period of time, it automatically terminates.

<Compose mail>
- If the address has invalid characters, nothing is entered in the address.

<Make call>
- Valid characters are numbers and symbols [#, ✱, +, −, P, (, and)]. If the phone number contains characters other than these, the call cannot be made.

<Start i-αppli>
- If "Barcode i-αppli To" (P269) is not set, you cannot start an i-αppli from scanned data.

Scanned Data Screen Sub Menu

- Displayed items vary depending on the type of scanned data.

1 Scanned data screen (P220) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Copy]
Copy selected URL, phone number, or address on the scanned result screen.

[Play]
Play the scanned data.

[Save to list]
Save the scanned data in a list.

[Save to Databox]
Save the scanned image or melody to "Data box".

[Add to phonebook]
Save the scanned name, phone number, URL, or mail address to Phonebook.

[Add bookmark]
The scanned URL is saved to "Bookmark".

[Retry]
Scan the code again.

Continued on next page

Scanning split QR codes

① Perform Steps 1 and 2 in "Scanning Codes" (P219)
② After the message "Already read. Scan next." appears, scan the next code
③ Repeat Step ②

- Press 3#S to cancel scanning or ●[Retry] to readjust the Auto focus.

File name of the scanned data

The scanned data is automatically named with the year, month, date, hour, and minute. The file cannot be renamed.
Example: If taken at 10:10 on 2009/1/1
JAN code:
"P2009_0101_1010_X.JAN" (X is a sequential number)
QR code:
"P2009_0101_1010_X.QR" (X is a sequential number)

Using/Deleting Saved Data

1 Scan screen (P219) ▶ −[List]

■ **To activate scan screen**
Press −/[Menu] ▶ "Scan".

■ **To delete 1 item of saved scanned data**
Move the cursor to data to delete ▶ −/[Menu] ▶ "Delete" ▶ "Yes".

■ **To delete all saved scanned data**
Press −/[Menu] ▶ "Delete all" ▶ enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes".

2 Select the scanned data

For the operation hereafter, refer to Step 3 in "Scanning Codes" (P220) depending on the type of data.

1Seg

1Seg ····· 224
Before Using 1Seg ····· 226
Setting Channels ····· Channel settings 227
Watching 1Seg ····· Activate 1Seg 229
Setting Timer for Watching 1Seg Program ····· Bookig program list 232
Using Data Broadcasting ···· Data broadcasting 234
Using TVlink ····· TVlink 234
Setting 1Seg ····· 1Seg settings 235

1Seg

1Seg is a digital terrestrial broadcasting service for mobile devices and provides data broadcasting as well as video and sound broadcasting. Use i-mode to acquire the detail information on TV programs, join panel shows, or enjoy TV shopping.

- For details about "1Seg" service, visit the web site below.
  The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
  PC: http://www.dpa.or.jp/
  i-mode: http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/

Using 1Seg

- 1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations). Packet communication charge does not apply to receive video and sound. For viewing fee of NHK, contact NHK.
- The information displayed on a data broadcasting domain has 2 types; "data broadcasting" and "data broadcasting site". "Data broadcasting" is displayed on broadcast wave together with video and sound, and "data broadcasting site" is accessed by connecting to a site TV broadcasters (broadcast stations) provides from data broadcasting information. And it may be connected to "i-mode site". Accessing to a site requires a separate i-mode subscription.
- Packet communication charges apply to view a "data broadcasting site" or "i-mode site". Some sites (fee-based i-mode sites) require an information fee for use.

About Signal

1Seg is one of the broadcasting services, and receives a signal (broadcast wave) different from FOMA service. Therefore, regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is in/out of service are, you cannot receive 1Seg broadcasting in place the signal cannot reach or during the hours the broadcasting is out of service.
Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the FOMA terminal is within a digital terrestrial broadcasting service area.

- Place that is far from the tower which sends the broadcast wave
- Place where the signal is interrupted due to the landscape or buildings such as mountain areas or behind a building
- Place where the signal is weak or does not reach such as a tunnel, basement, or recess of a building

To improve the reception status, fully extend the 1Seg antenna. Changing the direction of antenna, holding the FOMA terminal apart from or close to your body or moving to another place may also improve the reception status.

Display when Using 1Seg for the First Time

When 1Seg is activated for the first time after purchase, a confirmation of 1Seg usage appears.
Confirm each term and press ●[OK]. After this, the confirmation does not appear.

About Broadcast Storage Area

Broadcast storage area is a storage area in the terminal specific for 1Seg. Information you entered following the data broadcasting instruction is stored on the broadcast storage area based on the TV broadcasters (broadcast stations) setting. The stored information may include personal data such as your answer results of quizzes, membership number, gender, age, and occupation.
The saved information may be displayed on a data broadcasting site when viewing, or may be sent to the TV broadcasters (broadcast stations) without you re-entering it.

- To erase broadcast storage area→P235
- When you replaced the UIM, a confirmation asking whether to initialize the broadcast storage area appears. Press "Yes" to initialize the broadcast storage area. Press "No" disables services using the broadcast storage area.

■ Display when reading the broadcast storage area

If you use the information saved in the broadcast storage area while watching a program, a confirmation "Use saved information? It may include information used by the same broadcasting group" appears. Press "Yes" to disable the subsequent confirmation on reading the saved information performed while watching the same program. Press "Yes (permanently)" to disable the subsequent confirmation on any program.

Before Using 1Seg

Procedures for Watching 1Seg

Example: When watching 1Seg for the first time

Step 1: Channel settings→P227

Save channel lists corresponding to your area.

Step 2: Activate 1Seg→P229

Extend the 1Seg antenna and activate 1Seg.

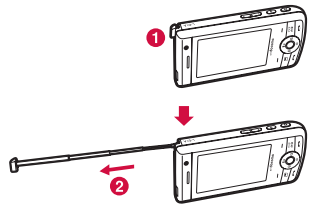
1Seg Antenna

Fully extend the 1Seg antenna when watching 1Seg.

■ To extend the 1Seg antenna

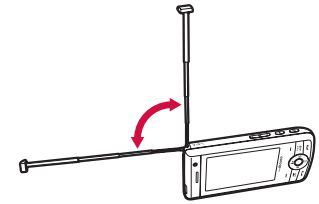
① Pinch the head of the 1Seg antenna ❶, and pull it out in the direction of the arrow ❷

② Fully extend the 1Seg antenna



③ Hold the lower part of the 1Seg antenna to change direction

- Forcibly trying to change the direction of the 1Seg antenna could deform or damage it.

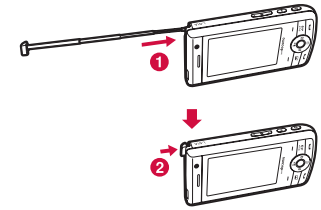


■ To put the 1Seg antenna back

① Hold the head of the 1Seg antenna and pull it down straight

- Forcibly trying to put the 1Seg antenna in could deform or damage it.

② Rotate the head of the 1Seg antenna to fit the depression



Receiving a Call or Message While Watching 1Seg

While watching 1Seg, the FOMA terminal suspends 1Seg program when following events occur. After the other task is terminated, the FOMA terminal resumes the 1Seg program.

- The operations suspended with sound and video are the following:
  - Receiving a voice/videophone call
  - Sounding an Alarm, or alarms set for Schedule event, To do task, or Booked program
- When "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm mode" and you receive SMS/i-mode mail, only the sound is suspended.

Note

- If 1Seg is used for a long time while charging, the battery life may become shorter than estimated.
- Put the 1Seg antenna back when 1Seg is not used.
- You can watch 1Seg prgram even when UIM is not inserted.

Channel settings

Setting Channels

Configuration of Channel settings beforehand to save a channel list is required to watch 1Seg.

- Up to 10 channel lists can be saved. If you set a channel list for other areas where you visit, you can watch the local TV program there.
- Up to 50 channels can be stored in 1 channel list.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ (1Seg) ▶ "Channel settings"

2 If there is no channel list registered

The New channel creation screen appears.

If there is more than 1 channel list is registered

Move the cursor to "Not registered" ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Add new"

3 Perform the following operations

[Select area]

Select an area from area list registered in the FOMA terminal.

▶ Select a region to register ▶ Select a prefecture ▶ ●[Select] ▶ "Yes"

[Auto channel set]

Automatically set channels which can be received in your area.

▶ "Yes" ▶ ●[Save] ▶ "Yes"

- To cancel, press [−/][Cancel] ▶ "Yes".
- Press [−\][Retry] before saving to retry the setting.

Note

- "Select area" may not be configured properly depending on your area. In this case, perform "Auto channel set".
- Make sure to perform the setting of "Auto channel set" within a digital terrestrial broadcasting service area.

Selecting a Channel List to Use

When multiple channel lists are registered, switch channel lists to be used from those registered.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (1Seg) ▶ "Channel settings"

The channel list in use is marked.

- [−\] [Detail]: Display the detail screen of the selected channel list.

Channel list screen

2 Select a channel list to use

Channel List Screen Sub Menu

1 Channel list screen (P228) ▶ Move the cursor to a channel list ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Add a channel to the selected channel list.→P227

[Detail]
Display the detail screen of the selected channel list.

[Rename]
Change name of the selected channel list.

[Delete]
Delete the selected channel list.

- Currently used channel list cannot be deleted.

[Delete all]
Delete the all channel lists.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

Channel List Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Channel list screen (P228) ▶ Move the cursor to a channel list ▶ [−\] [Detail] ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

- [●] [Watch]: Display the selected channel.

[Replace remote no.]
Replace the remote controller number of the selected channel.
▶ Select a channel to change ▶ Select a new remote controller number ▶ "Yes"

- If a destination number has a channel registered, the channel is replaced with the target channel.

[Delete]
Delete the selected channel.

Activate 1Seg

Watching 1Seg

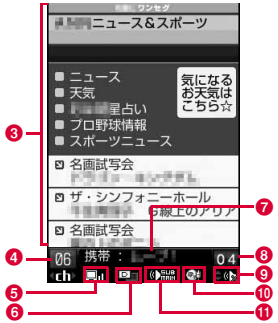
- Perform channel settings before watching 1Seg.→P227

1 [Menu] ▶ (1Seg) ▶ "Activate 1Seg"

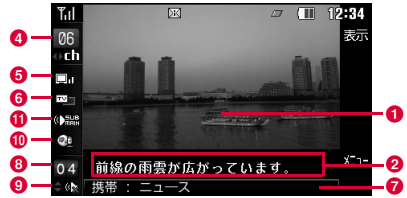
- The license agreement is displayed only at the first time. Read through the agreement and press ●[OK].

1Seg Watch Screen Components

1Seg watch screen (Portrait)



Data broadcasting (Full screen)



1Seg watch screen (Landscape (Standard))

❶ Video
❷ Subtitles
Some programs do not have subtitles.
❸ Data broadcasting
❹ Remote control no.
❺ Strength of broadcast wave
Strong ◀▶ Weak
❻ Operation mode
TV: TV Data broadcasting: Data broadcasting
❼ Channel name・program name
❽ Volume
❾ Mute
❿ In Multiple sound broadcasting
⓫ Main/Sub sound display
SUB MAIN: Main sound+Sub sound MAIN: Main sound SUB: Sub sound

Continued on next page

■Key operations on the 1Seg screen

Key	Operation	
	TV (Portrait/landscape)	Data broadcasting
●	Show/hide channel name ・program name*1	Select a data broadcasting item
◉	Adjust volume	Move a data broadcasting item
[	Portrait: Raise volume Landscape: Lower volume	
]	Portrait: Lower volume Landscape: Raise volume	
◉(Portlait), ◉(Landscape)/ Dial key/ ✱/ #	Select a channel	—
◉(1+ seconds in Portrait), ◉(1+ seconds in Landscape)	Search receivable channels→P230	—
—[Disp.]	Press to switch between portrait/ landscape(Standard)/landscape(Full screen)	
—[Disp.] (for 1+ seconds)	—	Press to switch standard/full screen
☎	Press to switch TV and data broadcasting*2	
☎	Select "Yes" to terminate 1Seg	

*1 Not available in portrait. In full screen, switch to hide all except video image and subtitle.
*2 Not available in landscape.

Note

- You can activate 1Seg from a link of 1Seg information displayed in a site or mail (Media To).→P182
- Intermittent sound or image may be heard or seen due to broadcast wave receptions. Also, a block-shaped noise may be displayed or the image may not be displayed.
- The screen orientation automatically switches to horizontal by tilting the FOMA terminal to the left.
- Placing the position of the FOMA terminal in horizontal direction while data broadcasting is displayed, only video is displayed.

Searching Available Channels <Channel Search>

Search available channels in order of frequency and display them.

1 1Seg watch screen (P229) ▶ ◉(1+ seconds in Portrait), ◉(1+ seconds in Landscape)

Display the channels if available. —[Menu] ▶ select "Add to channel list" to add to the channel list.

■**To cancel the channel search**
Press —[Cancel]/ 2 ▶ "Yes".

Note

- When "Tuning..." is displayed for a long time in an area where broadcast wave is week, searching channels allows you to search available channels.
- When moving to other area, the terminal may receive a channel which is not registered in the Channel settings.

1Seg Watch Screen Option Menu

1 1Seg watch screen (P229) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Channel settings]
Display the Channel list screen.→ P228

[TVlink]
Display a TVlink list.

[DBC]
Display data broadcasting.

Image display : Set Image display ON/OFF.→P235
Effect sound : Set effect tone ON/OFF.→P235
Certificate info : Display certificate.
Reload : Reload and display image.
Back to DBC : Return to data broadcasting.

[Switch TV/DBC]
Switch TV and data broadcasting.

[Display settings]
Set the display of the screen.

TV disp. Mode
: Set the display of the screen.

DBC disp. Mode
: Set the display of the data broadcasting.

Subtitles
: Set subtitle ON/OFF.→P235

Backlight
: Set the backlight level of the display.→P235

[Sound settings]
Set sound.

Mute(Unmute)
: Mute/unmute the sound.

Main/Sub sound
: Set main/sub sound.

Switch sound
: Change the sound of multi sound broadcasting program.

[Recom. channel mail]
You can create a mail with the channel information you are watching. If the destination FOMA terminal supports Media To function, the information can be selected to activate 1Seg.

[Add to channel list]
Add the currently watching channel to the channel list.→P230

[Select service]
You can switch programs if these programs are in the same channel.

[Program info.]
Display the detail information about the program you are watching.

[Help]
Display the key operations. Use ◎ in portrait and ◎ in landscape to switch pages.

Bookig program list

Setting Timer for Watching 1Seg Program

Setting Timer to Start a 1Seg Program

Set "Announce on" to notify you of a program start by alarm 1 minute before it starts.

- You can set or view timer from Schedule (P323).
- Up to 20 entries can be set.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (1Seg) ▶ "Booking program list"

Booking program list screen

2 [−] [New] ▶ Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.
- If the cursor is in the date and time field, you can cancel the booking by pressing [−][Cancel] ▶ "Yes".

[(Start date)]

Specify the booking date. To enter the date, use ◆ to move the cursor to the position and enter a number with dial keys. Press ●[Select] to select a day from a calendar.

[(Set time)]

Specify the start time of the booking program.
Use ◆ to move the cursor to the position and use dial keys to enter the time. (Press ●[Select] in the time field to display the Time settings screen that allows you to enter time with dial keys and ◆.)

- Depending on the settings in "Date&Time format" (P107), the display format or order of the date and time may differ.

[(Channel)]

Select a channel.

[(Program title)]

Up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters can be entered.

[(Announce setting)]

Set whether to notify by alarm 1 minute before the program start. If you select "Announce on", perform the following steps to select the alarm tone.

▶ ◆ ▶ ●[List] in the field ▶ Select a type of the alarm tone

Music	:	Select a music data saved in "Music" of "Data box ".→P256
i-motion	:	Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
Melody	:	Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data box".→P293

[(Set repeat)]

Set repeat booking of a program that is broadcasted regularly. Select "Once" for not to repeat. If "Weekdays" is selected, perform the following steps to specify the day of the week:

▶ ◉ ▶ ●[List] on the "Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa" field ▶ Mark days of the week ▶ −[Done]

You can set period if other than "Once" is selected.

▶ ◉ ▶ ●[List] on the field ▶ "Set expiration" ▶ Use ◉ to select the date field ▶ Select expiration date

3 −[Done]

Note

- You cannot book a 1Seg program that starts now or within 1 minute.
- You can book a 1Seg program from a link of 1Seg information displayed in a site or mail (Media To).→P182
- If "Announce on/off" is set to "Announce off", an alarm will not sound. And 1seg will not be activated.

When the alarm reaches the booked time

If "Announce on" is set, you will be notified by alarm 1 minute before the starting time.

The Alarm screen appears, the alarm tone sounds, and the illumination lights up.

Press −[Watch] to start the 1Seg program.

- Press ●[OFF] to stop the alarm (1Seg will not be activated at the specified time.)

When multiple bookings are set for the same time

Press −[Detail] in the Alarm screen ▶ select a program to watch.

Checking Booking Information

1 Booking program list screen (P232) ▶ Select a booked program to check

Booking program detail screen appears.

■ **To edit the booking information**
Press ●[Edit].→P232

■ **To delete the booking**
Press −[Delete].

Booking List/Booking Program Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Booking list screen (P232)/Booking program detail screen (P233) ▶ −/[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Book a new 1Seg program to watch.

[Edit]
Edit the selected timer.→P232

[Multiple choice]*
Select a booked program to delete.

▶ Mark booked programs to delete ▶ −[Delete] ▶ "Yes"

- You can select "Delete", or "Mark all" or "Unmark all" from "Mark/Unmark" by pressing −/[Menu].

[Delete]
Delete the selected booked program.

[Delete all]*
Delete all booked programs.

* Not displayed on the Booking program detail screen.

Data broadcasting

Using Data Broadcasting

1Seg provides data broadcasting in addition to video and sound. You can use various information containing images or movies such as a site connected with a program.

- You cannot watch data broadcasting in landscape.

1 on 1Seg watch screen

appears and you can operate data broadcasting items.

- Press to switch TV and data broadcasting.
- Press [Disp.] for 1+ seconds to switch full screen and normal screen of data broadcasting.

2 Select an item

- Some items connect to a data broadcasting site or an i-mode site.
- Select "Yes" or "Yes (permanently)" if a confirmation whether to establish i-mode connection appears. Selecting "Yes (permanently)" disables the subsequent confirmations on the same function, and the information of data broadcasting and data broadcasting site may automatically be updated. Note that packet communication charges may apply in such cases.

Note

- Even if you switch to data broadcasting from TV, the sound of 1Seg still streams.

TVlink

Using TVlink

Depending on a data broadcasting or data broadcasting site, a URL or memo information can be saved as TVlink. If saved, you can display the target information from a TVlink list.

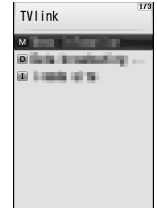
Saving as a TVlink

1 Select an item that can be saved as a TVlink in data broadcasting ▶ "Yes"

Displaying Saved TVlink

1 [Menu] ▶ (1Seg) ▶ "TVlink"

- You can also display a TVlink list by pressing [Menu] ▶"TVlink" on 1Seg watch screen.



TVlink list screen

2 Select a TVlink ▶ "Yes"

TVlink List Sub Menu

1 TVlink list screen (P234) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[TVlink info]
Display the TVlink detail information.

[Delete]
Delete a selected TVlink.

[Delete all]
Delete all saved TVlinks.

Note

- The URL or memo information saved as a TVlink is available only from 1Seg. Not available from i-mode or Full browser.

1Seg settings

Setting 1Seg

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (1Seg) ▶ "1Seg settings" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Subtitles]
Show/hide subtitles.

[Backlight]
Set the backlight level of the Display.

[Set image display]
Set the display of the data broadcasting.

[Set effect sound]
Set the effect sound of the data broadcasting.

[Main/Sub sound]
Set Main/Sub sound.

[Reset permission display]
Set to display the hidden confirmation.

[Reset 1Seg settings]
Restore the settings in "Subtitles", "Backlight", "Set image display", "Set effect sound" and "Main/Sub sound" to their defaults.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

[Erase storage area]
Delete the storage area.
▶ Move the cursor to a broadcast station to delete the storage area ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Delete"/"Delete all"

- The Terminal security code is required to perform Delete all.

[1Seg settings status]
You can check 1Seg settings.

Music

Precautions for Music Data

- In this manual, Chaku-Uta Full® songs played with Music player and SD-Audio data (music data compatible with SD-Audio standard) played with SD-Audio player are collectively referred to as "music data".
- This FOMA terminal can play Chaku-Uta Full® songs and SD-Audio data.
- Download Chaku-Uta Full® songs from i-mode. Import SD-Audio data from a PC using "SD-Jukebox" (commercially available).
- Before downloading music data from web sites, read the license agreement (license and prohibited activities, etc.) carefully.
- Music data saved in the FOMA terminal or on a microSD card can be played for personal use only. When playing music, do not violate a third party's intellectual property rights such as copyright, and other rights. Do not copy or move music data saved in the FOMA terminal or on a microSD card to other media, such as a PC.
- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for handling CCCD (copy controlled CD) materials, or cases you cannot convert music data to SD-Audio data.
- Precautions for Using or Handling a microSD Card→P296

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel ····· 238
Setting Programs ····· 238
Playing a Program ····· 240
Operating Music&Video Channel from Data Box ····· 243

Music Player

Playing Music ····· 244
Saving Music Data ····· 245
Playing Music Data ····· 246
Using Playlist ····· 253
Managing Folders, Playlists and Music Data ···· 256
Playing Music Data for Special Time or Environment ····· Music life 258
Using Other Functions while Listening to Music ····· Play in background 259

L-01A does not support the movie distribution.

Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a service that automatically downloads set music programs of up to approximately 1 hour at night. The programs are updated regularly. You can enjoy the programs at any time, such as while commuting.

Before Using Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription. (The i-mode and Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full, or Pake-hodai double contracts are required for the subscription. The usage fee may reach the upper limit of Pake-hodai double, even if you use the service only several times.)

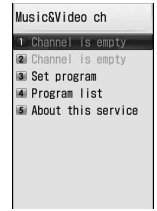
- In addition to the usage fee for the Music&Video Channel, some programs may require additional information fees.
- After subscribing to the Music&Video Channel, if you insert the UIM into a FOMA terminal that does not support the Music&Video Channel, the service becomes unavailable. However, service charges will still apply unless you cancel the Music&Video Channel subscription.
- You cannot set or download programs while using the international roaming service*. When you go overseas, deactivate the program download before leaving Japan. When you come back to Japan, activate the program download.
  * Packet communication charges apply if setting or downloading programs during international roaming.
- You can use mail or access an i-mode site while listening to a Music&Video Channel program (Background playback). Multitask Combinations→P408
- For details about Music&Video Channel, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Setting Programs

Set programs are automatically downloaded at night.

- Up to 2 programs can be set.
- You need to register a site to My Menu that provides Music&Video Channel programs.→P173

1 [Menu] ▶ (MUSIC) ▶ "Music&Video ch"



Music&Video Channel screen

2 "Set program"

- No programs are set by default.
  After programs are set, the program titles appear.

3 Follow the instructions on the screen to set programs

- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Note

- In order to set programs with another UIM inserted, start with confirming the program setting information from Program setting. If checking the Program setting information the programs that have not been moved from "Distributed program" folder may be deleted.
- This is a fee-based service requiring a separate subscription. If you have not subscribed to the service, a message indicating that you have not subscribed to the Music&Video Channel appears.
- Selecting "Program list" on the Music&Video Channel screen displays the list of all programs offered for the Music&Video Channel. Selecting "About this service" displays how to use the service and any special cautions. Also, you can subscribe to the service.

Viewing or Canceling Program Setting

1 Music&Video Channel screen (P238) ▶ "Set program"

2 Follow the instructions on the screen

- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Note

- Canceling programs does not remove the My Menu registration.

After Setting Programs

- appears on the Stand-by display 12 hours prior to the program download.
- Programs are automatically downloaded at the designated download time.
- Programs are downloaded automatically at night. appears on the Stand-by display when the download was successful, and appears when the download failed. Once the Music&Video Channel screen is displayed, the icon disappears.

Note

- If the download is interrupted because the FOMA terminal is out of service area or the communication is disconnected, the download resumes automatically after 3 minutes. The attempts will be made up to 5 times.
- If the programs are not downloaded at the download time because the FOMA terminal is not turned on, the FOMA terminal is out of service area, or the signal is weak, the programs will be downloaded again at the same time on the following night.
- You cannot download the program except when the battery is indicated as (When you attempt to download the program, a message will appear to notify that you cannot start downloading because of lower battery level).
- It may take a while to download programs. Make sure that the battery level is sufficient and signal reception is strong when downloading.
- Programs cannot be automatically downloaded in the following cases. In each case, set the programs again on the Music&Video Channel screen.
  - If a different UIM is inserted after programs were set
  - If the UIM that programs were set with is inserted in another FOMA terminal that supports the Music&Video Channel
  - If "Clear memory" is performed on the FOMA terminal
- If the download is interrupted because the signal is weak etc., the programs will not be automatically downloaded again until next time. Download programs manually.
- Downloaded programs are temporarily stored in the "Distributed program" folder in "Music&Video ch" of "Data box". If the channel to which the downloaded programs belong is updated, the programs stored in the "Distributed program" folder are deleted and the programs can no longer be playable. The programs you want to keep should be moved to another folder.→P242 However, some programs may not be moved.
- If you set new programs, cancel a program, or cancel the subscription to My Menu, Music&Video Channel, or i-mode, the programs that have not been moved from "Distributed program" folder are deleted.
- The ring tone does not sound and the terminal does not vibrate when the program download starts or completes. The illumination does not light/blink either.

Downloading Programs Manually

If the download fails, download the remaining programs manually.

1 Music&Video Channel screen (P238) ▶ Select a program ▶ "Yes"

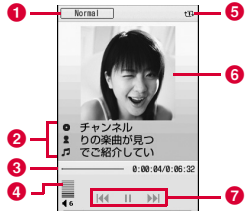
- 取 appears to a program that was failed in downloading.

Note

- If you operate on the Music&Video Channel program list in Data box, select a program that failed in downloading ▶ select "Yes".
- Even if the download was interrupted, the program can be played up to the chapter downloaded before the interruption.
- Programs exceeding the playback count, playback period, or playback limit cannot be resumed downloading.
- Depending on the time, it may not be possible to download manually.

Playing a Program

1 Music&Video Channel screen (P238) ▶ Select a program



Music&Video Channel player screen

❶ Equalizer setting
❷ Program/chapter title/artist name
❸ Elapsed time/playback progress bar/total time
Display the playback elapsed time in a bar.
❹ Volume
❺ Repeat setting
Current program
All programs
❻ Chapter image or program image
❼ Playback status

■ Key operations on the Music&Video Channel player screen

Key	Description
●	Pause/play
●(for 1+ seconds)	Find the beginning of the current program and pause
◉, ▲/▼	Adjust the volume
◉	Play from the beginning of the current chapter or play previous/next chapter
◉(Hold down)	Rewind/fast forward while being held down
#	Switch the Repeat setting
0	Switch the Equalizer setting
7/9	Display the previous/next image
8	Show/hide the image
−[List]	Display the Chapter list
⏎	Quit the Music&Video Channel player

Note

- Playback is paused on the following occasions. The playback will resume automatically after the operation completes.
  - When a voice or videophone call arrives
  - When i-mode mail or SMS is received
  - When an alarm sounds
- A program with playback restrictions cannot be played after the playback count, playback limit, or playback period is exceeded. A confirmation asking whether to delete the program appears when you attempt to play such a program. Selecting "Yes" deletes the program.
  You can check the playback count, playback limit, or playback period in the Program information.
- Some programs cannot be played other than in a set period time.
- When you attempt to play a partially downloaded program, a confirmation asking whether to download the remaining data appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading. Select "Play" to play up to the downloaded chapters.
- When you play the program data overseas, the actual playback limit expiration date may be earlier or later than the displayed date.

Music&Video Channel Screen Sub Menu

1 Music&Video Channel screen (P238) ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Move program]
Move the selected program from the "Distributed program" folder. →P242

[Delete]
Delete the selected program.

[Program info.]
Display information about the selected program.

[Chapter list]
Display chapter list of the selected program.→P242

[Connect to URL]
Access a site if the selected program contains a URL.

Note

<Delete>

- Deleting programs does not cancel the program setting. Programs are automatically updated until you access the Music&Video Channel site and cancel the setting.

Music&Video Channel Player Screen Sub Menu

1 Music&Video Channel player screen (P240) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Program skip]

Previous program	: Play the previous program.
Next program	: Play the next program.

[BGM]
Play music data in background.→P259

[Chapter list]
Display a chapter list.

[Chapter info.]
Display information about the chapter in playback.

[Program info.]
Display information about the program in playback.

Continued on next page

[Set repeat]

None : The program will not be repeated.
Current program : Play program in playback repeatedly.
All programs : Play all programs repeatedly.

[Equalizer]

Control tones at program playback.

[Chapter image]

Display the chapter image/program image.→P252

[Connect to URL]

Access a site if the program in playback contains a URL.

Displaying Chapter List of Program

Select and play a chapter, or display the information.

1 Music&Video Channel player screen (P240) ▶ [−] [List]

- ♪ appears for the chapter in playback.
- ●[Play]: Play the selected chapter.
- [−][Info.]: Display information about the selected chapter.

Program icons on the Music&Video Channel screen

The following icons which indicate a state of program download or the category are displayed at the Music&Video Channel screen or a Program list screen.

Icon	Description
/	Played/unplayed programs with playback limit
/	Played/unplayed programs without playback limit
/	Programs with/without playback limit that are moved from "Distributed program" folder
/	Programs with/without playback limit that are partially downloaded
	Downloaded chapter
	Chapters which failed to download
	Programs which failed to update
	Programs to be downloaded (Not downloaded)
	A downloading program

Moving to "Save Program" Folder

Downloaded programs can be moved from "Distributed program" folder to another folder so that they will not be overwritten. Moved programs can be played from "Music&Video ch" of "Data box".

- To move a program, create a destination folder in the "Music&Video ch" folder beforehand.→P243

1 Music&Video Channel screen (P238) ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Move program"

2 Select a folder ▶ [−] [Move]

- Select a folder other than the "Distributed program" folder.

Note

- Downloaded programs cannot be copied.
- Partially downloaded programs cannot be moved.
- Programs can be moved only within the FOMA terminal. They cannot be moved to the microSD card.

Operating Music&Video Channel from Data Box

You can play or move the distributed programs from "Music&Video ch" of "Data box", or edit the program titles.

Playing a Program from Data Box

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "Music&Video ch"

If you have any playable programs, they may be played. In this case, press [2ABC].

- [−] [New]: Create a new folder.

Folder list screen

2 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ● [Open]

Program list screen

3 Move the cursor to a program ▶ ● [Play]

Folder List Screen Sub Menu

1 Folder list screen (P243) ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[New folder]
Create a new folder.
- You cannot create a sub folder in a user-defined folder.

[Rename]
Change the selected folder name.

[Delete]
Delete the selected folder.

Note

- The "Distributed program" folder cannot be renamed or deleted.

Program List Screen Sub Menu

1 Program list screen (P243) ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

- −\ [Delete]: Delete the selected program.

[Play]
Play the selected program.

[Move program]
Move the selected program from the "Distributed program" folder.

[Rename]
Change the title of the selected program.

[Delete]
Delete the selected program.

[Delete all]
Delete all programs in the folder.

[Multiple choice]
Select and delete programs.
▶ Mark a program to delete ▶ −\ [Delete] ▶ "Yes"
- Press −/ [Menu] to select "Delete", "Mark", "Mark all", "Unmark", or "Unmark all".

[Program info.]
Display information about the selected program.

[Chapter list]
Display the Chapter list.→P242

[New folder]
- This option is not available.

Playing Music

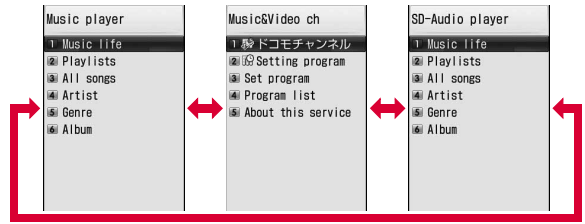
You can play music with the FOMA terminal in one of the following 3 ways:

- Playing music with Music player
  Play a Chaku-Uta Full® song downloaded from a site.
- Playing with SD-Audio player
  Play SD-Audio data saved to the microSD card from a PC.
- Playing as an i-motion movie
  Play an audio-only i-motion movie downloaded using i-mode and saved in Data box.→P286

You can use mail or access an i-mode site while listening to music (Play in background).→P259

Music&Video Channel/Music Playback Menu

You can switch between the "Music screen", "Music&Video Channel screen", and "SD-Audio screen" by using ◎.



Music screen | Music&Video Channel screen | SD-Audio screen*

* Do not appear when no SD-Audio data are saved on the microSD card.

Saving Music Data

Downloading a Chaku-Uta Full® Song

- Up to 160 Chaku-Uta Full® songs of up to 5MB each can be saved.
- Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® song is saved in the "i-mode" folder in "Music" of "Data box" or a microSD card.

1 Access a site that provides Chaku-Uta Full® songs ▶ Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song to download

After the download completes, a confirmation appears.

2 "Save" ▶ Select save location

Play : Play the downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® song.

File property : Display information about the downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® song

Back : Return to the web site without saving the Chaku-Uta Full® song.

- In addition, select the destination when a microSD card is inserted on the terminal.

Saving SD-Audio Data in microSD Card

The following items are required to play SD-Audio data with the FOMA terminal:

- L-01A terminal
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional)
- PC (Windows Vista, Windows XP, Windows 2000 (Japanese versions))
- SD-Jukebox
- An audio CD that contains music data you want to save
- microSD card

■ **SD-Jukebox**

SD-Jukebox can be purchased from the following URL:
http://club.panasonic.co.jp/mall/sense/open/ (Japanese only)
SD-Jukebox works under Windows Vista, Windows XP, and Windows 2000 (Japanese versions).
For details about the operating environment, visit the following URL:
http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjb/ (Japanese only)

1 Insert L-01A CD-ROM (bundled with your FOMA terminal) to a PC

2 Click "エンターテイメントツール (Entertainment tools)"

Follow the instruction on the screen to purchase "SD-Jukebox".

3 Install SD-Jukebox to a PC

For installing SD-Jukebox, see the instruction manual for SD-Jukebox.

4 Insert microSD card into your FOMA terminal, then connect to the PC

- How to insert a microSD card→P297
- Connecting to your PC→P305

5 Save music data to microSD card

Use SD-Jukebox installed on PC to save music data to microSD card.

- For how to operate SD-Jukebox, see the help for SD-Jukebox.
- After music data is saved, remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 from the FOMA terminal and PC.

Playing Music Data

Playing Chaku-Uta Full® Songs

You can play Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved in the FOMA terminal or on a microSD card.

■ Available Chaku-Uta Full® file format

File format	MP4
Bit rate	MPEG-4 AAC: 8 to 128kbps HE-AAC: 8 to 128kbps Enhanced aacPlus: 16 to 48kbps
The number of savable songs (FOMA terminal)	Up to 160 songs
The number of playlists that can be created	Up to 10 entries

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ ♫(Music) ▶ "Music player" ▶ Perform the following operations

Music screen

[Music life]
Play Chaku-Uta Full® songs suitable for special occasions or circumstances.→P258

[Playlists]
Display, create, or play a playlist.→P253

[All songs]
Display up to 50 Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved in the FOMA terminal and on a microSD card.→P248

[Artist]
Sort and display Chaku-Uta Full® songs in the "All songs" folder by artist.

[Genre]
Sort and display Chaku-Uta Full® songs in the "All songs" folder by genre.

[Album]
Sort and display Chaku-Uta Full® songs in the "All songs" folder by album.

Note

- To play the last played music data, press [−/][Menu] in Stand-by ▶ ♫ (MUSIC) ▶ "Recent played"".
  * "Now playing" appears during playback. Selecting this displays the Player screen for the music data in playback.
- Sorting conditions for artists, genre, and album is in accordance with the detailed information about the music data.
- When you play the program data overseas, the actual playback limit expiration date may be earlier or later than the displayed date.

Playing SD-Audio Data

You can play AAC-format SD-Audio data saved on the microSD card.

■ Available SD-Audio file formats

File format	MPEG-2 AAC
Bit rate (stereo)	16 to 128kbps
The number of savable songs	Up to 999 songs
The number of playlists that can be created	Up to 98 playlists

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ♫ (MUSIC) ▶ "SD-Audio player" ▶ Perform the following operations

SD-Audio screen

[Music life]
Play SD-Audio data for special times or environments.→P258

[Playlists]
Display, create, or play a playlist.→P253

[All songs]
Display SD-Audio songs saved on the microSD card.→P248

[Artist]
Sort and display SD-Audio data in "All songs" folder by artist.

[Genre]
Not available. SD-Audio does not support "Genre" information.

[Album]
Sort and display SD-Audio data in "All songs" folder by album.

Note

- Operations are the same with Music player expect the following:
  - Sub menu items not available for SD-Audio player are not displayed.
  - "Unknown" is displayed in the "Genre" field because SD-Audio does not support "Genre" information.
  - SD-Audio data information is not editable.

Continuously Playing Music Data

You can continuously play all songs saved in the FOMA terminal and the microSD card, or only play songs specified by artist name, genre, or album title.

Example: To play music in "All songs"

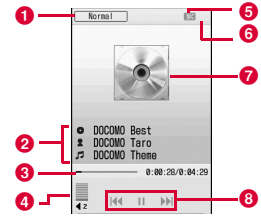
1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ♫ (MUSIC) ▶ "Music player"/ "SD-Audio player" ▶ "All songs"

- : Music data saved on the microSD card

Music data list screen

2 Move the cursor to a music data ▶ ● [Play]

Play the selected music data in the order of displayed in the music data list.



Music player screen

❶ Equalizer setting
❷ Album title, artist name, song title
❸ Playback progress bar/elapsed time/total time
Display the playback elapsed time in a bar.
❹ Volume
❺ Shuffle
This appears when "Shuffle ON" is set.
❻ Repeat setting
Current song
All songs
❼ Jacket image/stand-by image/lyrics
❽ Playback status

■Key operations on the Music player screen

Key	Description
●	Pause/play
●(for 1+ seconds)	Find the beginning of the current song and pause
◉, ▲/▼	Adjust the volume
◉	Play from the beginning of the current song or play the previous/next song
◉(Hold down)	Rewind/fast forward while being held down
✱	Switch the Shuffle setting
#	Switch the Repeat setting
0	Switch the Equalizer setting
7/9	Display the previous/next image
8	Show/hide jacket image/lyrics
−[List]	Display the Music data list screen While the list screen is displayed, ♫ appears to the right of the song title in playback.
⏻	Quit Music player

Note

- Playback is paused on the following occasions. The playback will resume automatically after the operation completes.
  - When a voice or videophone call arrives
  - When i-mode mail or SMS is received
  - When an alarm sounds
- Sound effects such as the key tone do not sound during music data playback.

Music Data List Screen Sub Menu

1 Music data list screen (P248) ▶ Move the cursor to a music data ▶ −[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

- ●[Play]: Play the selected music data.
- −[Playlist]: Add the selected music data to a playlist. →P255

[Play]
Play the selected music data.

[Add to playlist]
Add the selected music data to a playlist.→P255

[Multiple choice]*1
Select and play multiple music data. Operations during playback are the same with for a playlist.→P253

▶ Mark music data to play ▶ −[Play]

- Press −[Menu] to select "Play", "Add to playlist", or "Mark/Unmark".
  You can add marked music data to a playlist by selecting "Add to playlist".

[Search]*2
Specify "Title", "Artist", "Album", "Genre", or "Year"*1 to search music data.

▶ Select an item ▶ Enter the item ▶ −[Search]

- All music data that match all specified conditions are displayed.

[Sort]*1
Sort music data by setting the condition.

Continued on next page

[File property]
View or edit information about the selected music data.
▶ Move the cursor to an item ▶ [−] [Edit] ▶ Edit the item

*1 Do not appear for SD-Audio player.
*2 Music data in Artist/Genre/Album will not be displayed in the Music data list screen.

Music Player/SD-Audio Player Screen Sub Menu

1 Music/SD-Audio player screen ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Go to MUSIC]
Display the Music/SD-Audio screen while playing music data.→P244

[BGM]
Play music data in background.→P259

[List]
Display the Music data list screen.→P248

[File property]
Display information about the music data in playback.

[Shuffle ON/Shuffle OFF]
Enable or disable shuffle play.

[Set repeat]

None	:	The program will not be repeated.
Current song	:	Play music data in playback repeatedly.
Play all	:	Play all music data on the Music data list screen repeatedly.

[Equalizer]
Control tones at the music playback.

[Jacket image]
Display the jacket image or save it to Data box.→P252

[Lyric]*
Display the lyrics or save it to Data box.→P252

[Set as tone]*
Set the music data in playback as a ring tone.→P251

[Connect to URL]*
Access a site if the music data in playback contains a URL.

* Do not appear for SD-Audio player.

Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone

1 Music player screen (P248) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Set as tone"

2 Select a ring tone type

Voice ringtone	: Set as a ring tone for a voice call.
Video ringtone	: Set as a ring tone for a videophone call.
Mail tone	: Set as a ring tone for i-mode mail.
MessageR tone	: Set as a ring tone for MessageR.
MessageF tone	: Set as a ring tone for MessageF.
SMS	: Set as a ring tone for SMS.
Alarm tone	: Set as an alarm tone.

3 Select a range to set as the ring tone

[Full song ring tone]
Set the entire Chaku-Uta Full® song in playback as a ring tone.

[Point ring tone]
If the Chaku-Uta Full® song in playback has already a range specified, this option available.

[Free point ring tone]
Specify and set start and end points as a range for the ring tone.
▶ Use ◎ to find a starting point ▶ [−/][Start] ▶ Use ◎ to find an ending point ▶ [−/][End]

Note
- If selecting "Alarm tone", further select which alarm.
- Some Chaku-Uta Full® songs cannot be set as a ring tone.

Displaying Details about a Music Data

1 Music player screen (P248) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "File property"
- [−\][Edit]: Edit properties.

■ Information displayed on the File property screen

Item	Description
Title	Display the song title
Artist	Display the artist name
Album	Display the album title
Year	Display the released year of the song
Genre	Display the genre
Comment	Display comments
Track number	Display the song index and the total number of songs in the album
Composer	Display the composer name
Lyricist	Display the lyricist name
Rights holder	Display the rights holder
Selling agency	Display the selling agency
Rights information	Display the information about rights
Label	Display the recording company label

Continued on next page

Item	Description
URL	Display a related URL
Full song ring tone	Display whether the entire music data can be set as a ring tone
Point ring tone	Display whether the pre-set range of the music data can be set as a ring tone
Free point ring tone	Display whether a user-defined range of the music data can be set as a ring tone
Savable Jacket image	Display if there is a jacket image that can be saved
Savable Image	Display if there is an image that can be saved
Savable Lyric	Display if there are lyrics that can be saved
Audio	Display the sound format
Bitrate	Display the bit rate
Play time	Display the file playing time
File name	Display the file name
File size	Display the file size
File type	Display the file format
Date & Time (Saved)	Display the date and time the music data was saved
Original title	Display the default title of the file
File restriction	Display whether the file is restricted→P281
Source	Display the source
Move to the microSD*	Display whether the music data can be moved to a microSD card
Playback count/ playback limit/ playback period	Display information about playback count/ playback limit/playback period

* If you are moving the music data from microSD card, this item will become "Move to the phone" that indicates whether you can move them to the terminal.

View Images or Lyrics Contained in a Music Data

You can view and save jacket images, Stand-by images, lyrics etc. contained in music data.

1 Music player screen (P248) ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ "Jacket image"/"Lyric"/"Chapter image" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Next image]
View the next image/lyrics.

[Previous image]
View the previous image/lyrics.

[Full view]
View an image/lyrics to fit the screen.

[Display ON/OFF]
Show/hide the image/lyrics.

[Save in databox]*
Save the displayed image/lyrics to "i-mode" in "My picture" of "Data box".

* Do not appear for "Chapter image".

Using Playlist

You can specify the order of music data to play in a playlist. You can play any songs in the order of your choice from all songs saved in the FOMA terminal and on the microSD card.

Creating a Playlist

Up to 10 playlists of up to 50 music data each can be saved.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ♫ (MUSIC) ▶ "Music player" ▶ "Playlists"

Playlist list screen

2 [−] [New] ▶ Enter a playlist name

- Up to 30 full-pitch or half-pitch characters can be entered.

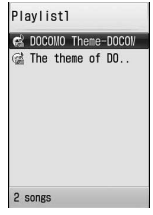
3 Mark music data to save to the playlist ▶ [−] [Done]

■ For Chaku-Uta Full® songs

Press [−/] [Menu] to select "File property", "Mark all", "Unmark all", or "Sort".

Playing a Playlist

1 Playlist list screen (P253) ▶ Select a playlist



Playlist music data list screen

2 Move the cursor to a music data ▶ ● [Play]

Play the selected music data in the order of displayed in the music data list.

Playlist List Screen Sub Menu

1 Playlist list screen (P253) ▶ Move the cursor to a playlist ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Play]
Play the selected playlist.

[New playlist]
Create a playlist.→P253

[Rename]
Change the playlist name.

[Copy playlist]*
Copy the selected playlist and create a new playlist.
▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the name of a new playlist

[Delete playlist]
Delete the selected playlist.

[Multiple choice]
Select and delete playlists.
▶ Mark a playlist to delete ▶ [−\] [Delete] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−/] [Menu] to select "Delete" or "Mark/Unmark".

* Do not appear for SD-Audio player.

Note

<Rename/Delete playlist>
- These options are unavailable for "All songs" and "Quick playlist".

<Copy playlist>
- This option is unavailable for "All songs".

Playlist Music Data List Screen Sub Menu

1 Playlist music data list screen (P253) ▶ Move the cursor to a music data ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations
- [−\] [Add]: Add the music data to the displayed playlist.

[Play]
Play the selected music data.

[Add songs]
Add music data to the displayed playlist.
▶ Mark music data to add ▶ [−\] [Done]
- For Chaku-Uta Full® songs, press [−/] [Menu] to select "File property", "Mark all", "Unmark all", or "Sort".

[Move]
Change the order of the selected music data.

[Delete from list]
Delete the selected music data from the playlist.

[Multiple choice]
Select and play multiple music data. (When the music data is SD-Audio, select and delete multiple music data.) Operations during playback are the same with for a playlist.→P253
▶ Mark music data to play ▶ [−\] [Play]
- Press [−/] [Menu] to select "Play"*, "Delete from list", or "Mark/Unmark".

[Search]
Specify "Title", "Artist", "Album", "Genre", or "Year"* to search music data.

▶ Move the cursor to an item ▶ Enter the item ▶ [−]([Search])

- Music data that match all specified conditions are displayed.
- On Search result screen, press [−]([Menu]) to select "Play", "Add to playlist", "Save"*, "Multiple choice"*, "Sort"*, or "File property". Selecting "Save" deletes music data, that were not found, from the playlist.

[Sort]*
Sort music data by the saved information.

[File property]
View or edit information about the selected music data.

▶ Move the cursor to an item ▶ [−]([Edit]) ▶ Edit the item

- Some items are not editable.

* Do not appear for SD-Audio player.

Adding Music Data to a Playlist

1 [−]([Menu]) ▶ ♫(MUSIC) ▶ "Music player" ▶ "All songs"

2 Move the cursor to a music data to save ▶ [−]([Playlist]) ▶ Select a playlist

The music data is added to the selected playlist.

- [−]([New]): Create a new playlist with the selected music data.

■ **To save multiple music data**
For Chaku-Uta Full® songs, you can do the following operation.
[−]([Menu]) ▶ "Multiple choice" ▶ mark music data to save ▶ [−]([Menu]) ▶ "Add to playlist" ▶ select a playlist.

Saving Music Data to Quick Playlist

Press [↩] for 1+ seconds on the Music data list screen (P248) to save the selected music data to the "Quick playlist". It is useful for you to collect up the music data you often listen to.
To play the saved music data, select the "Quick playlist" on the Playlist list screen.

Managing Folders, Playlists and Music Data

Chaku-Uta Full® songs are saved in the "Music" folder of "Data box". SD-Audio data are saved in the "SD-Audio" folder of "Data box".
Delete or move a Chaku-Uta Full® songs from Data box.

- SD-Audio data cannot be deleted using the FOMA terminal. Use SD-Jukebox to delete it.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "Music"

If you have any playable music data, they may be played. In this case, press [2ABC].

- [\−][Switch]: Switch between list and picture display.

■To manage SD-Audio data

[−/][Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "SD-Audio" ▶ select "All songs", "Quick playlist", or a playlist.
Refer to "Music Data List Screen Sub Menu" (P249) for information on the sub menu items.

2 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ●[Open] ▶ Move the cursor to a music data ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

■To manage playlists

"Playlist" ▶ Move the cursor to a playlist ▶ [−/][Menu]
Refer to "Playlist List Screen Sub Menu" (P254) for information on the sub menu items.

■To manage music data on the microSD card

"microSD" ▶ move the cursor to a music data ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ perform the following operations.

[Files]

Play	:	Play the selected music data.
Move	:	Move the selected music data to another folder. ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [\−][Move]
Copy	:	Copy the selected music data to another folder. ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [\−][Copy]
Delete	:	Delete the selected music data.
Delete all	:	Delete all music data in a folder
Rename	:	Change the selected music data.
Reset name	:	Reset the display name of the selected file to its default name.

[Multiple choice]

Select and delete music data.

▶ **Mark music data to delete ▶ [\−][Delete] ▶ "Yes"**

- You can move/copy multiple music data by the following operation.
  ▶ Mark music data to move/copy ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Move"/"Copy" ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [\−][Move]/[Copy]
- Press [−/][Menu] to select from "Mark", "Mark all", "Unmark", or "Unmark all".

[File property]

View or edit information about the selected music data.

▶ **Move the cursor to an item ▶ [\−][Edit] ▶ Edit the item**

- Some items are not editable.
- Move the cursor to an edited item and press [−/][Init.] ▶ "Yes" to undo editing.

[Send via]

This option is not available.

[Set as tone]

Set the selected music data as a ring tone.→P251

[List view/Grid view]
Switch between List view and Grid view.

[Sort]
Sort music data by setting the condition.

[Memory info.]
Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data box".
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]
Create a new folder.

Note
- When the "Playlist" or "SD-Audio" folder is displayed, press [−][New] to create a new Playlist.→P253
- The music data in the playlist will be removed when you delete the source music data or you move them between FOMA terminal and microSD card.

<New folder>
- You cannot create a sub folder in a user-defined folder. (Up to 2 levels of folder hierarchy can be created only in "Movable contents" folder.)

Icons for Chaku-Uta Full® songs in "Data box"

Icon	Description
/	Playback count is limited (Playable)/reached the playback count limit (Not playable)
/	Not expired (Playable)/expired (Not playable)
	Files on the microSD card
	Files with the UIM security function activated

Sub Menu while a Folder Selected

1 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Rename]
Change a folder name.

[New folder]
Create a new folder.

[Delete]
Delete the selected folder.

[List view/Grid view]
Switch between List view and Grid view.

[Sort]
Sort music data by setting the condition.

Continued on next page

[Memory info.]

Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data box".

External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[Folder property]

Display the folder size, the number of files in the folder, and the number of folders in the folder.

Note

- The "Playlist" and "microSD" folders cannot be renamed or deleted.

<New folder>

- You cannot create a sub folder in a user-defined folder. (Up to 2 levels of folder hierarchy can be created only in "Movable contents" folder.)

Music life

Playing Music Data for Special Time or Environment

You can play music data for occasions such as when commuting, playing sports, or going to bed.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ♫ (MUSIC) ▶ "Music player"/ "SD-Audio player" ▶ "Music life" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Train]

Vocal sound can be emphasized so that lyrics can be clearly heard even in a low volume when you commute.

Playlist : Select "All songs", "Quick playlist", or a playlist.
- ●[List]: List playlists.

Enhance vocal : Place emphasis on vocal sounds.

[Sports timer]

Music is played for the specified time period. You can use this option as a timer for occasions such as when you want to run for a certain time. The selected playlist is repeatedly played for the specified time period.

Playlist : Select "All songs", "Quick playlist", or a playlist.
- ●[List]: List playlists.

Playing time : Enter the playback time. The time between 1 and 1,200 minutes can be entered.

[Sleeping]

You can set an off timer to automatically stop the playback when you go to sleep listening to music. The volume is gradually reduced approximately 5 minutes, and fade out approximately 50 seconds before the playback stops. The selected playlist is repeatedly played for the specified time period.

Playlist : Select "All songs", "Quick playlist", or a playlist.
• ●[List]: List playlists.

Off timer : Enter a value of minutes until the playback stops. The time between 1 and 1,200 minutes can be entered.

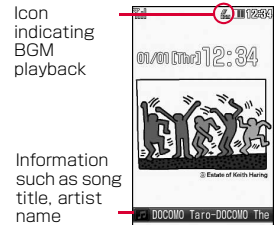
2 [−][Play]

Play in background

Using Other Functions while Listening to Music

1 During a music playback, [−][Menu] ▶ "BGM"

Display the Stand-by display during music playback. BGM or BGM appears at the top of the screen and music information such as song/artist names appears on the Stand-by display.



Note

- During the background playback, press ▲/▼ to adjust the volume.
- To return to the Player screen during background playback, press ● ▶ (Music player).
- To stop the background playback, press ⏻ ▶ "Yes".
- During background playback, an i-motion movie set for the Stand-by display will not be played. The default Stand-by display is displayed instead.
- While music data on the microSD card is played in background, the other functions cannot access the microSD card. For the other functions, stop the background playback.

i-αppli

i-αppli ····· 262
Downloading i-αppli from Sites ····· 262
Starting i-αppli ····· 263
Starting i-αppli from a Site or Mail
····· Set i-αppli To 269
Starting i-αppli Automatically ····· 269
Setting i-αppli Stand-by Display
····· i-αppli Stand-by display 270
Viewing Various Information ····· i-αppli info 271
Deleting i-αppli ····· 272
Using Various i-αppli Functions ····· 272

i-αppli

"i-αppli" is software for i-mode compatible mobile phones. Downloading various software from i-mode sites allows updating stock price or weather information automatically, playing games without connecting to a network, or using the FOMA terminal more conveniently.

- Packet communication charges apply.
- When using overseas, packet communication charges differ from domestic charges.→P374
- For details about i-αppli, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Downloading i-αppli from Sites

You can download a software from a site and save it to the FOMA terminal.

- Up to 100KB of software can be downloaded.
- Up to 100 downloaded software can be saved. This number of data that can be saved in the FOMA terminal may be reduced by the software data size.

1 From the currently accessed site ▶ Select a program

- [−][Cancel]:Cancel downloading.

■When "Display SW info" is set to "Display"

Software information is displayed. ●[OK] ▶ "Yes" to download the software.

2 After the download is completed ▶ "Yes"

The downloaded software starts.

- Depending on the software, after the software is downloaded, a screen where you set operating condition may be displayed. The settings can be changed later from "Software set".→P265

Note

- During a download, a confirmation may appear notifying you that the software will use the terminal data (stored data and serial number of the terminal/UIM). Press "Yes" to start downloading. Press [−][Detail] to check the details of the terminal data to be used. In this case, the terminal data is sent to the IP (Information provider) via the Internet, and it could be intercepted by a third party. However, this action does not reveal your phone number, postal address, age, or gender to the IP or others.
- If you attempt to re-download a software that has already been downloaded with a different UIM, a confirmation asking whether to overwrite the downloaded software appears. Select "Yes" to overwrite.
- If the maximum number of softwares which can be saved is reached or if there is not enough memory space, a confirmation for deletion of another i-αppli appears. If there is not enough free memory space, you can select i-αppli to delete, checking the required memory space to store the new application. To delete an i-αppli, press "Yes" ▶ mark a software to delete ▶ [−][Delete] ▶ "Yes" to delete the marked software and to start the download.
- If the software download fails due to weak signal reception, the software cannot be saved.
- Even if the software download fails due to weak signal reception after old software was deleted to increase the available space on the FOMA terminal, the old software cannot be restored.
- Some software that starts immediately after being downloaded cannot be saved.

Downloading a Mail-Connected i-αppli

Note the followings if you download a mail-connected i-αppli.

- If you download a mail-connected i-αppli, a folder specific to the mail-connected i-αppli is created in Inbox and Outbox. A created folder takes the downloaded mail-connected i-αppli name and it is unchangeable.
- Up to 17 (100 including all other i-αpplis) mail-connected i-αpplis can be saved.
- If you attempt to download a mail-connected i-αppli, which will use an existing folder for a mail-connected i-αppli saved in the FOMA terminal, the attempt will be denied.
- If there is only a folder for a mail-connected i-αppli left in the FOMA terminal, you can download a mail-connected i-αppli which uses that folder. If the folder is not used, you can delete it and create a new folder. A mail-connected i-αppli will not be downloaded if you do not create a folder for it.
- You cannot delete a folder if a mail-connected i-αppli that uses that folder still exists in the FOMA terminal. If you delete folders that no mail-connected i-αppli uses, folders created in both Inbox and Outbox are deleted at once.
- If you delete folders that no mail-connected i-αppli uses, you can choose whether to delete all folders automatically created at once. You cannot delete folders, however, if they have any protected messages in them.

Display SW info

Viewing i-αppli Information at Download Time

Set whether to display software information before downloading the software.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ [α] (i-αppli) ▶ "i-αppli settings" ▶ "Display SW info" ▶ "Display"/"Not display"

Starting i-αppli

1 Stand-by display ▶ ● (for 1+ seconds)

Software list screen

■Icons on the Software list screen

Icon	Description
	Standard i-αppli
	i-αppliDX
	Auto start set i-αppli
	i-αppli downloaded from an SSL site

2 Select a software

- If "Network set" of "Software set" is set to "Confirm every session", a confirmation whether to allow the communication appears. Select "Yes"/"No".

■ **To exit an i-αppli**
Press [end] ▶ "Yes".

Continued on next page

Starting software from other software

Some software can start a specified i-αppli without returning to the Software list screen.

- If the software to be started is not saved in the FOMA terminal, you need to download it.
- If the software to be started is not specified, select a software following the instruction on the screen.

If a security error occurs

If you attempt to perform operations that are not permitted for the software, a security error is indicated and the error is recorded in "Security error history".→P271

If a problem occurs with software

If a problem occurs with the software, you can check the contents using the Trace info.→P271

To i-αppli creators

If software does not behave as expected at creation process, you may want to refer to the Trace info.

Note

- Some software performs communication while running. You can change the settings in "Network set" of "Software set" not to automatically perform communication.→P265
- If there is an incoming voice or videophone call when the software is running, you can answer the call pausing the software. After the call is terminated, the previous screen returns.
- Even when the software is running, you can receive mail or MessageR/F. The software keeps running, and , , or appears at the top of the screen. To view the received mail or MessageR/F, terminate the software.
- Images used by an i-αppli* or data you enter may be automatically sent to a server via the Internet.
  * Images used by the i-αppli include: images captured with Camera that is started from a Camera-linked (linkage) application, images obtained using infrared communication function of the i-αppli, images downloaded from a site or web site, and images the i-αppli obtained from Data box.
- You cannot start software downloaded using a different UIM.
- Depending on i-αppli, the tone may not sound.
- Depending on the software, an IP (Information provider) can access programs saved on your FOMA terminal and directly disable their use. In this case, the software cannot be run or updated, however, it can still be deleted, or the software information can still be shown. To use the software again, signals to enable the software must be sent. Contact your IP.
- Depending on the software, the IP may send data to a software saved on your FOMA terminal.
- In the event that the IP disables/re-enables the software or sends data, your terminal performs communication and blinks. Packet communication charges do not apply in this case.

Software List Screen Sub Menu

1 Software list screen (P263) ▶ Move the cursor to a software ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Set i-αppli To]
Set conditions to start the selected software.→P269

[Auto start time]
Set whether to start the selected software automatically, and set the date and time to start if the auto start is specified.→P269

[Software set]
Set the selected software settings.→P265

[Software info]
Display the selected software information such as a name and version of the i-αppli. The displayed items differ depending on the software.

[Upgrade]
Upgrade the selected software.

[Delete]
Delete a software.→P272

Note

<Upgrade>

- During an update, a confirmation may appear notifying you that the upgrading will use terminal data (stored data or serial number of the terminal/UIM). Press "Yes" to start downloading. Press [−\] [Detail] to check the details of the terminal data to be used. In this case, the terminal data is sent to the IP (Information provider) via the Internet, and it could be intercepted by a third party. However, this action does not reveal your phone number, postal address, age, or gender to the IP or others.

Setting i-αppli Operating Conditions

Set operating conditions for each software program. You can set a software to automatically perform communications while it is running or decide separately whether to allow it to browse icon information, Phonebook, etc.

- Some items may not be changed depending on the software.

1 Software list screen (P263) ▶ Move cursor to the software ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Software set" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Stand-by display]
Set the selected software as the Stand-by display.→P270

[Network set]
Set whether to allow communications while software is running.

[Stand-by network set]
Set whether to allow communications while i-αppli is set as the Stand-by display.

Continued on next page

[Icon info]
Set whether to allow software to use the icons of i-mode mail, MessageR/F, in/out of service area, battery level, or Manner mode.

[View P.book/call records]
Set whether to allow software to browse the Phonebook and call history when the software is started.

[Change ring tone/image]
Set whether to allow software to automatically change an image or melody set for a ring tone or the Stand-by display when the software is started.

Note

- Depending on the settings, the software may not connect to the network, or Icon info becomes unavailable (unread mail or battery level, etc.).

<Network set>

- When this is set to "No", the software may not start, or real-time information may not be provided.
- When this is set to "Yes", the software automatically connects to the network. While connected, packet communication charges apply.

<Icon info>

- When set to "Yes", information about the status of the terminal as indicated by the presence of icons for unread mail, messages, battery level, Manner mode, within the service area, and out of service area may be sent to IP (Information providers) via the Internet in the same manner as the "serial number of your mobile phone/UIM" is sent. The icon information could be intercepted by a third party. Software that needs icon data may not function if this is set to "No".

Pre-installed i-αppli

The following table shows pre-installed i-αppli.

Game	Sudoku Cafe
	HalloweenFever
Software other than games	FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA Communication Environment Check Application)
	Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE Program List Remote Controller)

- The i-αppli file name may differ from the name displayed on the screen.

Sudoku Cafe

Enter a number from 1 to 9 in an empty cell. However, the same number cannot be entered more than once for each vertical or horizontal row, or for a block of 3×3 cells framed with a thick line.

1 Software list screen (P263) ▶ "Sudoku Cafe"
The title screen of the game appears.

2 Enter any key (except for ▲/▼, ●, and ●)
The menu screen appears.

3 Perform the following operations

- Press [終了(Exit)] to exit.

[チュートリアル (Tutorial)]
You learn how to play the game through practice.

[レコードモード (Record mode)]
Compete how fast you can solve a puzzle.

[カスタムモード (Custom mode)]
You can create a new puzzle and play it.
- Up to 3 puzzles you create can be saved.

[環境設定 (Environment settings)]
Choose which function to use, スキャン機能 (Scanning function) or ライン機能 (Line function), サウンド (Sound) オン (ON)/ オフ (OFF), 振動 (Vibration) オン (ON)/ オフ (OFF), or set 背景設定 (Background).
Use ⊕ to move the cursor to a setting item, and press ● to switch the setting.
- Selecting "リセットデータ (Reset)" restores the settings and the high score entries to their defaults.

[ランキング確認 (Ranking)]
Display the ranking.

[ヘルプ (Help)]
Display the description of the game and how to play.

[ゲーム終了 (Exit)]
Terminate the i-αppli.

* Press [−] [戻る (Back)] to return to the menu screen.

■Operations during the game

Key	Description
⊕	Move the cursor
[−] [消す (Erase)]	Delete the entered number
[1] to [9]	Enter a number
[−] [メニュー (Menu)]	Display option menu
[0]	Enter provisional number
[#]	Return to the previous step.
[✱]	Use スキャン機能 (Scanning function)/ライン機能 (Line function)

Note
- At level "やさしい (Easy)" in Record mode of tutorial, you fill numbers from 1 through 6 into a block of 3×2 cells.

HalloweenFever

This is a puzzle in which you try to erase 3 or more adjacent monsters of the same type at once. The game ends when all the monsters are erased.
Think carefully about the order to erase the monsters. If there are any remaining monsters at the end, you will lose.

1 Software list screen (P263) ▶ "HalloweenFever"

The menu screen appears.

2 Perform the following operations

- Press [−][終了 (Exit)] to exit.

[スタート (Start)]
Start the game.

[ステージ (Stage)]
Press ⊕ to select a finished stage.

[ヘルプ (Help)]
Display how to play and the description of the game.

[サウンド オン (Sound on)/サウンド オフ (Sound off)]
Each press of ● toggles the sound effects on or off.

Continued on next page

■Operations during the game

Move the cursor and select monsters to erase

Key	Description
●	Move the cursor
○	Select items
ー[メニュー(Menu)]	Selecting "はい (Yes)" ends the game, and the menu screen appears.
＊	Restart the game.
＃	Return to the previous screen.

FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA Communication Environment Check Application)

- The screen image only provides an example. It may differ from actual screen.

FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA Communication Environment Check Application) is an application to confirm if the FOMA terminal is in a FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.

- When using FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA Communication Environment Check Application), please agree on "Usage and Warning" section.
- Depending on the condition (weather, signal strength, or network congestion, etc.) when you are using the FOMA terminal, even if you use the FOMA terminal at same place, same time, the diagnostic result may differ or the result that the terminal is out of service area may be displayed.
- Using other functions while using this application may cause an application error.

Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE Program List Remote Controller)

- The screen image only provides an example. They differ from actual screen. An applicable channel to your location is displayed.

This is a convenient application which combines a TV program list and a Audio/Video remote controller, and is free of monthly usage charges.
You can easily obtain the program information on the digital or analogue terrestrial broadcasting whenever, anywhere you want. You can check the titles, contents, as well as start/end time of the desired program.
Programming your DVD hard disc recorder to record your favorite program via the Internet is available. (The recorder must support remote programming. And the initial setting has to be made to enable this application function.)
You can search your desired programs by keyword such as genre or your favorite actor/actress names or pick-up-keyword on top of the main screen. You can use this application as remote controllers for televisions, video players, or DVD players. (Not all devices are supported.)

- For the first time use, you need to configure the settings and agree to the license agreement.
- Separate packet communication charges apply.
- For overseas use, set "Set Date&Time" of the FOMA terminal to Japan time.
- For details about Gガイド番組リモコン (G-GUIDE Program List Remote Controller), see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■Setting recording schedule function remotely

If your DVD recorder supports remote programming, you can use this application via the Internet to set the recorder timer remotely to record a TV program from the TV program time table of this application.
The initial setting is required to enable the remote programming function.

Making the initial setting:

① Setup your DVD recorder for the Internet connection (Refer to the instruction manual of your DVD recorder for the setting procedure).

② Activate this application, select "リモート録画予約 (Remote record schedule)" from the menu. Follow the displayed guidance to complete the initial setting.

Setting TV program recording schedule:

Select a program to be recorded from the TV program schedule, and select "リモート録画予約 (Remote record schedule)" from the menu. Your DVD recorder designated by the initial setting can be programmed via the Internet to schedule recording the selected program.

- Separate packet communication charges apply.

Set i-αppli To

Starting i-αppli from a Site or Mail

Set whether to start a software from a site, mail, infrared communication, or bar code reader.

1 Software list screen (P263) ▶ Move the cursor to a software ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ "Set i-αppli To" ▶ Mark an item through which to start a software

Site i-αppli To	: Start a software from a site.
Mail i-αppli To	: Start a software from mail.
Ir i-αppli To	: Start a software via infrared communication.
Barcode i-αppli To	: Start a software from the bar code reader.

2 [−][Done]

Starting i-αppli Automatically

- Date and Time have to be set in advance to start an i-αppli automatically.→P49

Auto start set

Setting Software Auto-start

You can set whether to start a software automatically.

1 [−][Menu] ▶ α(i-αppli) ▶ "i-αppli settings" ▶ "Auto start set" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Auto start time

Setting Start Date/Time

Set the date and time when the software starts automatically. This option can be set for up to 3 softwares.

1 Software list screen (P263) ▶ Move the cursor to a software ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ "Auto start time" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Time interval set]

A software will be started automatically with set intervals.

[Start time set]

Mark this if you want to set the time when an i-αppli automatically start.

Continued on next page

[Time]*

Set the time and date for auto start.
To set the date, use ⊙ to move the cursor to a digit to change and enter the date with the dial keys (to set the date on the calendar screen, press ●[Select] in the date entry field. Operations on the calendar screen→P324).
To set the time, use ⊙ to move the cursor to a digit to change and enter the time with dial keys (press ●[Select] in the time entry field to display the Time settings screen on which you can enter time using dial keys and ⊙).

- Depending on the settings in "Date&Time format" (P107), the display format or order of the date and time may differ.

[Repeat]*

Select a repeating pattern for auto start.

1 Time : The software starts automatically only once at the set date and time.

Daily : The software starts automatically at the set time every day.

Weekly : The software starts automatically at the set time on the specified days of the week every week.
▶ Mark days to start automatically every week ▶ [−][Done]

* Can be set by marking "Start time set".

2 [−][Done]

Note

- The software will not automatically start in the following:
  - The FOMA terminal power is off
  - A call or communication is in progress
  - Other functions are running
  - Lock all (even while Terminal security code entry screen is displayed)
  - Omakase Lock
  - An "i-αppli" in "Data access lock" is "ON" (even while Terminal security code entry screen is displayed)
  - The Auto start time is the same as the scheduled time for software update, an alarm, Schedule event, or To do alarm
  - The i-αppli was downloaded using another UIM
  - The i-αppli has "Network set" to "Confirm every session"
  - The same i-αppli has a set time interval to start within 10 minutes
- Software will not start at the set time if other software is running at that time. Also, the software may not start while other functions are running.
- If auto start fails, appears on the Stand-by display. Selecting the icon displays the Auto start info (P271). disappears after the Auto start info is viewed.

i-αppli Stand-by display

Setting i-αppli Stand-by Display

Set a software of the selected i-αppli as the Stand-by display.

1 Software list screen (P263) ▶ Move the cursor to a software ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ "Software set" ▶ "Stand-by display" ▶ "ON"

Note

- Only 1 i-αppli can be set as Stand-by display.
- Some i-αppli cannot be set as Stand-by display.
- While on i-αppli Stand-by display, α/α appears on top of the display
- Turning the FOMA terminal's power on while i-αppli Stand-by display is set, a confirmation whether to start the i-αppli Stand-by display appears. Selecting "No" releases the i-αppli Stand-by display.
- If an i-αppli that performs communication is set as Stand-by display, the i-αppli may not work correctly due to weak signal reception.
- While Lock all is activated or i-αppli is restricted its use in Data access lock, i-αppli Stand-by display is not displayed.

Operating i-αppli Set as Stand-by Display as a Regular i-αppli

1 クリア on i-αppli Stand-by display

i-αppli starts and becomes available to perform.

i-αppli Stand-by display release

Releasing i-αppli Stand-by Display

1 i-αppli running ▶ ⏻ ▶ "Cancel" ▶ "Yes"

Selecting "End" returns to the i-αppli Stand-by display.

Note

- You can also release the i-αppli Stand-by display by following: Press −[Menu] in Stand-by ▶ α (i-αppli) ▶ "i-αppli settings" ▶ "End stand-by display" ▶ "Cancel" ▶ "Yes"

i-αppli info

Viewing Various Information

1 −[Menu] ▶ α (i-αppli) ▶ "i-αppli info" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Security error history]

Display the error history of the software that were terminated due to security errors.

- ↘−[Delete]: Delete the selected error history entry.

[Auto start info]

You can check if software succeeded in auto start. You can view the information and the latest date and time when the software started for up to 3 softwares set for auto start.

Start 0: The software automatically started successfully
Start X: The software failed to start automatically
Start - : The software has not started because the set time has not come

[Trace info]

Display trace information on a software.

- ↘−[Delete]: Delete trace information on a software.

[Standby error info]

Display error information of an i-αppli Stand-by display that did not terminate properly.

- ↘−[Delete]: Delete error information.

Note

- Untraced history or information will not be displayed.

Deleting i-αppli

1 Software list screen (P263) ▶ Move the cursor to a software ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Delete" ▶ Perform the following operations

This item : You can delete the selected software.

Selected items : Select and delete softwares. ▶ Mark a software to deleted ▶ [−\] [Delete] ▶ "Yes"

All items : Delete all software. ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

Note

- When the i-αppli to delete is set for auto start or Stand-by display, a confirmation whether to delete the software appears. Select "Yes" to delete.

Using Various i-αppli Functions

You can connect to a site or use the FOMA terminal functions while an i-αppli is running.

- You need to download the supported i-αppli in advance.
- Some i-αppli, may operate the functions differently, or may unavailable to use some functions.

Using Camera from an i-αppli

- When the camera is activated an i-αppli, captured images will not be saved in "My picture" of "Data box", however, they are saved and used as a component of the i-αppli.

1 Capture an image with the camera via using an i-αppli

Using Bar Code Reader from an i-αppli

- The camera can be used via an i-αppli to read a QR code and Japan Article Number code.
- The read result can be used and saved by the software.

1 Use the i-αppli to read a code

Using Infrared Communication from an i-αppli

1 Perform infrared communication using an i-αppli

Note

- You may not be able to exchange data with some devices even if they have the infrared communication capability.
- You can also start an i-αppli by receiving i-αppli activation data via infrared communication.
- When performing infrared communication, any connection with sites or mail transfer will be canceled.

Data Management

Data Box ····· 274

Making Full Use of Images

Displaying Images ····· Picture viewer 276
Editing Still Images ····· Edit image 281
Creating Animations ····· Animation 284

Making Full Use of Movies

Playing Movies/i-motion Movies
····· Movie/i-motion player 286
Editing Movies/i-motion Movies
····· Edit movies/i-motion movies 292

Making Full Use of Melody

Playing a Melody ····· Melody player 293

Making Full Use of Memory Card

microSD Cards ····· 296
Inserting/Removing a microSD Card ····· 297
Using a microSD Card ····· 298
Exchanging Personal Information between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Card ····· 300
Updating Data on a microSD Card ····· 302
Checking Space on a microSD Card ····· 303
Folder Structure on a microSD Card ····· 303
Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Card Reader/Writer ····· 305

Exchanging Data via Infrared Communication

Using Infrared Communication
····· Infrared communication 306
Sending and Receiving Data One by One
····· Send/Receive via infrared communication 307
Sending and Receiving All Data
··· Send/Receive all via infrared communication 308
Using Infrared Remote Control Function ····· 309

Data Box

Data box contains the items and folders shown in the following tables. Data obtained from sites or i-mode mail are saved to folders by category.

- Up to 20 folders each can be added to My picture, Music, i-motion, and Melody. Up to 10 folders can be added to Music&Video Channel.
- Data saved in My picture, Music, i-motion, and Melody can be moved to other folders within the category. Data saved in the Music&Video Channel can be moved from the "Distributed program" folder to another folder within the category, or can be moved among the folders other than "Distributed program".

My picture: Still images, etc.	
i-mode	Still images, etc. obtained from sites or mails
Camera	Still images captured by the Camera
Decomail picture	Pre-installed pictures for Deco-mail, etc
Decomail picto	Pictographs for Deco-mail pre-installed or downloaded from sites or mail
Preinstalled	Pre-installed still images
Data transfer	Still images, etc. obtained via infrared communication
Item	Still images that can be used for frames or stamps
Animation	User defined animations, etc.

My picture: Still images, etc.		
microSD	Still images saved on the microSD card	
	Camera images	Still images captured by the Camera
	Other images	Still images, etc.
	Decomail picto	Pictographs for Deco-mail that are copied from the FOMA terminal
Music: Playlists created with Chaku-Uta Full® songs and Music player		
i-mode	Chaku-Uta Full® songs downloaded from sites	
Playlists	Playlists created with Music player	
microSD	Movablecontents	Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved on the microSD card
Music&Video ch		
Distributed program	Music programs distributed from Music&Video Channel	
i-motion: Movies, i-motion movies, etc.		
i-mode	Movies/i-motion movies downloaded from sites or mails	
Camera	Movies captured by the Video Camera	
Preinstalled	Pre-installed movies	
Data transfer	Movies, etc. obtained via infrared communication	

i-motion: Movies, i-motion movies, etc.		
microSD	Movies or i-motion movies saved on the microSD card	
	Movablecontents	Copyright protected movies or i-motion movies moved from the FOMA terminal
	Audio	Sound-only i-motion movies
	Video	Movies captured by the Video Camera
Melody: Melodies, etc.		
i-mode	Melodies, etc. downloaded from sites or mails	
Preinstalled	Pre-installed melodies	
Data transfer	Melodies, etc. obtained via infrared communication	
microSD	Melody	Melodies saved on the microSD card
SD-Audio: SD-Audio-compliant music data saved on the microSD card and Playlists created with SD-Audio player		

Differences on Display Name, File Name, and Title

Still images, Flash movies, movies/i-motion movies, and melodies saved in the FOMA terminal have multiple names.

Display name	Names that appear on list screens in Data box or on the Display/playback screens
File name	Names that appear on a PC or other mobile phones
Title*	Names for management of L-01A (cannot be edited)

* Still images and Flash movies do not have titles.

Icons displayed on the file list screen

Icon	Description
/	Files that can be moved/cannot be moved to a microSD card
	File restricted
	Files with the UIM security function activated
	Files on the microSD card
	Files banned from being redistributed
* / / / / / / / / /	File types (JPEG/GIF/Flash/MP4 (extension: mp4)/MP4 (extension: 3gp)/SMF/MFi/Others (unsupported files))

* Icons that appear on the screen vary depending on the list screen type.

Picture viewer

Displaying Images

You can display still images you captured, or obtained from sites or i-mode mails.

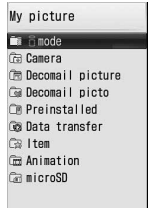
■ Available file formats

File format*	JPEG, GIF
Pixels	JPEG, Progressive JPEG: Up to 2592×1944 pixels GIF: Up to 800×600 pixels
File size	Up to 4MB
File extension	jpg, gif

* Some files in a compatible format may not be displayed.

1 [−][Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "My picture"

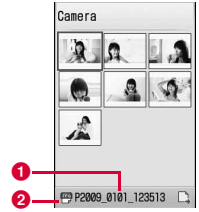
- [−][Switch]: Switch between list and picture view.



My picture screen

2 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ●[Open]

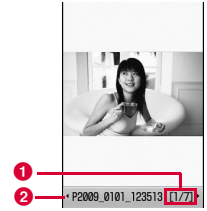
- [−][Mail]: Display the Compose message screen with the selected file attached.
- Icons displayed on the list screen →P275



Still image file list screen

❶ Display name of the selected file
❷ Type of the selected file

3 Move the cursor to a file ▶ ●[View]



Still image display screen

❶ Sequential number/number of saved files
Display the sequential number of the current file and the total number of saved files in the folder.
❷ Display name of the file

■Key operations on the Still image display screen

Key	Description
●(Vertical)/●(Horizontal)	Display the previous/next file
●[Full]	Hide the Soft keys and display a full image/return to the original display size
[−][Mail]	Send the displayed image by mail→P128
1/3	Enlarge the image/return to the previous ratio
●	Move the display position when the image is enlarged • The entire image and the displayed area appear at the edge of the screen.

Note

- The screen is switched to the horizontal view when you tilt the FOMA terminal to the left during the full screen view.
- An i-mode mail with the selected image attached can be created by pressing [−][Mail] on the still image list screen.
- Some images that are not captured with L-01A may not be displayed on the Still image file list screen.

My Pictures Screen Sub Menu

1 My Picture screen (P276) ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Rename]
Change the name of the selected folder. Up to 30 full-pitch or half-pitch characters can be entered.

[New folder]
Create a folder.
• You cannot create a sub folder in a user-defined folder.

[Delete]
Delete the selected folder.
▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

[List view/Grid view]
Switch the folder display format.

[Sort]
Sort files in a folder by setting criteria.

[Memory info.]
Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data box".
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[Folder property]
Display the size of the selected folder and the number of files in the folder.

Still Image File List Screen Sub Menu

1 Still image file list screen (P276) ▶ Move the cursor to a file ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Files]
View : Display the selected file.
Edit : Edit the selected file.→P281
Move : Move the selected file to another folder. ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−][Move]
Copy : Copy the selected file to another folder. ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−][Copy]
Delete : Delete the selected file.
Delete all : Delete all files in the folder. ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code
Rename : Change the display name of the selected file.

Continued on next page

[Multiple choice]
Select and delete files.

▶ Mark files to delete ▶ [−][Delete] ▶ "Yes"

- You can move/copy multiple files with the following operations. ▶ Mark files to move/copy ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Move"/"Copy" ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−][Copy]/[Move]
- You can also press [−/][Menu] to select "Delete", "Mark", "Mark all", "Unmark", or "Unmark all".

[File property]
Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the selected file.→P280

[Send via]*
Mail : Create i-mode mail with the selected file attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).
IrDA : Send a file via infrared communication.

[Set as]
Set the selected file as the Stand-by display or Call display.
Stand-by display : Set as the Stand-by display.
Voice call display : Set as the Voice call display.
Video call display : Set as the Videophone call display.
Wake-up display : Set as the Wake-up display.

[List view/Grid view]
Switch the file display format.

[Sort]
Sort files by setting criteria.

[Memory info.]
Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data box".
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]
This option is not available.

* Not available for Flash movies.

Still Image Display Screen Sub Menu

1 Still image display screen (P276) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Edit image]*
Edit the selected file.→P281

[Delete]
Delete the selected file.

[Edit title]
Edit the display name of the selected file.

[File property]
Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the selected file.→P280

[Send via]*
Mail : Create i-mode mail with the selected file attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).
IrDA : Send a file via infrared communication.

[Full screen]

View the image in Full screen. (In Full screen view, the following operations are available.)

- ●/[2ABC 3DEF]: Return the full screen view to the original view.
- ◆: Display the previous/next image.

[Zoom]

Display an enlarged image. (While zooming in, the following operations are available.)

- [−/+]: Enlarge the image
- [−]: Return to the previous zoom ratio
- ✣: Move the display position
- The entire image and the displayed area appear at the edge of the screen.

[Set as]

Set the selected file as the Stand-by display or Call display.

Stand-by display : Set as the Stand-by display.
Voice call display : Set as the Voice call display.
Video call display : Set as the Videophone call display.
Wake-up display : Set as the Wake-up display.

[View settings]

Set the image display format, zoom ratio, or interval between animation frames.→P280

* Not available for Flash movies.

Viewing Flash Movies

You can view Flash movies downloaded from sites, etc.

■ Available file formats

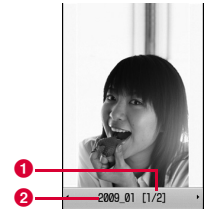
File format*	Flash
File size	Up to 100KB
File extension	swf

* Some files in a compatible file format may not be played.

1 [−/+][Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "My picture"

2 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ●[Open]

3 Move the cursor to a file ▶ ●[View]



Flash movie playback screen

❶ **Sequential number/number of saved files**
Display the sequential number of the current file and the total number of saved files in the folder.
❷ **Display name of the file**

Continued on next page

■Key operations on the Flash movie playback screen

Key	Description
●(Vertical)/●(Horizontal)	Display the previous/next file
●[Full]	Hide the Soft keys and display a full image/return to the original display size
[−]/[Retry]	Play the Flash movie from the beginning
[1]/[3]	Enlarge the image/return to the previous ratio
[2][4][6][8]	Move the display position when the image is enlarged • The entire image and the displayed area appear at the edge of the screen.

Note

- The screen is switched to the horizontal view when you tilt the FOMA terminal to the left during the full screen view.

Flash Movie Playback Screen Sub Menu

1 Flash movie playback screen (P279) ▶ [−]/[Menu]

- The sub menu on the Flash movie playback screen is the same as "Still Image Display Screen Sub Menu" (P278). However, "Edit image" and "Send via" are not available.

Viewing Image Information

1 Still image list screen (P276)/Still image display screen (P276)/Flash movie playback screen (P279) ▶ [−]/[Menu] ▶ "File property"

- [−][Edit]: Edit properties.

■Information displayed on the File property screen

Item	Description
File name	Display the file name
File size	Display the file size
File type*	Display the file format
Date & Time (Saved)	Display the saved date and time
Display size*	Display the resolution
File restriction	Display whether the file is restricted
Source	Display the source
Move to the microSD	Display whether the file can be moved to a microSD card

* Not displayed for Flash movies.

Setting View of a Still Image

Set the image display format, zoom ratio, or interval between animation frames.

1 Still image display screen (P276)/Flash movie playback screen (P279)/Animation list screen (P284) ▶ [−]/[Menu] ▶ "View settings" ▶ Perform the following operations

[View type]

Normal : Display the image in its original size.
Fit to screen : Display the image enlarged to fit the screen.

[Zoom type]

Normal : Zoom in the image enlarged to fit the screen.
Same magnification : Zoom in the image displayed in its original size.

[Animation interval]
Set the interval between animation frames.

[Auto rotating]
Set whether to display the image in a direction when you captured it with this FOMA terminal.

2 [−] [Done]

Setting File Restriction

You can set the file restriction. The restricted file attached to mail cannot be sent or forward from the recipient's FOMA terminal.

1 Select a file to restrict ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "File property"

The File property screen appears.

2 Move the cursor to the "File restriction" field ▶ [−] [Edit] ▶ "File restricted"

Note
- This option cannot be changed for a file downloaded from a site.

Edit image

Editing Still Images

You can edit still images. The edited still image is saved to the same folder as the source file.
- Only JPEG files can be edited. However, some files may not be edited.
- Editing a still image repeatedly may reduce the image quality or increase the file size.

1 Still image display screen (P276) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Edit image"

Still image edit screen

2 [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Save]
Save the edited still image. Go to Step 5.

[Rotate]
Left : Rotate the image 90 degrees counterclockwise.
Right : Rotate the image 90 degrees clockwise.
180 : Rotate the image 180 degrees.

Continued on next page

[Mirror]

Left/Right : Flip the image horizontally.
Up/Down : Flip the image vertically.

[Resize]

Change the image size.→P283

[Crop]

Cut out a part of the image.→P283

[Insert]

Add a frame, stamp, or text.

Frame : Add a frame to an image.
▶Select a folder ▶ Select a frame
• After selecting a frame, press [−/](Menu) to select "Change frame" or "Rotate".
Stamp : Add a stamp to an image.→P283
Text : Add text to an image.→P284

[Retouch]

Change the brightness, contrast, or color tone of an image.

▶ Use ◎ to switch to the item to retouch ▶ ●[Select]

- Adjust the item with ◎.
- If selecting "Auto level" or "Auto enhance", the image is adjusted automatically.
- If selecting "Color adjust" or "Level adjust", adjust each color with ✣.
- Pressing [−/](List) also enables you to select the item to retouch.

[Effect]

Set special effects to an image.

▶ Use ◎ to switch to the item to set ▶ ●[Select]

- Depending on items, adjust with ◎.
- If selecting "Rotation" or "Spotlight", adjust each item with ✣.
- Pressing [−/](List) also enables you to select the item to set.

[Send via mail]

Create i-mode mail with the edited image attached.

[Undo]

Cancel the performed edit operation and restore the previous state.

3 ●[OK]

■ **To cancel editing**
Press [−](Cancel).

4 ●[Save]

■ **To restore the previous state**
Press [−] (Undo).

5 "New file"

■ **To overwrite the original file**
Select "Original file".

Note

<Frame>

- Available frame size: CIF (352×288), Wallpaper (240×400), Wallpaper (400×240), QVGA (320×240), QCIF (176×144), and Sub-QCIF (128×96).
- Only the frame size that is same as the source image size can be set.

Changing Image Size

1 Still image edit screen (P281) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Resize"

2 Select an image size

3 ●[OK] ▶ Save a still image

- Go to Step 4 in "Editing Still Images" (P282).

Note

- The size of a source image with vertical or horizontal side smaller than 8 pixels cannot be changed.
- If a size with different proportions than the source is selected, the original proportions will be retained for the resized image.

Cropping an Image

1 Still image edit screen (P281) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Crop"

2 Select a cropping size ▶ ✣ to move the frame to the area to be cropped ▶ ●[Select]

■ When "User define" is selected
Use ✣ to move the cursor to a start point ▶ ●[Select] ▶ ✣ to move the cursor to an end point ▶ ●[Select] to set the area to crop.

3 ●[OK] ▶ Save a still image

- Go to Step 4 in "Editing Still Images" (P282).

Note

- The size of a source image with vertical or horizontal side smaller than 8 pixels cannot be changed.

Adding a Stamp

1 Still image edit screen (P281) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Insert" ▶ "Stamp"

2 Select a folder ▶ Select a stamp ▶ ✣ to move the stamp to the position ▶ ● [OK]

■ To add another stamp
Press [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Change stamp" ▶ select a folder ▶ select a stamp ▶ ✣ to move the stamp to the position ▶ ●[OK].

■ To rotate the stamp
Press [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Rotate" ▶ select from "Left"/"Right"/"180".

3 [−\] [Done] ▶ Save the still image

- Go to Step 4 in "Editing Still Images" (P282).

Note

- A stamp cannot be added to a source image larger than 640×480 pixels or with vertical or horizontal side smaller than 24 pixels.

Adding Characters

Add text to an image. You can also change the font size or color, rotate the text, or add speech bubbles.

1 Still image edit screen (P281) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Insert" ▶ "Text"

2 Enter the text to add

3 [−] [Menu] ▶ Set text options

[Edit text]
Edit the pasted text.

[Font size]
Set the font size.

[Font color]
Change the added text color.

[Rotate]
Rotate the added text.

[Comic]
Add a speech bubble.

4 Use ⊕ to move the cursor to the position ▶ ● [OK]

5 [−] [Done] ▶ Save the still image

- Go to Step 4 in "Editing Still Images" (P282).

Note

- Text cannot be added to a source image larger than 640×480 pixels or with vertical or horizontal side smaller than 24 pixels.

Animation

Creating Animations

You can create animations with up to 20 frames using saved still images.

- Up to 30 animations can be created.
- Up to 640×480 pixels of still images can be used for creating the animation.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "My picture" ▶ "Animation"

Animation list screen

2 [−] [New] ▶ Enter the display name of the file

3 ●[Add] ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ●[Open] ▶ Select an image

Selecting an image displays the saved image file name.

■ **To delete the saved image**

Move the cursor to an image to delete and press −/[Delete] ▶ "Yes".

4 Repeat Step 3 to save images ▶ −[Done]

Viewing Animation

1 Animation list screen (P284) ▶ Move the cursor to an animation ▶ ●[View]

Animation display screen

■ Key operations while viewing animation

Key	Description
●(Vertical)/●(Horizontal)	Play the previous/next animation
●[Full]	Hide the Soft keys and display a full animation/ return to the original display size

Note

- The screen is switched to the horizontal view when you tilt the FOMA terminal to the left during the full screen view.

Image File Selection Screen Sub Menu

You can perform the following operations on a screen where an image is selected.

- −[View]: The selected image is displayed.

1 On a screen where an image is selected (P285) ▶ −/[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Select]
Add the selected file to the animation.

[View]
Display the selected file.

[File property]
Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the selected file.→P280

[List view/Grid view]
Switch the file display format.

[Sort]
Sort files by setting criteria.

[Memory info.]

Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data box".

External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]
This option is not available.

Animation List Screen Sub Menu

1 Animation list screen (P284) ▶ Move the cursor to an animation ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add images]
Add images to the selected animation.

[Delete]
Delete the selected animation.

[Edit title]
Edit the display name of the selected animation. Up to 30 full-pitch or half-pitch characters can be entered.

[Set as stand-by]
Set the selected animation as the Stand-by display.

[View settings]
Set the image display format, zoom ratio, or interval between animation frames.→P280

Animation Display Screen Sub Menu

1 Animation display screen (P285) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Delete]
Delete the displayed animation.

[Edit title]
Edit the display name of the selected animation. Up to 30 full-pitch or half-pitch characters can be entered.

[Full screen]
View the animation in Full screen. (In Full screen view, the following operations are available.)
- ●/[ ]: Return the full screen view to the original view.
- ◓(Vertical), ◓(Horizontal): Display the previous/next animation.

[Set as stand-by]
Set the selected animation as the Stand-by display.

[View settings]
Set the image display format, zoom ratio, or interval between animation frames.→P281

Movie/i-motion player

Playing Movies/i-motion Movies

You can play movie clips you captured, or i-motion movies obtained from sites or i-mode mails.

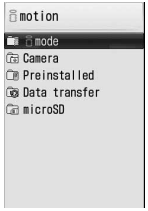
■ Available file formats

File format*	MP4 (Mobile MP4)
Encoding method	MP4 file Video: MPEG-4 and H.263 Audio: AMR and AAC
File extension	mp4, 3gp

* Some files in a compatible file format may not be played.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "i-motion"

- [Switch]: Switch between list and picture display.



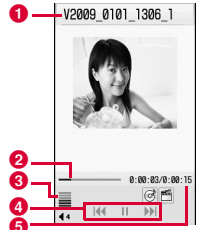
i-motion movie screen

2 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [Open]

- [Mail]: Display the Compose message screen with the selected file attached.
- Icons displayed on the list screen →P275

i-motion file list screen

3 Move the cursor to a file ▶ [Play]



i-motion movie playback screen

1. **Display name of the file**
2. **Playback progress bar**
   Shows the playback elapsed time.
3. **Volume**
4. **Control keys**
   Shows available navigation keys.
5. **Elapsed time/total time**

■ Key operations on the i-motion movie playback screen

Key	Description
	Pause/Play
[Stop]	Stop
	Play the previous/next file
(Hold down)	While being pressed, rewinds the video/sound
(Hold down)	While being pressed, fast forwards the video/sound
/	Adjust the volume

Continued on next page

When Link is set in ticker

After i-motion playback ends, a confirmation appears asking whether to use Phone To/AV Phone To/Web To/Mail To. To use the function, select an item.

Note

- Some files may not be fast forwarded and rewound during playback.
- When you fast forward or rewind an i-motion movie during playback, the i-motion movie is paused.

i-motion Movie Screen Sub Menu

1 i-motion movie screen (P287) ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [−/] [Menu]

- The sub menu of the i-motion movie screen is the same as "My Picture Screen Sub Menu" (P277).

i-motion File List Screen Sub Menu

1 i-motion file list screen (P287) ▶ Move the cursor to a file ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Files]

Play : Play the selected file.
Move : Move the selected file to another folder. ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−] [Move]
Copy : Copy the selected file to another folder. ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−] [Copy]
Delete : Delete the selected file.
Delete all : Delete all files in the folder. ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code
Rename : Change the display name of the selected file.
Reset name : Reset the display name of the selected file to its default name.

[Multiple choice]

Select and delete files.

▶ Mark files to delete ▶ [−] [Delete] ▶ "Yes"

- You can move/copy multiple files with the following operations. ▶ Mark files to move/copy ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Move"/"Copy" ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−] [Move]/[Copy]
- You can also press [−/] [Menu] to select "Delete", "Mark", "Mark all", "Unmark", or "Unmark all".

[File property]

Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the selected file.→P291

[Send via]

Mail : Create i-mode mail with the selected file attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).
IrDA : Send a file via infrared communication.

[Set as tone]
Set the selected file as a ring tone, etc.

Voice ringtone : Set as a ring tone for a voice call.
Video ringtone : Set as a ring tone for a videophone call.
Mail tone : Set as a ring tone for mail.
MessageR tone : Set as a ring tone for MessageR.
MessageF tone : Set as a ring tone for MessageF.
SMS : Set as a ring tone for SMS.
Alarm tone : Set as an alarm tone.

[Set as display]
Set the selected file as the Stand-by display or Call display.

Stand-by display : Set as the Stand-by display.
Voice call display : Set as the Voice call display.
Video call display : Set as the Videophone call display.
Wake-up display : Set as the Wake-up display.

[List view/Grid view]
Switch the file display format.

[Sort]
Sort files by setting criteria.

[Memory info.]
Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data box".
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]
This option is not available.

i-motion Movie Playback Screen Sub Menu

1 i-motion movie playback screen (P287) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Send via mail]
Create i-mode mail with the selected file attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).

[Set as tone]
Set the file in playback as a ring tone, etc.

Voice ringtone : Set as a ring tone for a voice call.
Video ringtone : Set as a ring tone for a videophone call.
Mail tone : Set as a ring tone for mail.
MessageR tone : Set as a ring tone for MessageR.
MessageF tone : Set as a ring tone for MessageF.
SMS : Set as a ring tone for SMS.
Alarm tone : Set as an alarm tone.

[Set as display]
Set the selected file as the Stand-by display or Call display.

Stand-by display : Set as the Stand-by display.
Voice call display : Set as the Voice call display.
Video call display : Set as the Videophone call display.
Wake-up display : Set as the Wake-up display.

[Display]
Auto : Set whether to expand movies/i-motion movies automatically when tilting the FOMA terminal to the left.
Expand : Enlarge movie/i-motion movies.
- Press [3 def] to restore to the original display size.
- This option is available when "Auto" is set to "OFF".

Continued on next page

[Edit]
Edit the movie/i-motion movie in playback.→P292

[File property]
Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the file in playback.→P291

Note

- During the sub menu operation, the movie/i-motion movie is paused.

<Set as tone/Set as display>

- The following movies/i-motion movies cannot be set as a Chaku-motion or Call display:
  - Files that were sent to a PC or another FOMA terminal via infrared communication or DOCOMO keitai datalink and sent back to the FOMA terminal
  - Files that were copied or moved from the microSD card to the FOMA terminal, including those copied or moved from the terminal to the microSD card and copied or moved back to the FOMA terminal (Except i-motion movies that support contents migration)

Playing High-speed Movies

You can play high-speed movies captured with the FOMA terminal.

■ Available file formats

Encoding method	MP4 file
Image size	QVGA, WQVGA, VGA
Frame rate	QVGA: 120fps WQVGA, VGA: 30fps
Bit rate	512kbps to 2Mbps

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "i-motion" ▶ "microSD"

2 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ● [Open]

High-speed movie list screen

3 Move the cursor to a file ▶ ● [Play]

- The key operations on the High-speed movie playback screen are the same as for "Key operations on the i-motion movie playback screen" (P287).

High-speed movie playback screen

❶ High-speed movie file
❷ Movie with sound
❸ Movie with video
❹ Slow playback
The playback speed is displayed.

High-speed Movie List Screen Sub Menu

1 High-speed movie list screen (P290) ▶ Move the cursor to a file ▶ [−/][Menu]

- The high-speed movie list screen sub menu is the same as for "i-motion File List Screen Sub Menu" (P288). However, "Send via", "Set as tone", and "Set as display" are not displayed.

High-speed Movie Playback Screen Sub Menu

1 High-speed movie playback screen (P290) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Play speed]

Normal and slow playback are available.

Normal : Play the movie at normal speed.
1/2 Speed : Play the movie at 1/2 speed.
1/4 Speed : Play the movie at 1/4 speed.
1/8 Speed : Play the movie at 1/8 speed.
1/16 Speed : Play the movie at 1/16 speed.
1/32 Speed : Play the movie at 1/32 speed.

- Pressing [*] also changes the playback speed.
- The sound is not output during slow playback.

[Display]

Auto : Set whether to expand movies/i-motion movies automatically when tilting the FOMA terminal to the left.
Expand : Enlarge movie/i-motion movies.
  - Press [3 def] to restore to the original display size.
  - This option is available when "Auto" is set to "OFF".

[File property]

Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the file in playback.→P291

Viewing Movie/i-motion Movie Information

1 i-motion file list screen (P287)/i-motion movie playback screen (P287) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "File property"

- [−\][Edit]: Edit properties.

■ Information displayed on the File detail screen

Item	Description
File name	Display the file name
File size	Display the file size
File type	Display the file format
Date & Time (Saved)	Display the saved date and time
Play time	Display the file playing time
Display size	Display the resolution
Audio	Display the sound format
File restriction	Display whether the file is restricted→P281
Ringtone	Display whether the file can be set as a ring tone
Receive display	Display whether the file can be set as the Stand-by display or Call display
Title	Display the default title of the file
Creator	Display creator information

Continued on next page

Item	Description
Copyright	Display copyright information
Description	Display the file description
Source	Display the source
Move to the microSD	Display whether the file can be moved to a microSD card

Edit movies/i-motion movies

Editing Movies/i-motion Movies

You can edit movies/i-motion movies.

- The pre-installed files cannot be edited.
- Some files may not be edited.
- The ticker displayed on i-motion movies cannot be edited.

Clipping a Frame of a Movie as a Still Image

You can clip a still image from a movie/i-motion movie. The clipped image is saved to the "Camera" folder in "My picture" of "Data box".

1 i-motion movie playback screen (P287) ▶ Display the image to be clipped as a still image

- Operations during i-motion playback→P287

2 [−] [Menu] ▶ "Edit" ▶ "Capture"

Clipping a Frame of a Movie

You can clip a part of a movie/i-motion movie. The clipped movie/i-motion movie is saved to the same folder as the source file.

1 i-motion movie playback screen (P287) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Edit" ▶ "Clipping" ▶ Perform the following operations

[500KB]
Clip the movie from the selected start point to 500KB or smaller and save it.

[2MB]
Clip the movie from the selected start point to 2MB or smaller and save it.

[Bound]
Clip the movie from the selected start point to the selected end point and save it.
▶ Press ● to play a movie/i-motion movie ▶ At the start point to clip, [−] [Start] ▶ At the end point to clip, [−] [End]

Melody player

Playing a Melody

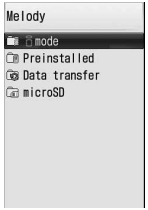
You can play pre-installed melodies or melodies downloaded from sites.

■ Available file formats

File format*	SMF, MFi
File extension	mid, mld

* Some files in a compatible file format may not be played.

1 [−][Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "Melody"



Melody screen

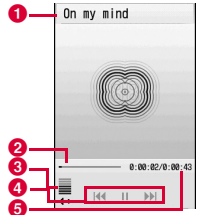
2 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ●[Open]

- Icons displayed on the list screen→P275

Melody file list screen

3 Move the cursor to a file ▶ ●[Play]

- [−][Mail]: Display the Compose message screen with the selected file attached.



Melody playback screen

❶ Display name of the file
❷ Playback progress bar
Shows the playback elapsed time.
❸ Volume
❹ Control keys
Shows available navigation keys.
❺ Elapsed time/total time

Continued on next page

■Key operations on the Melody playback screen

Key	Description
●	Pause/Play
◀▶	Play the previous/next file
▲▼	Adjust the volume

Melody Screen Sub Menu

1 Melody screen (P293) ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶ [−/] [Menu]

- The Melody screen sub menu is the same as the "My Picture Screen Sub Menu" (P277). However, "List view/Grid view" is not available.

Melody File List Screen Sub Menu

1 Melody file list screen (P293) ▶ Move the cursor to a file ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Files]

Play : Play the selected file.
Move : Move the selected file to another folder. ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−\] [Move]
Copy : Copy the selected file to another folder. ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−\] [Copy]
Delete : Delete the selected file.
Delete all : Delete all files in the folder. ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code
Rename : Change the display name of the selected file.
Reset name : Reset the display name of the selected file to its default name.

[Multiple choice]

Select and delete files.

▶ Mark files to delete ▶ [−\] [Delete] ▶ "Yes"

- You can move/copy multiple files with the following operations. ▶ Mark files to move/copy ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Move"/"Copy" ▶ Select a destination folder ▶ [−\] [Move]/[Copy]
- You can also press [−/] [Menu] to select "Delete", "Mark", "Mark all", "Unmark", or "Unmark all".

[File property]

Display the name, size, and type, etc. of the selected melody.→P295

[Send via]

Mail : Create i-mode mail with the selected melody attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).
IrDA : Send a file via infrared communication.

[Set as]

Set the selected melody as a ring tone, etc.

Voice ringtone : Set as a ring tone for a voice call.
Video ringtone : Set as a ring tone for a videophone call.
Mail tone : Set as a ring tone for mail.
MessageR tone : Set as a ring tone for MessageR.
MessageF tone : Set as a ring tone for MessageF.
SMS : Set as a ring tone for SMS.
Alarm tone : Set as an alarm tone.

[Sort]

Sort files by setting criteria.

[Memory info.]

Handset memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. in "Data box".
External memory : Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

[New folder]

This option is not available.

Melody Playback Screen Sub Menu

1 Melody playback screen (P293) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Send via mail]

Create i-mode mail with the melody in playback attached. Go to Step 2 in "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (P128).

[Set as tone]

Set the melody in playback as a ring tone, etc.

Voice ringtone : Set as a ring tone for a voice call.
Video ringtone : Set as a ring tone for a videophone call.
Mail tone : Set as a ring tone for mail.
MessageR tone : Set as a ring tone for MessageR.
MessageF tone : Set as a ring tone for MessageF.
SMS : Set as a ring tone for SMS.
Alarm tone : Set as an alarm tone.

[File property]

Display the file name, size, and type, etc. of the melody in playback. →P295

Note

- During the sub menu operation, the melody playback is paused.

Viewing Melody Information

1 Melody file list screen (P293)/Melody playback screen (P293) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "File property"

- [−] [Edit]: Edit properties.

■ Information displayed on the File detail screen

Item	Description
File name	Display the file name
File size	Display the file size
File type	Display the file format
Date & Time (Saved)	Display the saved date and time
Play time	Display the file playing time
File restriction	Display whether the file is restricted→P281
Ringtone	Display whether the file can be set as a ring tone
Title	Display the default title of the file
Source	Display the source
Move to the microSD	Display whether the file can be moved to a microSD card

microSD Cards

You can save data on the FOMA terminal such as Phonebook entries, Mail messages, or Bookmarks to a microSD card, or can read data on a microSD card to the FOMA terminal. Also, you can browse data on a microSD card from the FOMA terminal.

- L-01A supports a microSD card of up to 2GB and a microSDHC card of up to 8GB (commercially available) (as of October, 2008). For the latest information on operations of microSD cards, including manufacturers and size of cards, visit the following site (in Japanese only). A microSD card not listed at the site may not function.
  - From i-mode "iMenu" ▶ "メニューリスト (Menu list)" ▶ "ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Manufacturers)" ▶ "WOW LG"
  - From a PC http://jp.lgmobile.com/

  Note that the information on the site shows results of compatibility checks. However, the results of the checks are not guaranteed.
- You can purchase a microSD card and microSD card adapter from electric appliance stores, etc.

QR Code to access the site

Precautions on Using microSD Cards

- microSD cards formatted by another device such as a PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal. Use microSD cards formatted by L-01A.→P298
- microSD cards may lose data or deform due to an accident or failure. It is recommended that you make a copy of important data and keep it in a separate place. DOCOMO is not responsible for loss or alteration of data.
- It may take a while to communicate depending on the amount of data to transfer. Also, data may not be copied.
- Do not turn the FOMA terminal power off while data is being read or written.
- Do not unplug the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) while data is being read or written, or a microSD is being formatted. Unplugging the cable may result in data loss.
- Never remove the microSD card while the card is being accessed such as when data on the card is being displayed or the storage capacity of the card is being checked.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on microSD cards. Even the thickness of labels may cause contact failure or data corruption.
- Do not touch the contacts with your hand or metal objects.
- Do not apply strong force, do not bend or drop, and do not let the card become wet.
- Do not leave a removed microSD card within the reach of infants. Accidental swallowing or injury may result.
- When inserting/removing a microSD card, do not place your face close to the card because the card may suddenly eject when you release your fingers. Also, do not let small children handle the card. Injury may result.

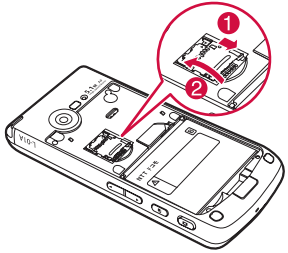
Inserting/Removing a microSD Card

- After operations described in "Turning Power OFF" (P48), turn over the terminal and remove the Back cover, then remove or insert a microSD card.

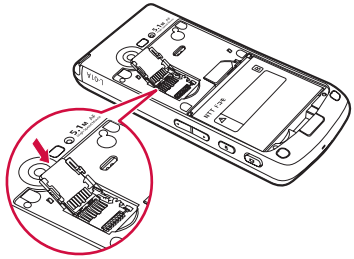
Inserting

To insert a microSD card, close the FOMA terminal and hold it with both hands.

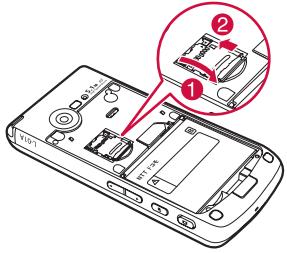
1 Slide the cover in the direction of "OPEN" (❶) until it clicks, and lift it up in the direction of the arrow ❷



2 With the metallic surface up, insert a microSD card along the inside ditch of the cover, till it reaches the bottom



3 Put down the cover completely (❶) and slide it in the direction of "LOCK" (❷) until it clicks to fix the microSD card

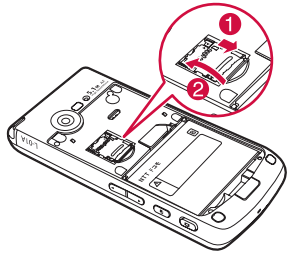


Note

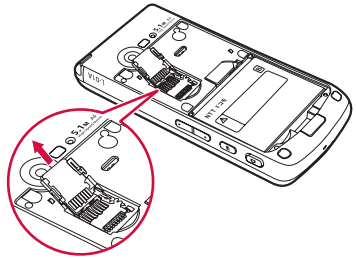
- Insert the microSD card correctly. If the card is not inserted correctly, the card cannot be used.

Removing

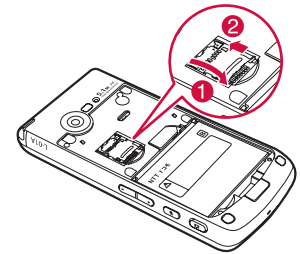
1 Slide the cover in the direction of "OPEN" (❶) until it clicks, and lift it up in the direction of the arrow ❷



2 Remove the microSD card



3 Put down the cover completely (❶) and slide it in the direction of "LOCK" (❷) until it clicks



Using a microSD Card

You can move or copy files saved in Data box on the FOMA terminal, such as still images, movies or i-motion movies, to the microSD card, and you can view files saved from a PC to the microSD card on the FOMA terminal.

Formatting a microSD Card

Format (initialize) a microSD card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

1 [Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "microSD" ▶ "Reset microSD"

A message indicating all data will be deleted appears. Select whether you want to continue to format.

2 "Yes" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

Note

- Use this FOMA terminal to format the card.
- Formatting a microSD card deletes all saved files on the card. Do not lose important data by mistake.

Viewing/Playing Files on the microSD Card

You can view/play files on the microSD card in the same way as ones on the FOMA terminal using "Data box".

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "My picture"/"Music"/"i-motion"/"Melody" ▶ "microSD"

- "Displaying Images"→P276
- "Managing Folders, Playlists and Music Data"→P256
- "Playing Movies/i-motion Movies"→P286
- "Playing a Melody"→P293

Note

- Some files may not be viewed/played.
- The folder/file list screen sub menu for a microSD card is the same as one for the FOMA terminal. However, "Set as", and transfer via infrared communication are not available.

Copying/Moving Files between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Card

You can copy or move files between the FOMA terminal and a microSD card by copying or moving files between the "microSD" folder in Data box and other folders.

Example: To move a camera image saved on the FOMA terminal to a microSD card

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Data box) ▶ "My picture"

2 Move the cursor to a folder ▶ ● [Open]

- Select a folder other than "microSD" folder.

3 Move the cursor to a file ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Files" ▶ "Move"

4 "External memory"

- The destination to move changes depending on file types. Select the destination with .

5 Move the cursor to the destination folder ▶ ● [Open] ▶ [−] [Move]

Continued on next page

Note

- Files which can be copied/moved are JPEG/GIF images excluding pre-installed data or movies whose size is QCIF or smaller.
- Some files may not be copied/moved depending on file type or size.
- Chaku-Uta Full® songs, or i-motion movies downloaded from sites cannot be copied to a microSD card.
- Flash movies saved on this FOMA terminal cannot be copied/moved to a microSD card.
- You can move transferable copyright protected i-motion movies or music data saved in the FOMA terminal to a "Movablecontents" folder in each "microSD" folder.

Exchanging Personal Information between the FOMA Terminal and a microSD Card

You can copy/overwrite personal information between the FOMA terminal and a microSD card, and you can back up your data in the FOMA terminal to a microSD card.
Personal information includes the following:

- Phonebook
- Schedule
- Memo
- To do list
- Inbox (Received mail)
- Outbox (Sent mail)
- Unsent (Unsent mail)
- Bookmark

Copying Personal Information from the FOMA Terminal to a microSD Card

You can copy personal information saved on the FOMA terminal to a microSD card.

Copying Data One by One

Example: To copy a Phonebook entry

1 Stand-by display ▶ ○ ▶ Select a Phonebook entry to copy ▶ −[Menu] ▶ "Copy" ▶ "to microSD"

Selecting Data Type to Make a Backup (Backup)

1 −[Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "microSD" ▶ "PIM"

2 −[Backup] ▶ Select a data type to copy

3 Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

■ For Phonebook
A message appears to confirm whether to copy data in "Own number".

Copying/Overwriting Personal Information from a microSD Card to the FOMA Terminal

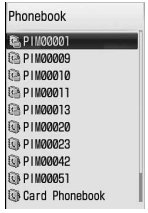
You can copy/overwrite personal information saved on a microSD card to the FOMA terminal.

Copying Data One by One

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "microSD" ▶ "PIM"

2 Select a data type

Data saved on the microSD card is displayed.



Personal data list screen (Ex.: Phonebook)

■Icons displayed on the Personal data list screen

Icon	Description
/ / / / / / / / /	Individual data (one piece of data) Phonebook/Schedule/Memo/ To do list/Inbox/Outbox/ Unsent message/Bookmark
/ / / / / / / / /	Backup data (multiple data) Phonebook/Schedule/Memo/ To do list/Inbox/Outbox/ Unsent message/Bookmark

3 Move the cursor to data ▶ [−/][Menu]

- ●[Select]: Display details about data.

4 "Copy to phone" ▶ "Yes"

■ For backup data

Select "Copy to phone" ▶ enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes".

Note

- In Step 3, you can select backup data ▶ move the cursor to data ▶ press [−/][Menu] to select "Copy to phone" or "Overwrite to phone".
  If you select "Copy to phone", you can further select "Selected data" or "All data".
- The maximum number of data that can be saved on the FOMA terminal can be displayed for the separate data in backup data.

Personal Data List Screen Sub Menu

1 Personal data list screen (P301) ▶ Move the cursor to data ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Rename]*
Change the display name of the selected file.

[Copy to microSD]
Copy (backup) all data for the displayed data type from the FOMA terminal to a microSD card at a time.
▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"
- For Phonebook entries, a message appears to confirm whether to copy saved data in "Own number".

[Copy to phone]*
Copy the selected data to the FOMA terminal.
- For backup data, select "Copy to phone" ▶ enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes".

[Overwrite to phone]*
Overwrite the data on the FOMA terminal with the selected data.
→P302

[Multiple choice]*
Select and delete data.
▶ Mark data to delete ▶ [−\] [Delete] ▶ "Yes"
- Press [−/] [Menu] to select "Delete", "Copy to phone", or "Mark all" or "Unmark all" from "Mark/Unmark".

[Delete]*
Delete the selected data.

[Memory info.]
Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

* No information is displayed if there is no data on the microSD card.

Overwriting with Backup Data

You can overwrite the data on the FOMA terminal with data backed up in advance.
- Note that selecting "Overwrite to phone" deletes the saved data on the FOMA terminal and replaces it with the selected data from the microSD card.
  Make sure important data is not saved before selecting "Overwrite to phone".

1 Personal data list screen (P301) ▶ Move the cursor to data ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Overwrite to phone"

2 Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

■ For Phonebook
A message appears to confirm whether to copy data in "Own number".

Updating Data on a microSD Card

Update data on the microSD card if data cannot be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal after changing, adding, or deleting data on the microSD card using another device.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "microSD" ▶ "Data update"

2 Mark data types to update ▶ [−\] [Done]

Note

- Updating data may take a while if a large amount of data is saved on the microSD card.
- If you use another device to save data on the microSD card, the data saved on the card may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal due to insufficient available memory space for managing data on the terminal.

Checking Space on a microSD Card

Display the status of storage space, etc. of the microSD card.

1 [Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "microSD" ▶ "Memory info."

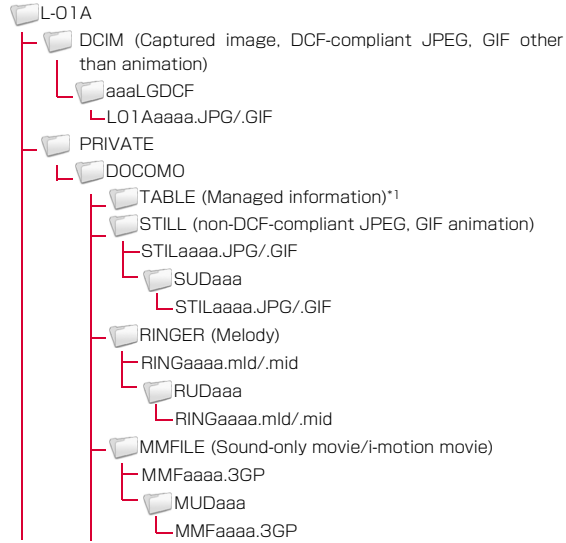
Note

- If the used space is not shown as "0KB" when no data is saved on the microSD card, format the card.
- The actual available space on a microSD card is smaller than the space printed on the card.
- Data may not be saved if there is not sufficient space on the microSD card. Delete unnecessary data or insert a microSD card with sufficient space to save data.

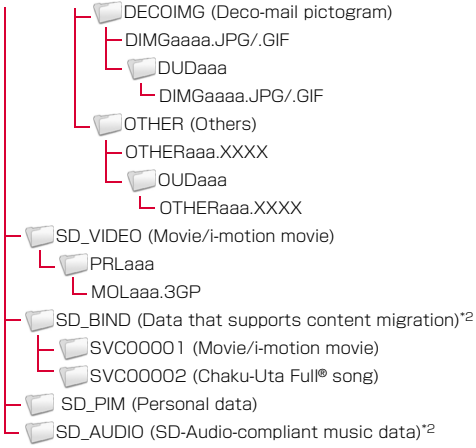
Folder Structure on a microSD Card

When you move or copy files from the FOMA terminal to the microSD card, or when you save still images or movies captured with Camera directly to the microSD card, a folder compatible with the appropriate file type is automatically created on the microSD card.

- When you write data to the microSD card from a PC, a folder structure like the following is required:



Continued on next page



x: Represents half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
a: Represents half-pitch numeric characters between 0 and 9.
*1 The "TABLE" folder has sub folders that store additional information for "DCIM", "STILL", "RINGER", "MMFILE", "DECOIMG", "SD_VIDEO", and "OTHER".
*2 Data is encrypted and cannot be viewed directly on a PC. Do not delete, edit, or add files under these folders. If you do so, the files may not work properly on the L-01A.

■Number of files that can be saved on a microSD card

- The number of files that can be saved on the microSD card varies depending on the size of the microSD card.
- You can check available space on the microSD card by accessing "Memory info." or "Memory status".→P303, P343

File	Folder	Number of savable items
Still image (DCF-compliant JPEG, GIF other than animation)	DCIM	Up to 900 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Still image (non-DCF-compliant JPEG, GIF animation)	STILL	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Melody	RINGER	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Sound-only movie/i-motion movie	MMFILE	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Deco-mail pictogram	DECOIMG	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Movie/i-motion movie	SD_VIDEO	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder
Personal data	SD_PIM	1 folder/65,535 files
Others	OTHER	Up to 999 folders/Up to 999 files per folder

Note

- In some cases, a microSD card used with this FOMA terminal cannot be used with other microSD-compatible FOMA terminals because the folder structure is different.
- Mails that contain Korean texts in a microSD card are not displayed correctly on the Korean-incompatible terminal.
- Depending on the PC in use, folder/file names may appear in lower case. Also, file extensions or certain folders (hidden folders), etc. may not appear.
- Do not delete or move folders on the microSD card using a PC. If you do so, the folders may no longer be readable by L-01A.

Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Card Reader/Writer

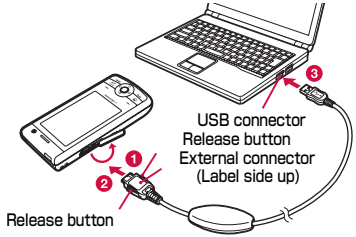
Connect this FOMA terminal with a microSD card inserted to a PC and read/write data on a microSD card.

- To use a microSD card, you need an optional microSD card.
- Only a PC with Windows Vista, XP, or Windows 2000 (Japanese versions) can be used to read/write data on a microSD card. Operation with other OS is not guaranteed.
- To use the FOMA terminal as a microSD card reader/writer, set up the USB mode. Before setting the USB mode, disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "USB mode setting" ▶ "microSD mode"

2 Open the External Connector Terminal cover of the FOMA terminal (❶) and insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 with the front side (indicated by a mark, label, etc.) up until it clicks into its place (❷)

3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 to a USB port on a PC (❸)



Note

- When removing a microSD card or the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 from a PC, be sure to perform the procedure on safe removal for hardware from the task tray of the PC. Removing the memory card or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 without performing the proper steps may result in data loss.
- When switching to USB mode, disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 first. When the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 is connected, the USB mode cannot be switched.
- If the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 is disconnected, the USB mode automatically returns to "Communication mode".

Continued on next page

■ Important
Make sure that the FOMA terminal is correctly connected to a PC. If it is not connected correctly, data may not only fail to be exchanged but also be lost.

Infrared communication

Using Infrared Communication

You can exchange Phonebook entries, schedule events or bookmarks with a device compatible with infrared communication.

■ Available data for transfer

Data type	Receiving capability		Sending capability		Number of savable items
	One	All items	One	All items	
Phonebook (Personal info.)	○	○	○	○	See P78
Schedule	○	○	○	○	Up to 200
To Do*1	○	○	○	○	Up to 50
Received mail	○	○	○	○	Up to 1,000
Sent mail	○	○	○	○	Up to 500
Unsent mail	○	○	○	○	
Image file*2	○	×	○	×	Up to 1,000
Movie file*2	○	×	○	×	Up to 1,000
Melody*3	○	×	○	×	Up to 1,000
Bookmark*4	○	○	○	○	Up to 200*5
Memo	○	○	○	○	Up to 50

*1 If To Do tasks with the alarm set are received prior to the set time, they may not be correctly saved.

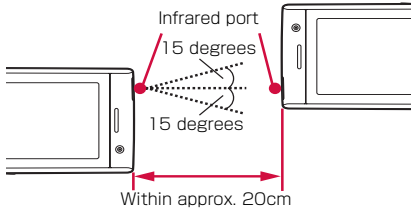
*2 Up to 4MB of data per file can be exchanged.
*3 Up to 100KB of data per file can be exchanged.
*4 Sent/received bookmarks may not be filtered depending on the other party's terminal model.
*5 Up to 100 for i-mode and 100 for Full browser can be saved.

■ Save location of data received via infrared communication

Data type	Save location
Phonebook	Phonebook
Schedule	Schedule
To Do	To do list
Received mail	Inbox
Sent mail	Outbox
Unsent mail	Unsent message
Still image	"Data transfer" folder in "My picture" of "Data box"
Movie	"Data transfer" folder in "i-motion" of "Data box"
Melody	"Data transfer" folder in "Melody" of "Data box"
Bookmark	"Bookmark" folder in "i-mode"
	"Bookmark" folder in "Full browser"
Memo	Memo

Performing Infrared Communication

- Use infrared devices within a distance of approximately 20cm.
- Do not move the FOMA terminal until the data exchange completes.
- If you hold the FOMA terminal in your hand, be sure to hold it securely so that it is not shaken.



Cautions on Data Transfer

- Calls, i-mode, and data transfer are not available during infrared communication because the FOMA terminal is in the same status as out of service area.
- Data may not be transferred depending on the other party's FOMA terminal conditions. Depending on the other party's mobile phone model, the filter setting of received mail or bookmarks, or group setting of Phonebook entries may not be reflected, or the content of Deco-mail may not be saved correctly.
- Infrared communication with infrared devices other than L-01A may result in data not being received or displayed correctly.
- Communication may take a while depending on the amount of data to be transferred. Also, data may not be received.
- Infrared communication may not be performed successfully under direct sunlight or fluorescent light, or near another infrared device, due to possible interference.
- Attachments to i-mode mail are also forwarded. However, some types of attachments may not be forwarded.
- If a message text contains pictographs or symbols, they may not be displayed correctly on a recipient mobile phone or PC which is incompatible with pictographs.
- Depending on the recipient terminal, mail subject may be received partially.
- Infrared communication is not available when Lock all, Data access lock is set, or when Self mode is activated.
- Mails in large size may not be sent correctly.
- When mail is forwarded, only downloaded attachments are forwarded.

Send/Receive via infrared communication

Sending and Receiving Data One by One

Sending Data One by One

- Set the receiving device to the infrared receiving mode before sending data.

Example: To send a Phonebook entry

1 Stand-by display ▶ ○ ▶ Move the cursor to a Phonebook entry ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ "Send Ir data" ▶ "Focused data" ▶ "Yes"

Note

- A message appears if the destination device cannot be found. Check the distance and angle with the other party again.

Receiving Data One by One

1 [Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "Receive Ir data" ▶ "Receive" ▶ "Yes"

2 Perform infrared transmission operations on the sending device

Infrared communication starts.

3 "Yes"

Send/Receive all via infrared communication

Sending and Receiving All Data

You can exchange all data with a PC or another FOMA terminal at a time.

- To exchange all data, an authentication password is used to identify the sender and receiver correctly. An authentication password is any 4-digit number that you selected before infrared communication and should be entered both on the sending and receiving devices.

Sending All Data

- Set the receiving device to the infrared receiving mode before sending data.

Example: To send all Phonebook entries on the FOMA terminal

1 Stand-by display ▶ ▶ [Menu] ▶ "Send Ir data" ▶ "all in phone"

- If an image is set to a Phonebook entry, a warning indicating that it may take a while to send appears. Select "Yes" to send.

2 Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Enter the authentication password ▶ "Yes"

Infrared communication starts.

Note

- A message appears if the destination device cannot be found. Check the distance and angle with the other party again.
- Files in "My picture" cannot be sent at a time (one file can be sent at a time).

Receiving All Data

- Receiving all data overwrites the data on the FOMA terminal and deletes all saved data including protected mails. Make sure that important data is not saved before sending or receiving all data.

1 [Menu] ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ "Receive Ir data" ▶ "Receive all" ▶ "Yes"

2 Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Enter the authentication password

3 Perform infrared transmission operations on the sending device

Infrared communication starts.

4 "Yes"

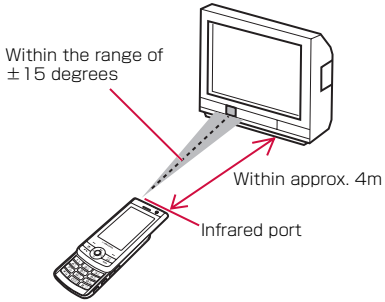
Using Infrared Remote Control Function

You can use the FOMA terminal as a remote controller of an infrared remote controlled device. An i-αppli can send remote control signals using infrared rays.

- To use the remote controller function, download software that is specifically designed for the device. Key operations for remote control vary depending on the software.
- Some devices may not be controlled.
- Depending on the controlled device or ambient brightness, communication may not be possible.
- While Self mode is activated, the infrared remote controller cannot be used.

Infrared Remote Control Operations

Point the Infrared port of the FOMA terminal at the remote control sensor on a TV, etc and operate the FOMA terminal within approximately 4 meters away from the device. Depending on the controlled device and ambient brightness, remote control may not be possible.



Convenient Functions

Using Touch Media ····· Touch media 312
Multiaccess ····· Multiaccess 317
Multitask ····· Multitask 319
Ringing Alarm at Specified Time ····· Alarm 320
Managing Schedules ····· Schedule 323
Managing To Do Tasks ····· To do list 327
Managing Anniversaries ··· Remembering dates 329
Starting Often-used Function Quickly ····· Custom menu 331
Saving Your Own Name and Image ····· Own number 332
Checking Call Duration/Charge ····· 333
Setting Call Charge Upper Limit ····· Set call cost limit 335
Using the World Time ····· World time 335
Using Stopwatch ····· Stopwatch 336
Using Unit Converter ····· Unit converter 336
Using the FOMA terminal as Calculator ····· Calculator 338
Using Memos ····· Memo 339
Talking Using Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch ····· 341
Receiving a Call Automatically when Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is Connected ····· Auto answer 342
Chiming Hour ····· Hour indication 343
Checking Status of Memory Usage ····· Memory status 343

Touch media

Using Touch Media

Touch media allows you to use touch panel to use various functions.

- Operations of Touch media menu and the touch panel→P38

Listening to Music

Play music data saved on the FOMA terminal and microSD card.

1 [TOUCH] ▶ "Music"

Display Chaku-Uta Full® list. Touch to display SD-Audio data list. Touch to return to the Chaku-Uta Full® list.

2 Select a song ▶ Touch the song

- Scroll, or touch the panel softly and sweep upward/downward to select a song.
- Play the touched songs in the order of display sequence on the music data list.

Music playback screen

❶ Repeat setting
: None
: Current song
: All songs
Touch here to switch the setting.

❷ Elapsed time/total time/playback progress bar
Display the playback progress with the bar.
Slide here to specify the playback position.

❸ Song title/Artist name

■ Operations on the Music playback screen

Key	Description
/,	Pause/play
/ , /	Adjust the volume
/, /	Find the beginning of the song or play the previous/next song
/ (Touch and hold), / (Hold down)	Rewind/fast forward while being touched/held down
"BGM"	Play music data in background.→P259
	Display music data list

Note

- While playing music in background, press ▶ (Music player) to return to the Music playback screen.

Viewing Pictures

Display images saved in the FOMA terminal in thumbnail.

1 [TOUCH] ▶ "Photo"

2 Select a still image ▶ Touch the still image

- Scroll, or touch the panel softly and sweep upward/downward to select a still image.
- Touch / to switch the view settings of still images.

Indicates the entire image and the display area for operations such as zoom display.

■ Operations while displaying a still image

Key	Description
+ / −	Zoom/restore the previous zoom ratio • Slide the image: Move the display position • : Restore to display in thumbnail
〈 / 〉	Display previous/next still image

Note

- Tilting the FOMA terminal to the left automatically switches display to horizontal view.

Using Games

Hidden Catch

Find the wrong part while seeing pictures of various subjects. Even when the same pictures appear, the wrong part changes each time you play.

1 [TOUCH] ▶ "Game" ▶ "Hidden Catch"

2 Perform the following operations

[START]
Start the game.

[OPTION]
Vibration On/Vibration Off : Set the vibration to on/off.
Sound ON/Sound OFF : Set the sound to on/off.
ReSet : Restore the settings to default.

[HELP]
Display how to play and the description of the game.

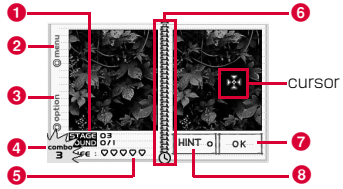
[RANKING]
Display the ranking.

[EXIT]
Exit the game.

Continued on next page

■ Operations during the game

Touch a wrong part to move the cursor there and touch "OK".



❶ STAGE/FOUND
Display the current stage number, number of found/number of wrong parts found.

❷ menu
Display the exit menu.

❸ option
Set "Vibration", "Sound", and "ReSet".

❹ combo
The number of times you cleared stages consecutively appears, and if you clear the stage 10 consecutive times, you get a hint.

❺ LIFE
Display the current number of lives. If you touch other than a wrong part, life decreases by 1. If you cannot find the wrong part within the time limit, life decreases by 2.

❻ Time limit
Display the remaining time.

❼ OK
Determine where you think is a wrong part.

❽ HINT
Display the number of hints.

Note

- You can set name (profile) on "RENAME". Use ◀/▶ to enter name.

Brain Teaser

Various games to train your brain are available. You can play game by selecting either right brain or left brain, or measure the abilities.

1 [−][TOUCH] ▶ "Game" ▶ "Brain Teaser" ▶ Touch the screen

The Menu screen is displayed.

2 Perform the following operations

- Touch "QUIT" to exit game.

[START]

Select a user and start a game.

Left Brain	:	You can select out of 5 games to buff up the left brain. ▶ Select a game to play ▶ Select level to play in
Right Brain	:	You can select out of 5 games to buff up the right brain. ▶ Select a game to play ▶ Select level to play in
Test	:	Measure the left-brain/right-brain skills. ▶ Select a brain test to start ▶ Select level to play at

- On the User selection screen, touch ✖ next to a user name to delete the saved data.

[SETTINGS]

Adjust sound in 8 levels, or set vibration ON/OFF.

[HELP]

Display the description of the game and how to play it.

[MY SCORE]

Display recorded game results by graphs or numeric values.

[QUIT]

Exit the game.

* Touch "Back" to return to the Menu screen.

M-Toy

You can enjoy 6 games by tilting or shaking the FOMA terminal.

1 [TOUCH] ▶ "Game" ▶ "M-Toy" ▶ "OK" ▶ Select a game

■ Kind of games and how to play

Title	How to play (Operation tact)
DART	Throw darts and compete for gaining points. • Hold the FOMA terminal like a darts' arrow and tilt it left and right, use wrist snap at right timing to shake the FOMA terminal like throwing an arrow.
MAGIC BALL	Shake the FOMA terminal thinking about your wish, problems or questions you have like drawing sacred lots and a message as the answer or advices will be displayed. • After shaking the FOMA terminal and holding for a while, magic ball stops and a message is displayed.
HOMERUN DERBY	Compete for the flying distance of a ball you hit. • Hold the FOMA terminal as you do a baseball bat and swing it at a right timing. • Press ● or shake the FOMA terminal by twisting the wrist to swing a bat in the game.
FISHING	Hold the FOMA terminal as you do a fishing rod to angle. ① **Tilt the FOMA terminal from side to side and make a cast at the sign of fish.** • As you make a cast at fishing, shake the top of the FOMA terminal from your side to forward ② **When you are catching a fish, the sign of a fish shines and the FOMA terminal vibrates. Fish up the fish at this timing.** • Pull the FOMA terminal from forward to your side. Press ● also to fish up. • Touch the creel at lower right of the screen to check the caught fishes.
MAZE	Tilt the FOMA terminal to roll a ball to the goal. • Hold the FOMA terminal with the screen up, tilt the terminal from side to side, forward, and backward.
HAMMER	Compete for the record of a hammer throwing. • Shake the FOMA terminal to start swinging. Touch the screen or press ● when the timing comes to throw a hammer. • Shake the FOMA terminal quickly or shake it a number of times to accelerate the swing. • Using ◀▶ also enables swinging.

WARNING

You play these games by tilting or shaking the FOMA terminal. Playing them, shaking the FOMA terminal too much may hit people or object, causing accident or malfunction. Make sure that you hold firm on the FOMA terminal, do not shake it more than needs and make sure the safety of your surroundings while playing.

Note

- Touch [B] to turn sound ON/OFF or vibration ON/OFF, or reset data.

Document Viewer

Viewing a Document

Display a document file saved on microSD card.

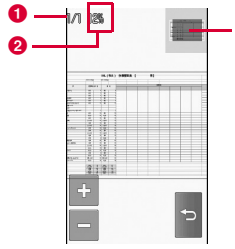
- Save document files in "OTHER" folder or "OUDxxx (xxx are half-pitch numbers from 0 to 9)" folder of microSD card→P303

■ Available file formats

File type*	Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel, Microsoft PowerPoint, PDF
File extension	doc, xls, ppt, pdf

* Files for Word 2007, Excel 2007, and PowerPoint 2007 cannot be displayed. Also, some files in a compatible file format may not be displayed.

1 [−] [TOUCH] ▶ "Document" ▶ Touch a document



During zoom display, the entire document and the display area appear.

❶ Page number/total number of pages
❷ Display magnification

■ Operation while viewing a document

Key	Description
+/−	Zoom/restore the previous zoom ratio
＜/＞	Display previous/next page
Slide an image	Move the display position of a line map

Note

- Tilting the FOMA terminal to the left automatically switches display to horizontal view.

Watching 1Seg

1 [−] [TOUCH] ▶ "1Seg"

❶ **Strength of broadcast wave**
Strong ⟷ Weak

❷ **Information (Remote controller number, channel name)**
Appears for approximately 3 seconds when switching channels and etc.

■ Operation while watching 1Seg

Key	Description
▲/▼, ●	Select a channel
▲/▼(1+ seconds), ●(1+ seconds)	Search receivable channels
+/−, 🔈/🔉	Adjust the volume

Note

- If the 1Seg channel setting is not made, this function is not available.
- Touch a movie to show/hide the icons and the operation parts.

Viewing Line Map of Major Cities

1 [TOUCH] ▶ "Line Map" ▶ Select a city

The line map of the selected city is displayed.

During zoom display, the entire rail map and the display area appear.

■ Operations while viewing a line map

Key	Description
+/−	Zoom/restore the previous zoom ratio
Slide an image	Move the display position of a line map
	Return to the City selection screen

Note

- The line map contained on the FOMA terminal is as of June, 2008. The latest line map can be downloaded from an i-mode site, "WOW LG". Separate communication charges apply for downloading.

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that allows you to use three lines (voice call, packet communication, and SMS) concurrently.

Communication type	Available line
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-αppli, i-mode mail, and packet communication via a PC	1 line
SMS	1 line

Note

- Combination of Multiaccess→P407
- During Multiaccess, communication charges apply to each communication.
- During a videophone call, Multiaccess is disabled except for receiving SMS.

Making a Voice Call during Packet Communication

By launching the New task screen (P319), a voice call can be made during packet communication such as i-mode.

Example: To make a voice call during i-mode communication

1 i-mode screen (P169) ▶ (for 1+ seconds) ▶ "Dialing"

The Phone number entry screen appears.

2 Enter a phone number ▶

Note

- To return to the i-mode communication screen from the Voice call screen, press ● and select "i-mode".

Receiving a Voice Call during Packet Communication

A voice call can be received during packet communication such as i-mode.

Example: To receive a voice call during i-mode communication

1 A call arrives

The Incoming call screen appears.

2 📞

Note

- To return to the i-mode communication screen from the Voice call screen, press ● and select "i-mode".

Using Other Communications during a Voice Call

During a voice call, you can perform operations such as sending/receiving mail or connecting to i-mode.

Sending Mails

1 Voice call screen ▶ ●(for 1+ seconds) ▶ "Mail"

2 Create and send a mail

Note

- Creating and sending a mail→P128, P163

Receiving Mails

An icon (P32) notifying of incoming mail appears at the top of the screen.

Voice call screen

Connecting to i-mode

1 Voice call screen ▶ ●(for 1+ seconds) ▶ "i-mode" ▶ "iMenu"

Note

- To return to the Voice call screen, press 📞 ▶ "Yes".

Multitask

Multitask

This FOMA terminal provides Multitask function that allows you to start and operate multiple applications concurrently.

Task manager

Launching a New Function

To launch a new function while another function is running, display the New task screen (Task manager).

1 While running an application ▶ (for 1+ seconds)

- Unavailable functions are grayed out.

New task screen

2 Select an application to run

- Available applications vary depending on the currently running application and its operating status.

[Dialing]
The Phone number entry screen appears.→P52

[Mail]
The Mail menu screen appears.→P127

[i-mode]
The i-mode menu screen appears.→P168

[i-αppli]
The Software list screen appears.→P263

[1Seg]
The 1Seg view screen appears.→P229

[Search phonebook]
The Search phonebook screen appears.→P85

[Music]
The Music screen appears.→P244

[Camera]
The Still image capture screen appears.→P209

[Schedule]
The Calendar screen appears.→P323

[To do list]
The To do list screen appears.→P328

[Memo]
The Memo list screen appears.→P339

[Calculator]
The Calculator screen appears.→P338

[Own number]
The Own number screen appears.→P50

Note

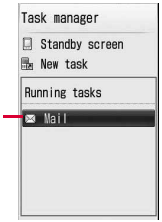
- Multitask combinations→P408

Switching/Viewing Applications

To switch or view applications, display the Task list screen.

1 While running an application ▶ ●

- Select "New task" on the Task list screen to display the New task screen (P319) that allows you to launch another application. Select "Standby screen" to display the Stand-by display.



The running applications are listed.

Task list screen

2 Select a function

The screen for the selected application appears.

Terminating an Application

Terminate the currently displayed application and display the previously displayed application.

1 While running an application ▶ クリア/⏻

- Display the application to terminate first.
- Repeat these steps to terminate all applications.

Alarm

Ringing Alarm at Specified Time

The FOMA terminal can be used as an alarm clock. Up to 10 alarms can be registered.

1 [−]/[Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Alarm"

- Press [−] to set the selected alarm ON/OFF.

Alarm list screen

■Icons displayed on the Alarm list screen

Icon	Description
	Alarms set to "ON"
	Alarms with "Set repeat" set

2 Move the cursor to an alarm to edit ▶ ●[Edit]

3 Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.

[(ON/OFF list)]
Set whether to enable the alarm.

[(Set time)]
Set the time the alarm sounds.

[(Set repeat)]
Select a repetition type.
- If you select "Except holiday", the alarm does not sound on Sundays and holidays set in "Set holiday" (P326).

If "Weekdays" is selected, perform the following operations to specify the days of the week for the alarm to sound:
▶ ◎ ▶ ●[List] on the "Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa" field ▶ Mark days of a week ▶ [−][Done]

[(Select type)]
Select an alarm tone.

Music	:	Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data box".→P256 Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251).
i-motion	:	Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
Melody	:	Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data box".→P293

[(Memo)]
Up to 7 full-pitch or 15 half-pitch characters can be entered. The entered text is displayed on the Alarm screen that appears when the alarm sounds.

[(Turbo Alarm)]
Set whether to enable the Turbo alarm that increases its volume levels up to the maximum volume by phase and vibrates the terminal.

[(Snooze interval)]
Select a snooze interval. To deactivate Snooze, select "OFF".

4 [−][Done]

Alarm List Screen Sub Menu

1 Alarm list screen (P320) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Edit]
Edit the selected alarm setting.→P320

[Turn ON/Turn OFF]
Set the selected alarm "ON"/"OFF".

[Multiple choice]
Select alarms and set whether to enable them.
▶ Mark alarms ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ "Turn ON"/"Turn OFF"
- Press [−/][Menu] to select "Mark/Unmark" ▶ "Mark all" or "Unmark all".

Continued on next page

When an "Alarm" or "Schedule"/"To do" alarm reaches the specified time

Each function performs as follows.

Alarm

The Alarm screen appears, the alarm tone sounds and the illumination lights up.

- ●[OFF]: Cancel the alarm. If the snooze is set, it is also canceled.
- −[Snooze]: Stop the alarm temporarily. When the snooze interval time is up, the alarm starts sounding again.
- or closing the FOMA terminal: Cancel the alarm. If the snooze is set, it continues.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal for approximately 1 minute without any operations, alarm tone stops. If the Snooze is set, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds 12 times at approximately 5-minute intervals. (5 minutes regardless of the setting of the snooze interval time)

Schedule

The Schedule alarm screen appears, the alarm tone sounds and the illumination lights up.

- To stop the alarm, press ●[OK] and then ●[OFF] on the Schedule detail screen. (Perform the same when Snooze is set)
- To sound the alarm tone again, press −[Snooze] ▶ select a snooze interval.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal for approximately 1 minute without any operations, alarm tone stops. Then, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds 12 times at approximately 5-minute interval.
- If you press or close the FOMA terminal, the alarm tone will stop temporarily. Then, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds at approximately 5-minute interval.

To do

The To do alarm screen appears, the alarm tone sounds, and the illumination lights up.

- To stop the alarm, press ●[OK] and then ●[OFF] on the To do detail screen.
- If you leave the FOMA terminal for approximately 1 minute without any operations, alarm tone stops. Then, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds 12 times at approximately 5-minute interval.
- If you press or close the FOMA terminal, the alarm tone will stop temporarily. Then, the alarm tone repeatedly sounds at approximately 5-minute interval.

When the Alarm and Schedule/To do alarms are set at the same time

- The priority order for the alarms is Alarm → Schedule alarm → To do alarm.

When Public mode (Drive mode) is set

Alarm will not sound.

- Alarm will be notified at the set time after the following day.
- Alarm for a Schedule event/To do task will not be notified afterward and remains on the Stand-by display. To delete the icon, delete the relevant Schedule event/To do task or change alarm setting to "No alarm".

Managing Schedules

Registering Schedule Events

You can register schedule events such as a meeting or appointment. Up to 200 schedule events and up to 100 holidays can be saved.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Stationery) ▶ "Schedule" ▶ Move the cursor to the day to save in Schedule ▶ [New] ▶ "General"* ▶ Perform the following operations

* If the 1Seg channel setting is not made, you do not perform the operation to select "General".

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.
- Select "1Seg Booking" to set time for starting 1Seg.→P232
- When the cursor is on the date and time setting field, you can cancel creating a schedule event by pressing [Cancel] ▶ "Yes".

[Subject]

Up to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters can be entered. Up to 2 subjects are displayed at the bottom of the Monthly view screen. Subject is required to register a schedule event. The subject is also displayed on the Alarm screen that appears when the alarm sounds.

[(Set time)]

Set the date and time to start/end the schedule event.

All day : Register the schedule event for a whole day without specifying time.

Set time : After setting, use ○ to move the cursor to the date and time field and enter the start and end date and time of the schedule event.
Use ○ to move the cursor to the position and use dial keys to enter date and time. (Press ●[Select] on date field to select in Monthly view. Press ●[Select] on time field to display the Time setting screen where you can enter time by using dial keys and ○.)

- The end time cannot be set earlier than the start time.
- Depending on the settings in "Date&Time format" (P107), the display format or order of the date and time may differ.

[Summary]

Up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters can be entered.

[(Set alarm)]

Set whether to notify of the set starting date and time by alarm.
If you set other than "No alarm", perform the following operations to select an alarm tone.

▶ ○ ▶ ●[List] on the field, ▶ Select a type of the alarm tone

Music : Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data box".→P256
Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251).

i-motion : Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286

Melody : Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data box".→P293

Continued on next page

[(Set repeat)]

You can set a regular event repeatedly. Select "Once" not to repeat. If you select other than "Once", perform the following operations to set the expiration.

▶ ▶ ●[List] on field ▶ "Set expiration" ▶ Move the cursor to the Expire date field to set expire date

- Use dial keys to enter date. Press ●[Select] to select the date in Monthly view.

If "Weekdays" is selected, perform the following steps to specify the day of the week:

▶ ▶ ●[List] on the "Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa" field ▶ Mark days of a week ▶ −[Done]

[(Category)]

Select a category of the schedule event. Icons vary depending on the selected category.

[(Secret)]

This option appears when "Secret mode" (P118) is set to "ON". If you save the created schedule event as secret data, select "ON".

2 −[Done]

Note

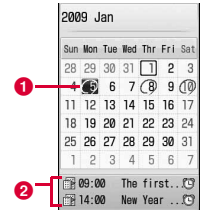
<Secret>

- The schedule event is also saved as secret data when "Secret mode" (P118) is set to "Secret data only mode".
- The schedule saved as secret data is displayed when "Secret mode" is set to "ON" or "Secret data only mode".
- At the set time of a schedule saved as secret data while "Secret mode" is set to "OFF", the alarm tone sounds, however, the description of the event does not appear, and "Secret" appears on the Alarm screen.

Viewing Scheduled Events

You can view scheduled events from the Calendar screen.

1 −[Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Schedule"



Calendar screen (Monthly view)

❶ The date when an event is scheduled

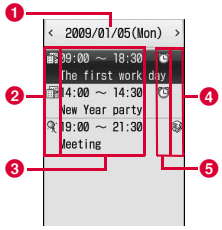
❷ An event scheduled on the highlighted day

Up to 2 events are displayed. Scheduled events with the start time passed are not displayed.

- 1/3: Switch the view to yearly.
- 7/9/▲/▼: Switch the view to monthly.
- 5: Return to the current date.
- Numbers in blue indicate Saturdays, and in red indicate Sundays and holidays.
- You can switch the Calendar screen between Monthly and Weekly view.→P325

2 Select a day to view

- ◉/◉: Switch to the previous/next day.



Schedule list screen

❶ **Date**
❷ **"Category" icon**
❸ **Start time to end time, subject**
❹ **Event scheduled in an area at other than Japan time**
Appears for an event scheduled while "Local time zone" (P49) is set to other than "GMT+9:00".
❺ **Alarm icon**
Appears when the alarm is set.

3 Select the event to view

The Schedule detail screen appears.

- [－]/[Mail]: Send the displayed schedule as an attachment of i-mode mail.

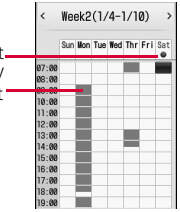
Note

- National holidays are based on "国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律 (平成17年法律第43号までのもの) (the Public Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Aged, as amended (Law No. 43, 2005))". Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day are released in an official gazette on February 1st and may not be exact (as of October, 2008).

Switching the Calendar Screen

The Calendar screen can be viewed on monthly basis or weekly basis. Perform the following operations to switch views.

▶ [－]/[Menu] on the Calendar screen ▶ "Weekly view"/"Monthly view"



- Use ◉ to scroll the screen to view the hidden hours

Calendar Screen Sub Menu

1 Monthly view (P324)/Weekly view (P325) ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Register a new schedule event.→P323

[Set holiday/Clear holiday]
Set or clear a selected day as a holiday.
To set a day as a holiday, move the cursor to the "Holiday" field ▶ ●[Edit] ▶ edit holiday name ▶ move the cursor to the Set repeat field and select an item from the following ▶ [=][Done].

On the day : Set the highlighted date as a holiday.
Weekly : Set day of the highlighted date as a weekly holiday.
Monthly : Set the highlighted date as a monthly holiday.
Annually : Set the highlighted date as an annual holiday.
Duration(2～31)
: Set a specified period after the highlighted day between 2 to 31 days as holidays. Set the period of days in the "Duration(2～31)" field.

If you select "Weekly", "Monthly", or "Annually", perform the following operations to set the expiration of repeat.
▶ ◎ ▶ ●[List] on [image] field ▶ "Set expiration" ▶ Move the cursor to the Expire date field to set expire date
- Use dial keys to enter date. Press ●[Select] to select the date in Monthly view.

To cancel holiday setting, select "Clear holiday" ▶ "Yes". For a holiday set as "Weekly", "Monthly", "Annually", or "Duration (2～31)", select "Yes" on the confirmation of repeat deletion.

[Weekly view/Monthly view]
Switch the calendar view between weekly and monthly.→P325

[Go to date]
The Calendar screen for the specified day appears. Use ◎ to move the cursor to the position in the "Enter date you Want to go to" field, and use dial keys to enter the date and time.

[Delete]
Previous entries : Delete all events scheduled prior to today.
All entries : Delete all scheduled events.

[Send all via IrDA]
Send all scheduled events via infrared communication.→P308

[Memory info.]
The status of scheduled events and holidays is displayed.

[Reset holiday]
Delete the holidays set in "Set holiday".

[Settings]
Set the calendar display format. After setting, press [=][Done].

Default view
: Set display format of the calendar which appears when activating the Schedule.
Monthly view type
: Select a start day of the week from Sunday or Monday.
Weekly start time
: Configure the start time displayed in the Weekly view.

Schedule List Screen/Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Schedule list screen (P325)/detail screen ▶ [−/][Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Register a new schedule event.→P323

[Send via]*1
Send the selected schedule event as an attachment of i-mode mail or via infrared communication.

[Edit]*2
Edit the selected schedule event.→P323

[Multiple choice]*3
You can select and delete scheduled events set to the selected day.
▶ Mark a schedule to delete ▶ [−\][Delete] ▶ "Yes"
- You can select "Delete", or "Mark all" or "Unmark all" from "Mark/Unmark" by pressing [−/][Menu].

[Go to date]*3
The schedule list for the specified day appears. Use ⊙ to move the cursor to the position in the "Enter date you Want to go to" field, and use dial keys to enter the date and time.

[Delete]
Delete the selected scheduled event and holiday.

[Copy to microSD]*1
Copy the selected schedule events to a microSD card.

*1 Not available when selecting the default holidays or settings in "Set holiday".
*2 Not available if a holiday set as the default is selected.
*3 Not displayed on the Schedule detail screen.

To do list

Managing To Do Tasks

Registering To Do Tasks

Up to 50 tasks can be registered.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "To do list" ▶ [−\][New] ▶ Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.
- When the cursor is in the Due date setting field, you can cancel creating a To do task by pressing [−/][Cancel] ▶ "Yes".

[? (Category)]
Select the category of the task. Icons vary depending on the selected category.

[Subject]
Up to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters can be entered. Subject is displayed on the To do list screen. Subject is required to register the task. The subject is also displayed on the Alarm screen that appears when the alarm sounds.

[Summary]
Up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters can be entered.

Continued on next page

[(Due date)]

Set the due date of the task. To set the date, use ◎ to move the cursor to the position and use the dial keys to enter the date. (Press ●[Select] in the date entry field to set the date on the calendar screen. Operations on the Calendar screen→P324)
To set the time, use ◎ to move the cursor to the position and use dial keys to enter the time. (Press ●[Select] in the time entry field to enter time using dial keys and ⓪ on the Time setting screen.)

- Depending on the settings in "Date&Time format", the display order or format of the date and time may differ.→P107

[(Priority)]

Select a priority of the task. Icons vary depending on the selected priority.

[(Status)]

Select the task status. Icons vary depending on the selected status. When "Completed" is selected, you can move the cursor to Completion date field to edit the date and time of completion.

- When "Completed" is selected, the due date and the subject are crossed out, and the task is listed below tasks with status other than "Completed" on the To do list screen.

[(Set alarm)]

Set whether to notify of the due date and time with an alarm tone. If you set other than "No alarm", perform the following operations to select an alarm tone.

▶ ◎ ▶ ●[Select] on the field, ▶ Select a type of the alarm tone

Music	:	Select a Chaku-Uta Full® song saved in "Music" of "Data box".→P256 Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251).
i-motion	:	Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
Melody	:	Select a melody saved in "Melody" of "Data box".→P293

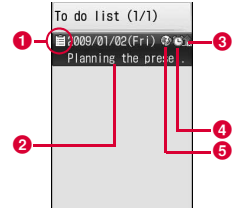
2 [Done]

Viewing To Do Tasks

You can view the registered To do in list.

1 [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "To do list"

- Registered tasks are listed in the order of High → Low → No priority. When two or more tasks have the same priority level, the task with earlier due date is listed first.
  When due dates are same, the one with earlier registered date is listed first.
- For tasks with "Status" set to "Completed", the due date and the subject are crossed out and the task appears below tasks with status other than "Completed".



To do list screen

❶ "Status" icon
❷ Due date and subject
❸ Priority
/ / High/Low/No priority
❹ Tasks with the alarm set
❺ Task registered in an area at other than Japan time
Appears for a task registered while "Local time zone" (P49) is set to other than "GMT+9:00".

2 Select a task to view

The To do detail screen appears.

- [−]([Mail]): Send the displayed To do task as an attachment of i-mode mail.

To Do List Screen/Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 To do list screen (P328)/detail screen ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Create a new task.→P327

[Send via]
Send the selected tasks as an attachment of i-mode mail or via infrared communication. You can also send all tasks via infrared communication.

[Edit]
Edit the selected task.→P327

[Change status]
Change "Status" of the selected task.→P328

[Multiple choice]*
Select and delete tasks.
▶ Mark To do tasks to delete ▶ [−]**[Delete]** ▶ **"Yes"**

- You can select "Delete", or "Mark all" or "Unmark all" from "Mark/Unmark" by pressing [−/][Menu].

[Delete]
Delete the selected tasks.

[Copy to microSD]
Copy the selected tasks to a microSD card.

[View calendar]
Display the current date of the calendar.

* Not displayed on the To do detail screen.

Remembering dates

Managing Anniversaries

You can display the remaining days until an important event on the Stand-by display or find it quickly by using the Date counter and Date search.

Date counter

Registering in Date Counter

The remaining days of up to 30 important events can be saved.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Remembering dates" ▶ "Date counter" ▶ [−][Add] ▶ Perform the following operations

[(Date)]
Set the date of an event. Use ◎ to move the cursor to the position and use the dial keys to enter the date. (Press ●[Select] to set on the Calendar screen. Operations on the Calendar screen→P324)

[Memo]
Up to 40 full-pitch or 80 half-pitch characters can be entered. Memo is displayed on the Date counter list screen. Memo is required to register to the Date counter.

[(Category)]
Select the event category. Icons vary depending on the selected category. Press ●[List] to select a category and an icon from the Icon list screen.

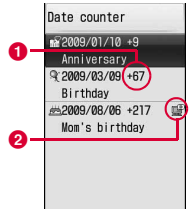
Continued on next page

2 [−] [Done]

Viewing on Date Counter

You can view the remaining days before the registered event.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Remembering dates" ▶ "Date counter"



Date counter list screen

❶ **Counter**
Display with −
: Display the elapsed days from the set date to today.
Display with +
: Display the remaining days from today to the set date.

❷ **Icon to display on the Stand-by display**
An event that is displayed on the Stand-by display.

2 Select an event to find the days

The Event detail screen appears.

- ●[Edit]: Edit the event.
- [−][Delete]: Delete the event.

Displaying the remaining days on the Stand-by display

You can select one of the registered events to display the remaining days before the event on the Stand-by display. To display the remaining days, perform the following operations on the Date counter list screen.

▶ Move the cursor to the event ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ "Display on stand-by screen"

The category and remaining days

Date Counter List/Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Date counter list screen (P330)/detail screen ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Save a new event.→P329

[Edit]
Edit the selected event.→P329

[Display on stand-by screen/Cancel displaying]*
Set whether to display the Date counter for the selected event on the Stand-by display.

[Multiple Choice]*
Select and delete events.

▶ Mark events to delete ▶ [−] [Delete] ▶ "Yes"

- You can select "Delete", or "Mark all" or "Unmark all" from "Mark/Unmark" by pressing [−] [Menu].

[Delete]
Delete the selected event.

* Not displayed on the detail screen.

Using Date Search

You can check the date after specified days passed from a specified date. For example, you can easily find the date 100 days after today. You can check the date up to 9,999 days after a specified date.

1 [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Remembering dates" ▶ "Date search" ▶ Perform the following operations

- [Reset]: Reset the set value.

[From]
Specify the date to start searching from. Use ⊕ and dial keys to enter the date (Press ●[Select] to set on the Calendar screen. Operations on the Calendar screen→P324).

[After]
Enter the number of days after the date specified on "From" using dial keys. For example, to find the date 100 days after "From", enter "100".

[Result]
Display the date after the specified days passed.

Custom menu

Starting Often-used Function Quickly

You can quickly access frequently used functions by registering them to the Custom menu.

Creating Custom Menu

You can register up to 10 frequently used functions to the Custom menu. You can also change the functions registered by default.

Example: To register a function to an unused custom menu number [Menu8]

1 [Menu] (for 1+ seconds) ▶ Move the cursor to "Menu8" ▶ [Add]

The Add new screen appears.

■ To change the registered function
Move the cursor to the function to change ▶ [Edit]

2 Select a function to register

The selected function is registered to the Custom menu.

- A currently registered function cannot be registered again.

Using Custom Menu

1 Stand-by display ▶ [−/] [Menu] (for 1+ seconds)

- You can also perform the following steps.
  [−/] [Menu] ▶ [−\] [Custom]

Custom menu screen

2 Select a function to launch

Custom Menu Screen Sub Menu

1 Custom menu screen (P332) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]*1
Add a function selected from the function list.→P331

[Open]*2
Start the selected function.

[Edit]*2
Change the registered function.

[Delete]*2
Delete the selected function.

[Delete all]
Delete all registered functions.

*1 Appear when an unused menu number is selected.
*2 Appear when a registered function is selected.

Own number

Saving Your Own Name and Image

You can register your personal information to the FOMA terminal.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ (Own number) ▶ [●] [Detail] ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

Own number detail screen

2 [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Edit"
The Edit own number screen appears.

3 Enter the information ▶ [−\] [Done]
For steps to register, refer to Step 2 in "Adding Entries to the FOMA Terminal Phonebook " (P78). You cannot set secret data.

- The pre-installed own number cannot be changed or deleted.

Note

- Even if you change a mail address using i-mode, the address saved to this function is not updated automatically.

Own Number Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Own number detail screen (P332) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Mail/URL]

Create a mail using the saved mail address or connect to the site using saved URL.

Compose mail : Create i-mode mail addressed to other than own number or own mail address.

Attach to mail : Create i-mode mail with own number information attached.

Compose SMS : Create an SMS message addressed to other than own number.

Connect to URL : Connect to the site using saved URL.

[Edit]

Edit the Own number detail screen.→P332

[Send Ir data]

Send the information on the Own number detail screen via infrared communication.→P307

[Copy]

Copy item : Select and copy items from the Own number detail screen.

to microSD : Copy information from the Own number detail screen to a microSD card.

[Customize call]

Change the saved number other than the own number and make a call to the new number.

[Reset]

Delete all registered personal information.

Checking Call Duration/Charge

You can check the last and accumulated call duration and costs of voice and videophone calls.

- Voice call duration and digital communication duration (videophone call duration) are displayed as the call duration. The call duration includes both incoming and outgoing calls.
- Call cost includes only outgoing calls. However, if calls were made to toll free numbers or the directory assistance service (104), "0 YEN" or "＊＊＊＊＊＊ YEN" is displayed.
- Call costs are stored on the UIM. When a different UIM is used, the accumulated call costs stored on the UIM are displayed (accumulation started in December, 2004).
- You can reset the displayed call duration and call cost.
- The displayed call duration and cost are approximate values and may be different from actual ones. Note that call cost does not include the consumption tax.

Note

- The duration/cost for i-mode communication and packet communication are not included. For checking i-mode usage charges, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Call duration

Checking Call Duration

You can check the duration of the previous and accumulated duration of voice and videophone calls.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Call duration"

[Last voice call]
Display the duration of the last voice call.

[Last video call]
Display the duration of the last videophone call.

[Total voice calls]
Display the total duration of voice calls after the last reset.

[Total video calls]
Display the total duration of videophone calls after the last reset.

Note

- The displayed Call duration returns to 0 (zero) seconds and starts counting when the duration exceeds 99 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds.
- The ringing and dialing durations are not counted.

Resetting individual items of "Call duration"
Move the cursor to the item to reset ▶ [Reset] ▶ enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes".

Resetting all items of "Call duration"
You can reset all items at once.
▶ [Menu] ▶ "Reset all" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code ▶ "Yes"

Check call costs

Checking Call Costs

Call cost includes only outgoing calls.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Call costs" ▶ "Check call costs"

[Last voice call cost]
Display the last call cost.

[Last video call cost]
Display the last videophone call cost.

[Total calls cost]
Display the total calls costs after the last reset.

[Reset date&time]
Display the last reset date and time.

Note

- International call costs using WORLD CALL are counted. Call costs when using other international telephone services are not counted.

Resetting Total Calls Cost

1 [Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Call costs" ▶ "Check call costs"

2 [Reset] ▶ Enter the PIN2 code ▶ "Yes"

Set call cost limit

Setting Call Charge Upper Limit

Set the limit of total calls cost so that you will be notified when the cost reaches the limit.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Call costs" ▶ "Set call cost limit"

2 Enter the Terminal security code ▶ Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of the options for the selected item is displayed.

[Set limit]
Set whether to limit total calls cost.

[Call cost limit]*
Set the limit of the total calls cost.

[Notification]*
Select how to notify that the total calls cost has reached its limit.

OFF	: You will not be notified.
Sound+Icon	: You will be notified with the call cost icon and the call cost tone.
Icon	: You will be notified with the call cost icon.

* Set "Set limit" to "ON" to make this setting available.

3 [Done]

When the limit is exceeded
(call cost icon) appears on the Stand-by display. When "Notification" is set to "Sound+Icon", the call cost tone sounds when you finish the call that exceeds the limit.

Hiding the displayed call cost icon
▶ [Menu] ▶ (Phonebook&Logs) ▶ "Call costs" ▶ "Delete call cost icon" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

World time

Using the World Time

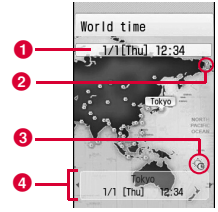
You can view the date and time in major cities around the world stored in the FOMA terminal.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Stationery) ▶ "World time"

- [Search]: Display the city names in list and select. You can also use dial keys to enter a city name and search.

2 Use to move to the destination region ▶ ●[Select]

❶ Date and time of Home (own country)
❷ Time difference from Home
❸ Daylight saving indicator
Appear if daylight saving is set
❹ The selected city name, date, and time



World time setting screen

3 Use to move to the destination city ▶ ●[Set]

World Time Setting Screen Sub Menu

1 World time setting screen (P335) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Search city]
Display the cities in list and select. You can also use dial keys to enter a city name and search.

[Daylight Saving ON/Daylight Saving OFF]
Set/cancel the Daylight savings time.

Stopwatch

Using Stopwatch

You can use the FOMA terminal as a stopwatch.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Stopwatch"

- ● [Start/Stop/Resume]: Start/stop/resume measurement.
- [−] [Reset]: Clear the measurement result.
- [−] [Lap]: Displayed during the measurement. Each time you press this, up to 20 lap times can be displayed.

Unit converter

Using Unit Converter

You can convert the units for measuring currency, surface, length, weight, temperature, volume, or velocity.

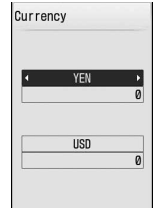
Converting Currency Units

This function is useful in occasions such as exchanging from YEN to USD.

Setting Exchange Rate

Before converting, set the exchange rate.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Unit converter" ▶ "Currency"



Currency exchange screen

2 Move the cursor to the unit field ▶ [−/] [Rate]

- "YEN", "USD", "Euro", and "Currency1 to 3" are registered by default.

3 Perform the following operations

[(Currency name field)]
Press ● [Select] to change the currency. Up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters can be entered.
- "YEN" in the top row cannot be changed.

[(Exchange rate field)]

Set the exchange rate. Up to 10 digits (including the decimal point) can be entered. Up to 2 digits after the decimal point can be entered. For example, to exchange between USD and YEN (example: one US dollar is 120 yen), set 120 to "YEN" and 1 to "USD".

- [−/]/[.]/[#]: Enter the decimal point.
- [2ABC]: Delete from the last entered digit.

4 [−] [Done]

Converting Currencies

Convert the one currency to another based on the rates set for those 2 currencies.

1 Select two currencies from the Currency unit fields in the Currency exchange screen (P336)

- ●[List]: The Currency list screen is displayed.

2 Enter the amount in the Value entry field of the source currency

The converted amount is displayed in the other Value entry field. You can enter/convert in either Value entry field.

- Available digit is as follows.
  - Whole number only: 10 digits
  - Decimal number only: 10 digits (8 digits after decimal point
  - Including whole and decimal numbers: 15 digits (excluding decimal point)
- If the number after conversion exceeds the following, no more digit can be entered.
  - Whole number only:10 digits
  - Decimal number only: 8 digits (6 digits after decimal point)
  - Exceeding 2,147,483,647
  - Including whole and decimal numbers: 15 digits (excluding decimal point)
- If the currency in the Currency unit field is changed after the amount was entered, the new amount will be displayed in the lower Value entry field using the amount in the upper Value entry field as the source.
- [#]: Enter the decimal point.
- [2ABC]: Clear from the last entered digit.
- [−] [Reset]: Clear all entered numbers.

Converting Area Units

Convert one defined area unit to another type of defined area unit.

1 [−/][Menu] ▶ [30](Stationery) ▶ "Unit converter" ▶ "Surface"

2 Select two units in the Surface unit fields

- ● [Unit]: The unit list screen is displayed.

3 Enter the value in the Value entry field of the source surface

The converted value is displayed in the other Value entry field. You can enter/convert in either Value entry field.

- The description of the values entry is the same as in "Converting Currencies".→P337

Converting Temperature Units

You can convert temperatures between Fahrenheit and Celsius.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Unit converter" ▶ "Temperature" ▶ Enter the temperature in the Value entry field of either "Celsius(℃)" or "Fahrenheit(°F)"

The converted temperature is displayed in the other Value entry field. You can enter/convert in either Value entry field.

- From −40 to 309, or up to 10 digits (including − (minus) and the decimal point) can be entered.
- [−/] [− (minus)]: Enter − (minus) before the value.
- [#]: Enter the decimal point.
- [クリア 消去]: Clear from the last entered digit.
- [\−] [Reset]: Clear all entered numbers.

Converting Length, Weight, Volume, and Velocity

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Unit converter" ▶ "Length"/"Weight"/"Volume"/"Velocity"

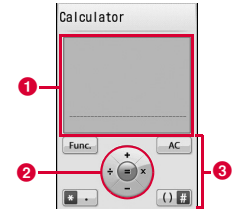
Perform subsequent steps as the same in "Converting Area Units" (P337).

Calculator

Using the FOMA terminal as Calculator

You can use the Calculator to perform arithmetic operations or functional computations.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Calculator"



Calculator screen

❶ Calculation display
❷ Arithmetic operation (+, −, ×, ÷ (/), =)
Use ⊕, ● for operation.
❸ Operation guide

2 Calculate

- [＊]: Enter the decimal point.
- [#]: Enter ( ) (parentheses).
- [クリア 消去]: Delete from the last entered digit.
- [\−] [AC]: Clear all entered numbers and calculated results.

Calculator Screen Sub Menu

1 Calculator screen (P338) ▶ [−/] [Func.] ▶ Perform the following operations

[+/−]
Switch the signs +/− of the entered number.

[sin]
Used for the trigonometric function.

[cos]
Used for the trigonometric function.

[tan]
Used for the trigonometric function.

[log]
Used for the logarithmic function.

[ln]
Used for the natural logarithm.
Calculate the natural logarithm of the specified positive value (logarithm with the base of e).

[exp]
Used for the exponential function.

[sqrt]
Used to calculate the square root of a number.

[deg]
Set the unit of angle to "degree".

[rad]
Set the unit of angle to "radian".
Radian expresses an angle using the constant number of π (180 degrees equal to π radians).
One radian (360 degrees/2π) is approximately 57.29578 degrees;
One degree (2π/360 degrees) is approximately 0.01745 radians (π=3.141592653).

Memo

Using Memos

Creating Memos

Create and save a memo. Up to 50 memos can be saved.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Memo" ▶ [−] [New] ▶ Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

[? Category]
Select a type (category) of memo. Icons vary depending on the selected category.

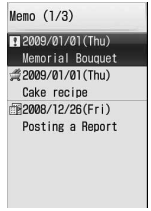
[Subject]
Enter a memo. Up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters can be entered. The subject is required to save a memo.

2 [−] [Done]

Viewing a Memo

You can list and view saved memos.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ 30 (Stationery) ▶ "Memo"



Memo list screen

2 Select a memo to view

The Memo detail screen appears.

- ●[Edit]: Edit the selected memo.
- [−\]: The Compose message screen with "Category" and the contents of "Memo" already entered in the message text appears.

Memo List/Detail Screen Sub Menu

1 Memo list screen(P340)/detail screen ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Add a new memo.→P339

[Send via]
Send the selected memo as i-mode mail or via infrared communication. You can also send all memos via infrared communication.

[Edit]
Edit the selected memo.→P339

[Delete]
Delete the selected memo.

[Multiple choice]*
Select and delete memos.
▶ Mark memos to delete ▶ [−\] [Delete] ▶ "Yes"

- You can select "Delete", or "Mark all" or "Unmark all" from "Mark/Unmark" by pressing [−/] [Menu].

[Copy to microSD]*
Copy the selected Memo to the microSD card.

* Not displayed on the detail screen.

Talking Using Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch

You can connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) to the FOMA terminal to make and receive calls.

- To connect the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set (optional) or Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) to the FOMA terminal, use the Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal (optional).→P27

Setting Switch Actions

Specify the phone number to call using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch via a memory number of the Phonebook in the FOMA terminal.

- The phone number saved as "Phone number 1" in the FOMA terminal Phonebook will be specified.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Earphone" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Switch call]
Select "ON" to make calls by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

[Memory number]*
Enter the memory number of the Phonebook.
This option can be selected from the Phonebook search screen by pressing ●[Search].

* Set "Switch call" to "ON" to make this setting available.

2 [−] [Done]

Making a Call Using Switch

Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to make a voice call to the number assigned to the memory number of the Phonebook set under the Earphone setting (P341).

1 Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch once

2 To end the call, press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for 1+ seconds

Receiving a Call Using Switch

1 A call arrives ▶ Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Answer the call.

- When a videophone call arrives, the camera image is sent to the other party.

2 To end the call, press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for 1+ seconds

Answering Another Call during a Call

If you subscribe to Call waiting and activated the service, you can answer the second call during a voice call by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

1 A call arrives ▶ Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

The active voice call is placed on hold and you can answer the incoming call. The 3-way connecting screen appears.

■ **To reject an incoming call without answering**

Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for 2+ seconds.

2 To end the call, press

- While the 3-way connecting screen is displayed, you cannot terminate the call by pressing the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

■ **To switch to the held voice call while connecting 3-way**

Press the switch of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch for 2+ seconds.

Note

- When using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, a call will not be terminated or placed on hold by closing the terminal during the call regardless of the setting of "Close setting" (P69).

Auto answer

Receiving a Call Automatically when Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is Connected

You can set to answer a call automatically after the set ring time has elapsed with the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch connected.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Call/VT/Dialing" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Auto answer" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Auto answering]

Select "ON" to answer calls automatically using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch.

[Delayed time]*

Enter the time before answering the call automatically.

* Set "Auto answering" to "ON" to make this setting available.

2 [Done]

Note

- If you set "Delayed time" shorter than the Ring time of the Voice mail or Call forwarding service, or the Response time of the Record message, this function takes precedence.

Hour indication

Chiming Hour

Set whether to sound the indication tone on the hour every hour.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Date&time" ▶ "Hour indication" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Set sound]
Specify the indication tone.
- Press ● [List] to display the Indication tone list screen.
- Press ◉ to sound the selected indication tone. On the list screen, press [Play] ▶ ● to confirm the indication tone.

[Time]*
Set the time to sound the indication tone.
Use ◉ to move the cursor to the position and use dial keys to enter time. (Press ●[Select] in the time field to display the Time settings screen that allows you to enter time with dial keys and ●.)
- Depending on the settings in "Date&Time format", the display order or format of the date and time may differ.→P107

* Set "Set sound" to other than "OFF" to make this setting available.

2 [Done]

Note
- The indication volume sounded when confirming settings and notifying every hour follows "Alarm/Schedule".→P95

Memory status

Checking Status of Memory Usage

You can check the status of memory usage and the free space of the FOMA terminal. If a microSD card is inserted, you can also check the status of the microSD card memory usage.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Memory status"

2 Select a memory to check

Databox memory	:	Display the amount of data saved in "Data box".
Personal info.	:	Display the number and the amount of data saved in the Phonebook, Schedule, Holiday, Memo, To do, and Date counter.
UIM memory	:	Display the number and the amount of data saved on the UIM.
microSD	:	Display the memory status of the microSD card.

Character Entry

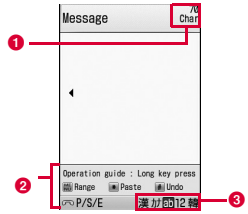
Entering Characters ····· 346
Character Input Method ····· 347
Configuring Character Input Settings
····· Input setting 351
Editing/Saving Common Phrases
····· Edit Common phrases 352
Copying/Cutting/Pasting Text ····· 354
Entering Characters Using Kuten Code
····· Kuten code 354
Saving Often-used Words ····· Edit dictionary 355
Resetting Learned Data ····· Reset learnt info 356
Using Downloaded Dictionary
····· Download dictionary 356

Entering Characters

Various operations require entering characters, such as registering to the Phonebook or creating a message. Learn how to enter characters to fully use the FOMA terminal.

Character Entry Screen

The Character entry screen displays the current input mode and operation guide.



Character entry screen

❶ **Available number of characters**
Indicate the remaining number of characters or bytes that can be input further.

❷ **Operation guide field**
Display operations available by pressing a key for 1+ seconds, or switching between pictographs, symbols, and emoticons, and switching between full- and half-pitch characters.

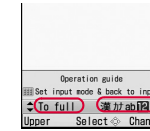
❸ **Input mode field**
Display input mode.

Switching Input Modes

Switch input modes for entering various types of characters. In some input modes, you can switch between full-pitch and half-pitch characters.

- Depending on the input screen, input mode switching may not be available.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ [−][Mode]



Switching input modes

2 [−][Change]/◉ ▶ ●[Select]

Each time you press [−][Change] or ◉, the input mode switches. Pressing ◉ before ●[Select] switches between full and half-pitch (excluding Hiragana or Kanji input mode and Korean input mode).

- After switching the input mode, you can enter characters in the selected input mode without pressing ●[Select].

漢	: Hiragana and Kanji input mode
カ (ｶﾅ)	: Katakana input mode
a/A*1 (ab/AB*1)	: Alphabetic input mode
1 (12)	: Numeric input mode
韓*2	: Korean input mode

*1 Press [−/][Upper] to change to upper case.
*2 Appear when SMS input character is set to "JP/KR(70Chara)".

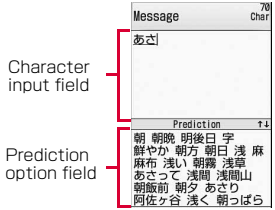
Character Input Method

In the Hiragana and Kanji input mode, you can enter characters using the Prediction input function that predicts conversion options from the characters being entered, and the Next phrase prediction function that predicts the next phrase.

- You can turn the Prediction input function on or off in "Prediction" in "Input setting".
- For characters that can be entered with keys, refer to "List of Characters Assigned to Dial Keys" (P406).

Example: To enter characters in the Hiragana and Kanji input mode

1 Enter characters on the Character entry screen (P346)



Conversion options predicted by the Prediction input function appear.

- If the Prediction is set to "OFF", conversion options will not appear.
- When characters are entered in the Hiragana and Kanji, Katakana, or Alphabetic input mode, and after fixed period of time, the cursor moves to the right automatically (Auto cursor function). The Auto cursor function can be disabled, or can change the time before the cursor moves.→P351
- The cursor also moves when pressing ◎ (the cursor moves when pressing ◎ in other than the Hiragana and Kanji input mode).

■Keys and functions available for other than character entry

Key	Description
[*]	Toggle between upper and lower case. * The key is not available for characters that cannot be toggled or in the Numeric input mode. Characters that can take a voiced symbol will be toggled after the voiced symbol is added.
[#]/◎	Insert line feeds after characters are converted/fixed. Only ◎ is available in the Numeric input mode.
[#] (for 1+ seconds)	Restore the converted or fixed characters to the previous state.
[クリア]	Erase a character in front of the cursor.
[クリア] (for 1+ seconds)	Erase all converted or fixed characters after the cursor. When the cursor is at the end of text, all characters will be erased.
[#]	Display the characters assigned to a key in the reverse order by pressing this key before characters are fixed.
[−] (for 1+ seconds)	Select text range in which decoration or copy or paste is applied.
[*] (for 1+ seconds)	Paste the copied or cut data to the position after the cursor.

2 Use ◎ to move the cursor to the Prediction option field

- ●[Set]: Fix the entered characters. In the Hiragana and Kanji input mode, press this key to fix the characters without converting them.
- [−]/[KanaA1]: Display conversion options combined with Katakana and alphanumeric characters.
- [−]/[Conv.]: Display conversion options without using the Prediction input function. Press this key when there is no conversion option you want to choose on the prediction option field.

Continued on next page

3 Select the characters to convert

The conversion of the entered characters is fixed. Conversion options, if applicable, predicted by the Next phrase prediction function appear in the display area. If desired characters are displayed, perform Steps 2 and 3 to select and enter the characters.

- Press [#/あ] to cancel conversion and resume entering characters.

Converting characters without Prediction function

Perform the following steps if desired characters are not displayed as conversion options or if Prediction is set to "OFF":

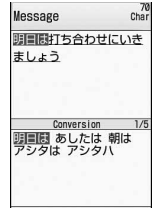
① **Enter characters on the Character entry screen (P346)**

- After entering characters, if the cursor is in the Predicted conversion option area, press [#/あ] to move the cursor to the character entry area.

② [−] **[Conv.]**

Conversion options for the area where the cursor is pointed (conversion area) will appear.

- To change the highlighted area, use ◎ to move the cursor.



③ **Use ◎ to move the cursor to the conversion option display area**

④ **Select the characters to convert**

The conversion of the entered characters is fixed. As each phrase is converted, the next phrase will be highlighted.

Character Entry Screen Sub Menu

- Displayed items vary depending on the options or entered characters on the Character entry screen.
- Refer to "Message Text Entry Screen Sub Menu" (P130) for information on the items displayed on the Message text entry screen of i-mode mail.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Common phrases]

Select and enter a saved common phrase.

Input	: Select and enter a saved common phrase.
Edit	: You can create and save a common phrase, or edit a saved common phrase.→P352

[Edit character]

Copy/cut characters by specifying a range, and paste them.→P354

[Edit dictionary]

Register a word.→P355

[Quote]

Phonebook	: Quote an entry from Phonebook.
Own number	: Quote your phone number. The Terminal security code is required to quote.
Bar code	: Quote an information scanned with the bar code reader.

[Input setting]

Auto cursor	: Set whether to automatically fix the entered characters and move the cursor.→P351
Operation guide	: Display the operation guide.
Prediction	: Activate or deactivate the Prediction input function.→P351

[Special input]

Space	: Enter a space before the cursor.
Changing line	: Enter a linefeed before the cursor.
Kuten code	: Enter a character using the Kuten code.→P354

[Cancel]

Discard all entered characters.

Entering Common Phrases

You can enter text using common phrases saved in the FOMA terminal.

- "Original-1" and "Original-2" are empty by default.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Common phrases" ▶ "Input"

2 Select a category ▶ Select a common phrase

The common phrase is entered.

Note

- Common phrases can be edited/registered.→P352

Entering Pictographs/Symbols/ Emoticons

1 Character entry screen(P346) ▶ [call]

Pictograph list

2 Use [−] [Change] to select an input mode

絵 : Pictograph input mode
記 : Symbol input mode
顔 : Emoticon input mode

3 Use [call] to switch input modes

Pictograph input mode	: Switch between Picto.1/Picto.2/ Picto.D (Deco-mail pictogram) on the Pictograph list screen.
Symbol input mode	: Switch between full-pitch/half-pitch symbol on the Symbol list screen.
Emoticon input mode	: Switch the Emoticon list view to Category view.

4 Select a desired pictograph/symbol/ emoticon ▶ [−/] [Back]

The selected character will be entered.

- If you proceed to press ●[Select] in the input option area, the selected character will be entered in series.

Continued on next page

■Available keys and functions on the list screen

Key	Description
▼	Display list screens in the order of the screen numbers.
▲	Display list screens in the reverse order of the screen numbers.
1/2/3	Move the cursor to the character of the far left/ center/far right on the top row on the Pictograph/Symbol list screen.
4/5/6	Move the cursor to the character of the far left/ center/ far right on the middle row on the Pictograph/Symbol list screen.
7/8/9	Move the cursor to the character of the far left/ center/ far right on the bottom row on the Pictograph/Symbol list screen.
0	Switch between "Picto.1", "Picto.2", and "Picto.D (Deco-mail pictogram)" on the Pictograph list screen.

Note

- Depending on the current input screen, these characters may not be entered or modes may not be switched.

Editing Emoticons

① [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Character input" ▶ "Edit emoticon"
The Edit emoticon screen appears.
② Select a category ▶ Move the cursor to an emoticon to edit ▶ [−] [Edit]
The Character entry screen appears with the selected emoticon entered.
③ Change the Emoticon ▶ ● [Set]
The new emoticon is saved overwriting the existing one.
The sub menu during Emoticon edit is the same one during Common phrase edit.→P353

Entering in Korean

This FOMA terminal allows you to enter text in Korean exclusively in SMS.

- To enter in Korean, set the input mode of SMS message to "JP/KR(70Chara)".→P166

1 SMS message text entry screen ▶ [−] [Mode] ▶ Use [−] [Change]/◎ to move the cursor to "韓" ▶ ● [Select]

2 Enter text

- Combine consonants and vowels when entering text.

■Key operations on entering in Korean

Consonant	Operation	Consonant	Operation
ㄱ	1	ㅍ	5 ▶ ✱ ▶ ✱
ㅋ	1 ▶ ✱	ㅃ	5 ▶ ✱ ▶ #
ㄲ	1 ▶ #	ㅅ	7
ㄴ	2	ㅈ	7 ▶ ✱
ㄷ	2 ▶ ✱	ㅊ	7 ▶ ✱ ▶ ✱
ㅌ	2 ▶ ✱ ▶ ✱	ㅆ	7 ▶ #
ㄸ	2 ▶ ✱ ▶ #	ㅉ	7 ▶ ✱ ▶ #
ㄹ	4	ㅇ	8
ㅁ	5	ㅎ	8 ▶ ✱
ㅂ	5 ▶ ✱		

Vowel	Operation	Vowel	Operation
ㅏ	3	ㅐ	3 ▶ 9
ㅑ	3 ▶ ✱	ㅒ	3 ▶ ✱ ▶ 9
ㅓ	3 ▶ 3	ㅔ	3 ▶ 3 ▶ 9
ㅕ	3 ▶ 3 ▶ ✱	ㅖ	3 ▶ 3 ▶ ✱ ▶ 9
ㅗ	6	ㅙ	6 ▶ 3 ▶ 9
ㅛ	6 ▶ ✱	ㅚ	6 ▶ 9
ㅜ	6 ▶ 6	ㅞ	6 ▶ 6 ▶ 3 ▶ 9
ㅠ	6 ▶ 6 ▶ ✱	ㅟ	6 ▶ 6 ▶ 9
ㅡ	0	ㅢ	0 ▶ 9
ㅣ	9		

Input setting

Configuring Character Input Settings

Configure various settings related to character entry.

Setting Prediction Input Functions

Set whether to enable the Prediction function that displays conversion options matching with the beginning of the characters being entered, or the Next phrase prediction function that displays the predicted next phrase, in the Hiragana and Kanji input modes.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ "Input setting" ▶ "Prediction" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Note

- You can also set the Prediction input function by performing the following steps:
  −/ [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Character input" ▶ "Prediction input" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Fixing Entered Characters Automatically

You can configure the input method so that the cursor moves to a new position for the next input automatically after a set time so that another character can be entered with the same key.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ −/ [Menu] ▶ "Input setting" ▶ "Auto cursor" ▶ "OFF"/"Slow"/"Normal"/"Fast"

- Setting "OFF" disables Auto cursor function.

Edit Common phrases

Editing/Saving Common Phrases

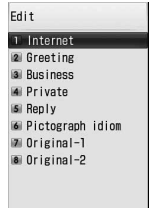
Save frequently used greetings or phrases as common phrases to enter them quickly.

Saving Common Phrases

Newly defined common phrases can be saved in "Original-1" or "Original-2". Up to 10 common phrases can be saved to each folder.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Common phrases" ▶ "Edit"

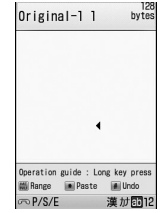
The common phrase categories are listed.



Edit common phrase list screen

2 "Original-1"/"Original-2" ▶ Move the cursor to a number to add a phrase ▶ [−\] [Edit]

- Up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters can be entered.



Edit common phrase screen

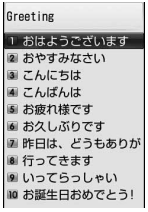
3 Enter text to save ▶ ● [Set]

The common phrase is saved.

Editing Pre-installed Common Phrases

You can edit a pre-installed common phrase.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Common phrases" ▶ "Edit" ▶ Select a common phrase category



"Greeting" Common phrase list screen

2 Move the cursor to a phrase ▶ [−\] [Edit]

The Common phrase edit screen appears with the selected common phrase entered.

3 Edit the common phrase ▶ ● [Set]

The common phrase is registered.

Note

- You can also edit common phrases saved in a user-defined folder.
- You can also perform the following steps to save or edit a common phrase.
  [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Character input" ▶ "Edit common phrase"

Common Phrase Edit Screen Sub Menu

1 Edit common phrase screen (P352) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Reset all]
Restore all common phrases to their defaults.

[Cancel]
Terminate editing a common phrase.

Common Phrase List/Display All Screen Sub Menu

1 Common phrase list/Display all screen (P353) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Delete one]
Delete the selected common phrase.

[Reset 1 item]*1
Restore the selected common phrase to its default.

[Category reset]*2
Restore all common phrases in the category to their defaults.

[Cancel]
Terminate editing a common phrase.

*1 A common phrase in "Original-1" or "Original-2" cannot be selected.
*2 Not displayed in the sub menu in full screen.

Copying/Cutting/Pasting Text

You can copy/cut characters and paste them to other locations or on other screens. Copied/cut characters can be pasted any number of times until the FOMA terminal is turned off or another copy/cut is performed.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Edit character" ▶ "Copy"/"Cut"

2 Use ⊕ to move the cursor to the start point ▶ ● [Select]

■ To select all text
Press [−\] [SelAll].

3 Use ⊕ to move the cursor to the end point ▶ ● [Select]

4 Open the character entry destination screen ▶ Use ⊕ to move the cursor to the pasting position

5 [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Edit character" ▶ "Paste" ▶ "Yes"

- To undo a cut or paste operation, press [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Edit character" ▶ "Undo".

Note

- If copied or cut text contains more characters than the allowable number of characters, the excess characters are truncated when pasted.
- Characters can be pasted only if copied or cut text can be entered in the destination screen. For example, Hiragana or Kanji characters cannot be pasted in the mail address field (half-pitch alphanumeric characters).
- Line feeds in a copied text are replaced with half-pitch spaces if the text is pasted to an input screen that does not allow line feeds.
- When pasting in the Deco-mail message after copying or cutting, the decoration information will also be pasted (except for some decoration information).

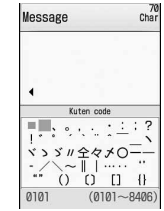
Kuten code

Entering Characters Using Kuten Code

You can enter a 4-digit Kuten code to enter a letter, numeric character, or symbol, etc.

- For the Kuten code list table, refer to "Kuten Code List" on the bundled CD-ROM in PDF format

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ [−/] [Menu] ▶ "Special input" ▶ "Kuten code"



Kuten code input screen

2 Enter the Kuten code (4-digit number) for the character ▶ ●[Select]

The associated character is entered.

- If you proceed to press ●[Select], the selected characters will be entered in serial.
- You can also select characters by moving the cursor with ✣.

Edit dictionary

Saving Often-used Words

You can save up to 100 words that is not listed as conversion options, or words with difficult readings, along with the readings. Saved words will be displayed as conversion options when the readings are entered.

1 Character entry screen (P346) ▶ −/[Menu] ▶ "Edit dictionary"

- ●[Select]: Edit the saved word.

Stored word list screen

2 −[Add] ▶ Select/save the following items

[Reading]

Enter the reading of the saved word to find. Up to 20 full-pitch Hiragana characters only can be entered.

- Space cannot be saved.

[Word]

Enter a word to save. Up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters can be entered. On the Character entry screen, after the characters set as "Reading" are entered, the saved word appears as a conversion option.

- The line feed cannot be saved.

3 −[Store]

The word is saved to the dictionary.

Note

- You can also perform the following steps to save a word. −/[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Character input" ▶ "Edit dictionary"
- Korean cannot be saved to the dictionary.

Deleting Words

You can delete one word or all words saved using "Edit dictionary".

Example: To delete one word

1 Move the cursor to a word to delete on the Stored word list screen (P355)

Continued on next page

2 [Menu] ▶ "Delete one" ▶ "Yes"

The selected word will be deleted.

■ To delete all words

On the Stored word list screen, press [Menu] ▶ "Delete all" ▶ "Yes".

Reset learnt info

Resetting Learned Data

Restore the learned data regarding character entry saved in the FOMA terminal to its default.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Character input" ▶ "Reset learnt info" ▶ "Yes"/"No"

Learned Data

Learned data consists of recorded characters, which were entered and converted by selecting from conversion options, or fixed by pressing ●[Set] without conversion. The next time you enter the same first character, the learned word appears as the first conversion option.

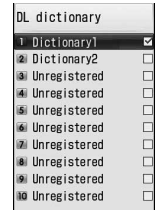
Download dictionary

Using Downloaded Dictionary

You can enable dictionaries downloaded from i-mode sites, etc. and use them for character conversion. Up to 5 dictionaries can be enabled.

- Up to 10 dictionaries can be stored in the FOMA terminal.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Character input" ▶ "Download dictionary"



Downloaded Dictionary Screen

2 Move the cursor to a dictionary to enable ▶ ●[ON]

Each marked dictionary becomes available.

■ To disable a dictionary

Move the cursor to an available dictionary and press ●[OFF].

Download Dictionary Screen Sub Menu

1 Downloaded dictionary screen (P356) ▶ [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

- [View]: Display details of the dictionary.

[Delete one]

Delete the selected dictionary.

[Delete all]

Delete all listed dictionaries.

Network Services

Available Network Services

The following DOCOMO network services are available for the FOMA terminal.

Service name	Subscription	Monthly charge
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged
Call Waiting	Required	Charged
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not required	Free
Caller ID Notification Service	Not required	Free
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free

Service name	Subscription	Monthly charge
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged
English Guidance	Not required	Free
Multi Number	Required	Charged
Public mode (Drive mode)*	Not required	Free
Public mode (Power OFF)*	Not required	Free

* Public mode→P71, P72

- You cannot use network services while you are out of service area or where there is no signal reception.
- For subscription or inquiries, contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.
- This manual describes an overview of network services using menus on the FOMA terminal. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Voice Mail Service ····· Voice mail 358
Call Waiting ····· Call waiting 360
Call Forwarding Service ····· Call forwarding 362
Nuisance Call Blocking Service ····· Nuisance call blocking 363
Caller ID Notification Service ····· Caller ID notification 364
Caller ID Request Service ····· Caller ID request 364
Setting In-call Arrival Act···· Set in-call arrival act 365
Selecting Actions for an Incoming Call during a Call ····· Arrival call act 365
Dual Network Service ····· Dual network 366
English Guidance ····· English guidance 366
Service Numbers ····· Service numbers 367
Setting Remote Control····· Remote control 367
Multi Number ····· Multi number 368
Saving and Using Services ····· Additional service (USSD Registration) 370
Saving Additional Guidance····· Additional guide 371

Voice Mail Service

When your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off, or you cannot answer a call, this service automatically responds with reply message to incoming voice/videophone calls and records messages.

- The message can be recorded up to 3 minutes per message, up to 20 messages each for voice and videophone calls, and retained for up to 72 hours.
- When a message is recorded, 1 (with the number of received messages) appears on the Stand-by display. However, if a video message is recorded, 1 does not appear on the Stand-by display and an incoming notification (SMS) notifies you of the message.
- When Record message (P72) is activated concurrently, set the ringing time of the Voice mail service shorter than the Response time of Record message to use the Voice mail service first.
- If you do not answer an incoming voice or videophone call when the Voice mail service is activated, the call is recorded as a Missed call in Received calls and 1 appears (with the number of the Missed calls).

Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service

Step 1: Activate the service
Step 2: A call arrives*
Step 3: Caller records a message
Step 4: Play the message

* If you are in a hurry and want to record a message without listening to the response message of the Voice mail service, press "#" while you hear the message to switch to the recording mode.

Note

- In Step 2, when you are in a service area and the FOMA terminal is turned on, a ring tone sounds until the set ring time elapses. If an incoming call is not answered while a ring tone is sounding, the call is connected to the Voice mail service center. The ring time can be changed.
- In Step 3, when a message is recorded, 1 appears (with the number of recorded messages) on the Stand-by display, and a missed call is recorded in Received calls. However, if you set the ring time to zero, missed calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- Even when the Voice mail service is deactivated, you can forward an incoming voice call to the Voice mail center manually using the sub menu.→P68
- To change the settings of the Voice mail for videophone calls, make a voice call to "1412".

Using Voice Mail Service

1 [−][Menu] ▶ ⚙(Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Voice mail" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the Voice mail service.

[Set ring time]
Set time to connect to the Voice mail service center after a call arrival.
▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter a ring time

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the Voice mail service.

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status of the Voice mail service.
Press [−][Menu] to activate/deactivate the Voice mail service, or set a ring time.

[Play messages]
Make a call to the Voice mail service center and play the recorded voice mail message.

[Voice mail setting]
Make a call to the Voice mail service center and change the settings according to the voice guidance.

[Check messages]
Check whether new messages are recorded.

[Notify missed call]
When a call arrives while the FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, an SMS is sent to notify you of missed calls after the FOMA terminal is turned on or in a service area.

Activate	: Activate the Notify missed call service.
Deactivate	: Deactivate the Notify missed call service.
Check setting	: Check the setting status of the Notify missed call.

[Del. voice mail icon]
Delete displayed in the icon display area.

[Tone/vibration message notification]
Set whether to notify you of a new recorded message with illumination and a ring tone.

Note

- Even when you activate "SMS一括拒否 (Reject All SMS)", the notification will be received.
- Charges do not apply for setting or receiving the notification as SMS.

Call waiting

Call Waiting

When another call arrives during a call, in-call arrival tone sounds to notify you of the call arrival. You can place the active call on hold and answer another call. You can also place the active call on hold to make another call.

- To use Call waiting, set "Arrival call act" (P365) to "Answer" in advance. If this option is set to other item, an incoming voice call during active voice call cannot be answered even if Call waiting is activated.
- Call waiting is not available when:
  - Dialing a number or ringing the other party
  - A voice call arrives during a videophone call
  - A videophone call arrives during a voice call

Using Call Waiting

1 [−][Menu] ▶ ⚙(Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Call waiting" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate Call waiting.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate Call waiting.

[Check setting]
Check whether Call waiting is activated or deactivated.

Holding the Active Call to Answer Another Call

When a call arrives during a voice call, in-call arrival tone sounds from the earpiece and the Incoming call screen appears.

1 A call arrives ▶ [Answer]

The active voice call is placed on hold and you can answer the incoming call. A message "Connecting 3-way" appears (3-way connecting screen).

- [−][Switch]: Switch between the active call and the held call.
- ●[Spk ON/Spk OFF]: Toggle Hands-free On/Off.
- [End]: End the active call.

Note

- If you deactivate Call waiting, you cannot answer a call even when you hear in-call arrival tone during a call with "Set in-call arrival act" activated.

Holding the Active Call to Make a New Call

You can place the active voice call on hold and make a new voice call.

1 Voice call screen (P53) ▶ ●[OK] ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ "New call" ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [Send]

The new call becomes active. The previous call is placed on hold and the 3-way connecting screen appears.

- To switch to a held call, press ●[OK] ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ "Switch".
- To end the held call, switch to the held call by performing the above step and press [End].

Terminating the Active Call to Answer Another Call

You can end the active voice call and answer an incoming voice call. This is available even when Call waiting is activated.

1 A call arrives ▶ ●[OK] ▶ −[Menu] ▶ "End active call"

The Voice call termination screen appears, and the Incoming voice call screen for the new call appears.

■ **To end the held call and answer the incoming call**

Press ●[OK] ▶ −[Menu] ▶ "End" ▶ "End held call".

- When connecting 3-way, the active call is placed on hold, and you can answer the incoming call.

2 ☎ or −[Answer]

In-Call Arrival Screen Sub Menu

1 When a call arrives during a call, ●[OK] ▶ −[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Voice mail][*1]
Connect an incoming call to the Voice mail service center.

[Call rejection]
Reject an incoming call and hang up.

[Call forwarding][*2]
Forward an incoming call to the specified number.

[End active call]
Terminate the active call and a new call is arriving.

[Mute/Unmute]
Set the active call to mute/unmute.

*1 Not available unless you subscribe to the Voice mail service.
*2 Not available unless you subscribe to the Call forwarding service or you have specified a forwarding number.

3-way Connecting Screen Sub Menu

1 3-way connecting screen ▶ ●[OK] ▶ −[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Switch]
Switch between the active call and held call.

[End]
Select and end a call.

End active call	:	Terminate the active call. The held call automatically becomes active.
End held call	:	Terminate the held call.
End all calls	:	Terminate all calls.

[Mute/Unmute]
Set the active call to mute/unmute.

[Send my info]
Create i-mode mail with Own number entered in the message text. →P128

[Search phonebook]*
Search for a Phonebook entry.→P85

* Not available when the Phonebook is accessed. To use this function, terminate applicable functions from the task list screen. →P320

Call forwarding

Call Forwarding Service

When your FOMA terminal is out of service area, turned off, or a call was not answered within the set ring time, this service forwards a voice/videophone call.

- Videophone calls are forwarded only to a videophone call capable destination complying with 3G-324M.
- The subscriber to the Call forwarding service is charged for forwarding a call to a destination.
- This service is not available for some billing plans.
- When Record message (P72) is activated concurrently, set the ring time of the Call forwarding service shorter than the Ring time of Record message to use the Call forwarding service first.
- If an incoming voice or videophone call is not answered while the Call forwarding service is activated, the call is recorded as a Missed call in Received calls and 1 appears (with number of missed calls).

Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

Step 1: Register the phone number of the forwarding destination
Step 2: Activate the service
Step 3: A call arrives
Step 4: Forward the call to the destination

Note

- In Step 3, when you are in a service area and the FOMA terminal is turned on, a ring tone sounds until the set ring time elapses. If an incoming call is not answered while a ring tone is sounding, the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The ring time can be changed.
- In Step 4, when the call is forwarded, the call is recorded as a Missed call in Received calls. However, if you set the ring time to zero, missed calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- Even when the Call forwarding service is deactivated, you can forward an incoming call to the forwarding destination manually from the sub menu.→P68

Using Call Forwarding Service

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Call forwarding" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]

Activate the Call forwarding service.

Register the forwarding number	: Register the forwarding number. Press [−] [Search] to find the number from the Phonebook.
Set ring time	: Set time to forward the call after a call arrival.

[Deactivate]

Deactivate the Call forwarding service.

[Register the forwarding number]

Change the forwarding number. Press [−] [Search] to find the number from the Phonebook.

- A confirmation appears. Selecting "Yes" changes the forwarding number and activates the Call forwarding service.

[Setting if forwarding number busy]*
Set whether to connect to the Voice mail service center when the forwarding number is busy.

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status of the Call forwarding service.

* Not available unless you subscribe to the Voice mail service.

Enabling or Disabling Forwarding Guidance

- This cannot be operated from menu.
- For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

1 Enter "1429" ▶ [call]
Follow the voice guidance.

Nuisance call blocking

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

This service rejects incoming nuisance calls. After a phone number is registered to be rejected, incoming calls from the registered number are automatically rejected, and the voice guidance is played to the caller.

- Up to 30 phone numbers can be registered.
- Even when a call arrives from the registered number, the ring tone does not sound. Also, the call is not recorded in Received calls.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Nuisance call blocking" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Register nuisance caller]
Register the phone number of the last incoming call you answered and set the number to be rejected.

[Register selected number]
Set specific phone numbers to be rejected.

[Delete all entries]
Delete all phone numbers registered as nuisance callers.

[Delete last entry]
Delete the last saved phone number. Repeat the same steps to delete phone number one by one from the last saved number.

[Check the number of entries]
Check the number of registered entries.

Caller ID notification

Caller ID Notification Service

You can notify the other party of your caller ID (phone number) when you call. Your Caller ID is displayed on the other party's phone if the other party's phone is a digital phone and capable of displaying Caller ID.

- Your Caller ID is important information. Be cautious when sending your Caller ID.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Caller ID notification" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate/Deactivate]
Set whether to send or hide your Caller ID to the other party. The Network security code is required for setting.

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status of the Caller ID notification service.

Caller ID request

Caller ID Request Service

For a voice/videophone call without Caller ID, this service plays a voice guidance requesting the caller to send Caller ID and terminates the call automatically.

- Calls that did not arrive due to the Caller ID request service are not recorded in Received calls, and the Missed call notification screen does not appear.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Caller ID request" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the Caller ID request service.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the Caller ID request service.

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status of Caller ID request service.

Note

- This service is applicable only to calls with "User unset" as a reason for hiding Caller ID.

Set in-call arrival act

Setting In-call Arrival Act

Activate or deactivate incoming call actions set in "Arrival call act". You can also check the current settings.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Set in-call arrival act" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the action set in "Arrival call act"

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the action set in "Arrival call act"

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status of the Set in-call arrival act.

Arrival call act

Selecting Actions for an Incoming Call during a Call

You can set how to respond to an incoming voice/videophone call during a call when you subscribe to the Voice mail, Call waiting, or Call forwarding service.

- You cannot answer an incoming call during a call if you do not subscribe to the Voice mail, Call waiting, or Call forwarding service.
- Activate "Set in-call arrival act." to use "Arrival call act".

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Arrival call act" ▶ Perform the following operations

Answer : A call arrives. When the Voice mail, Call waiting, or Call forwarding service is activated, the incoming call action follows the setting of the service.

Voice mail : The Voice mail service answers a call. Calls are connected to the Voice mail service even when Call waiting is activated.

Call forwarding : Calls are forwarded to the registered phone number. Calls are forwarded even when the Voice mail or Call waiting is activated.

Call rejection : Reject incoming calls.

Note

- Incoming voice or videophone calls are recorded in Received calls regardless of the arrival all act setting.

Dual network

Dual Network Service

This service allows you to use the mova service with your FOMA terminal phone number. You can switch between FOMA and mova depending on the service area.

- You cannot use the FOMA service and mova service concurrently.
- Switch the Dual Network Service from the terminal which is not using the service.

1 [−/] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Dual network" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Dual network switching]
Switch from mova to FOMA to make the FOMA terminal available.

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status.

Note

- To switch from FOMA to mova, operate from the mova terminal.

<Dual network switching>

- Switching the network during communication forcibly terminates the connection.

English guidance

English Guidance

The voice guidance played when a network service such as the Voice mail service is activated or when the FOMA terminal is out of service area can be played in English.

■ Outgoing call (Guidance to you)

Language	Description
Japanese	Play the guidance in Japanese.
English	Play the guidance in English.

■ Incoming call (Guidance to the caller)

Language	Description
Japanese	Play the guidance in Japanese.
Japanese+ English	Play the guidance in Japanese first then in English.
English+ Japanese	Play the guidance in English first then in Japanese.

- When the caller is using this service at the same time, the caller's settings for making calls have precedence over the receiver's settings for receiving calls. For example, if the receiver sets the language to Japanese+English and the caller does not set to English, the English guidance will not be played.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "English guidance" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Guidance setting]
Set the guidance.

Outgoing+ Incoming call	:	Set the language for incoming and outgoing calls. Select the language after selecting "Yes".
Outgoing call	:	Set the language for outgoing calls. Select the language after selecting "Yes".
Incoming call	:	Set the language for incoming calls. Select the language after selecting "Yes".

[Check guidance setting]
Check the current setting of the guidance setting.

Service numbers

Service Numbers

You can make a call to docomo Information Center or contact for Repairs.

- Depending on your UIM, the items displayed may differ or some items may not be displayed.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Service numbers" ▶ Perform the following operations

[ドコモ故障問合せ (Repairs)]
Make a call for Repairs.

[ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General Inquiries)]
Make a call to docomo Information Center.

Remote control

Setting Remote Control

You can control the Voice mail or Call forwarding service, etc. through a fixed line/pay phone with the touch tone system or a DOCOMO mobile phone.

- To use the Voice mail or Call forwarding service from overseas, Remote control must be activated beforehand.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Remote control" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the Remote control.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the Remote control.

[Check setting]
Check the setting status of the Remote control.

Multi number

Multi Number

This service allows you to use up to 2 extra phone numbers, Additional number1 and Additional number2, as your FOMA terminal in addition to the basic subscription phone number.

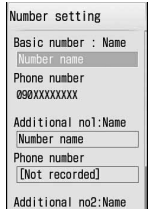
- On the Dialing/Incoming screen, names corresponding to the Multi Number (Basic number/Additional number1/Additional number2) appear.
- When you dial from Dialed calls or Received calls, the previously dialed or received Multi Number is displayed, and this number is used to dial.

Number setting

Registering Additional Numbers

You can register or set a name, a number, and a ring tone for additional numbers.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Multi number" ▶ "Number setting" ▶ Perform the following operations



Number setting screen

[Basic number: Name]
Register a name for the Basic number.

[Phone number]
Display your phone number (Basic number).

[Additional no1: Name]
Register a name for the Additional number1.

[Phone number]
Register a phone number for the Additional number1.

[Additional no2: Name]
Register a name for the Additional number2.

[Phone number]
Register a phone number for the Additional number2.

2 [Done]

Setting Primary Number

You can set a registered additional number as the primary number used for making calls.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Multi number" ▶ "Set multi number" ▶ "Basic number"/"Additional number1"/"Additional number2" ▶ "Yes"

Checking Primary Number Settings

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Multi number" ▶ "Check setting" ▶ "Yes"

Setting Caller ID for Each Call

1 Enter a phone number

2 [−] [Menu] ▶ "Multi number" ▶ Select a name for the additional number

3 [Call]

Setting Ring Tone and Image

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Multi number" ▶ "Ring tone & image setting" ▶ Select the additional number to set ▶ Perform the following operations

- ●[List]: List of items is displayed.

Additional number setting screen

[Individual setting]
Select whether to set the ring tone or image.

[Ring alert]*
Set the ring tone.

MUSIC	:	Press ● to move the cursor to the lower field, and select from Chaku-Uta Full® songs saved in "Music" of "Data box".→P256 Go to Step 3 in "Setting a Chaku-Uta Full® Song as a Ring Tone" (P251).
i-motion	:	Press ● to move the cursor to the lower field, and select a movie/i-mode movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286
Melody	:	Press ● to move the cursor to the lower field, and select from melodies saved in "Melody" of "Data box".→P293
OFF	:	Set no ring tone.

[incoming image]*
Set an image to be displayed on the incoming call screen.

Image	:	Select an image saved in "My picture" of "Data box".→P276
i-motion	:	Select a movie/i-motion movie saved in "i-motion" of "Data box".→P286

* Can be set when "Individual setting" is set to "ON".

2 [−] [Done]

Note

- If you specify a movie/i-motion with video/sound for "Select ring tone" (P94) or "Call display" (P101), and you select "Terminal setting" for either "Ring alert" or "incoming image", the movie/i-motion is played in prior to this setting when an applicable voice/video call arrives.

Additional service (USSD Registration)

Saving and Using Services

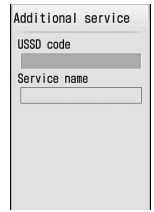
When DOCOMO offers a new network service, you can add the service into the menu. Up to 10 new network services can be saved.

Adding Services

Save a service name and "Service code (USSD)" provided by DOCOMO.

- Service code (USSD) is a code to notify the service center.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Additional service" ▶ Move the cursor to "Not recorded" ▶ [Edit] ▶ Perform the following operations



Additional service edit screen

[USSD code]
Save a service code (USSD).

[Service name]
Save a service name.

2 ●[OK]

Additional Service List Screen Sub Menu

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Additional service" ▶ [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Edit]
Edit the selected service.

[Select]*1
Perform the selected service.

[Delete one]*1
Delete the selected service.

[Delete all]*2
Delete all added services.

*1 Appear only when the saved item is selected.
*2 Appear only when more than one item is registered.

Performing Added Services

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Additional service" ▶ Select a service

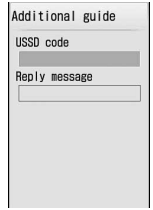
Connect to the service center.

Additional guide

Saving Additional Guidance

You can save up to 10 response messages which correspond to a service code (USSD) returned from the service center when additional services connect to the center using the USSD.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Additional guide" ▶ Move the cursor to "Not recorded" ▶ [−] [Edit] ▶ Perform the following operations



Additional guide edit screen

[USSD code]
Save service code (USSD).

[Reply message]
Save a reply message name.

2 ⦿[OK]

Additional Guide List Screen Sub Menu

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Additional guide" ▶ [−] [Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Edit]
Edit the selected reply message.

[Delete one]*1
Delete the selected/displayed reply message.

[Delete all]*2
Delete all reply messages.

*1 Appear only when the saved item is selected.
*2 Appear only when more than one item is registered.

Overseas Use

Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING) ····· 374
Available Services Overseas ····· 374
Before Use Overseas ····· 375
Making a Call from the Country You Stay ····· 379
Receiving a Call Abroad ····· 381
Setting a Search Method of Telecommunications Carrier ····· Network search mode 382
Setting Telecommunications Carrier to Preferentially Connect to ····· Preferred NW lists 382
Displaying Telecommunications Carrier during Roaming ····· Operator name disp 383
Activating Roaming Guidance ····· Roaming guidance setting 383
Setting Incoming Call to Reject during Roaming ····· Call barring 384
Using Network Services during Roaming ····· 384

Outline of International Roaming (WORLD WING)

International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that allows to talk or make communications over an affiliated international carrier's network using the same phone number as used domestically.
For details of the services available during international roaming, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]". Also, in DOCOMO's International service web site, you can see the latest information on international services and download the latest issue of "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".

Subscribing to WORLD WING

If you subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, a separate subscription is not required.

- If you subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, a separate subscription is not required. However, if you unsubscribed to the FOMA service subscription or canceled the service, a separate subscription is required.
- If you initially subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 and have not subscribed to "WORLD WING", a separate subscription is required.

Available Services Overseas

Available communication services vary depending on the international carrier and/or network used. For details of available communication services in international roaming, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO's International service web site.

Available Communication Services

Service	Description
Voice call	Using the same phone number as used in Japan, you can make/receive calls in another country and make international calls to a third country.
Videophone	You can make or receive an international videophone call with a user of an international carrier of specific 3G or a FOMA terminal user in Japan.
i-mode	You can use i-mode to acquire information from Japan and the country where you are.
i-mode mail	Using the same mail address as used in Japan, you can send/receive i-mode mail.
i-Channel*1	You can download information periodically as in Japan.*2 You can also press the i-Channel assigned key to display a channel list and download detail information.*3
SMS	You can send or receive SMS to/from a FOMA user in Japan and a user of an international carrier other than DOCOMO.
Data communication	You can connect a PC or other devices to use data communication (Packet communication).

*1 May not be available depending on the telecommunication carrier or area.

*2 Auto-update will be automatically suspended if the FOMA terminal is connected to an international carrier. To resume Auto-update of i-Channel overseas, you need to perform i-Channel settings again. However, packet communication charges apply in addition to the monthly charge.
*3 Packet communication charges apply for Auto-update of information on the "Basic Channels".

Before Use Overseas

STEP 1: Preparation before departure
STEP 2: Using FOMA overseas
STEP 3: Setting after returning to Japan

Preparation before Departure

■ Subscription

If you have not subscribed to WORLD WING (P374), subscribe to the service.

- Install a UIM with which the subscription to WORLD WING was made into the FOMA terminal.

■ Communication services, etc. in countries and regions

For information such as countries, areas, or telecommunication carriers available, visit DOCOMO's International service web site.

■ Charging

- Cautions when handling the AC adapter→P22
- Charging using the AC adapter→P44, P45

■ Using i-mode

You have to configure "International Settings" in advance. Select "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶ "Options" ▶ "International Settings" ▶ "i-mode services Settings" to display the setup screen. You can configure settings regarding i-mode on this screen.

■ Setting network services

You can activate or deactivate the subscribed network services overseas. The following network services can be accessed:

- Caller ID Notification service*1 *2
- Voice Mail service*1 *3
- Call Forwarding service*1 *3
- Caller ID Request service*1 *3
- Call Waiting*1
- English Guidance*1
- Nuisance Call Blocking service*1
- Roaming guidance setting*1 *3
- Call barring

*1 May be unavailable in some service areas.
*2 Caller ID may not be sent correctly or not be sent at all.
*3 To operate overseas, you need to activate "Remote Control" (P367, P386) before leaving Japan.

■ Convenient functions and services available overseas

Functions/ services	Description
Roaming guide(Int.)	The other party is notified with a voice guidance that the terminal is in international roaming.
Call barring	Reject reception during international roaming.
Dual clock display	You can view the date and time in two countries or regions, and cities simultaneously.
Unit converter	You can convert currencies by setting an exchange rate.

Continued on next page

■ Recommended guide books in addition to this manual

Title	Description
Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version	This book describes how to use i-mode and i-mode mail overseas and their fees, etc.
Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]	This book describes details about the international roaming service including contents of the service, usage fees, and precautions.
Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]	This book describes contents, settings, precautions, and such of network services.

■ Billing of charges

Overseas charges are billed with your monthly charge. Note that they may appear on a billing invoice of the next month or later due to the situation of the international carrier of your overseas location. Also note that the billing invoice for charges in the same charging period may be sent to you in a different month.

Note

- For oversea use of the FOMA terminal, use the Quick Manual (Overseas Use) at the end of this User's Guide for an easy reference of operations.

Overseas Use

This FOMA terminal only supports 3G service area. The FOMA terminal cannot be used in GSM/GPRS service area.

■ Network switching

By default, "Network search mode" is set to "Auto". An available network is automatically set overseas.

- To switch networks manually→P382

■ Display on screen

The network name does not appear when the terminal is connected to the FOMA network in Japan.

- To display the roaming network name→P383

The connected network name appears.

Inquiries from abroad

For loss or theft of FOMA terminal, accumulated amount settlement, or terminal failure while overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" at the back of this manual. Call and communication fees are charged to you even after the terminal was lost or stolen.

- Add "International Access Code (Table 1)", or "International Prefix Number for the Universal Number (Table 2)" that is assigned to the country you stay, to the head of your number for inquiries.
- For the latest information on the International access code or the International prefix number for universal numbers, visit the DOCOMO's International web site.

Checking Overseas Usage

You can check the overseas usage on this FOMA terminal.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Int'l Service Guide"

■ Key operations while displaying the guide

Key	Description
	Display the previous/next page
	Enlarge the page
	Return to the previous ratio
	Move the display position when the image is enlarged. • The entire image and the displayed area appear at the edge of the screen.

Country Codes of Major Countries

Area	Code
Australia	61
Austria	43
Belgium	32
Brazil	55
Canada	1
China	86
Czech	420
Egypt	20
Fiji	679
Finland	358

Area	Code
Malaysia	60
Maldives	960
Netherlands	31
New Caledonia	687
New Zealand	64
Norway	47
Peru	51
Philippines	63
Russia	7
Singapore	65

Area	Code
France	33
Germany	49
Greece	30
Hong Kong	852
Hungary	36
India	91
Indonesia	62
Italy	39
Japan	81
Korea	82
Macau	853

Area	Code
Spain	34
Sweden	46
Switzerland	41
Tahiti	689
Taiwan	886
Thailand	66
Turkey	90
U.K.	44
U.S.A.	1
Vietnam	84

- The codes may be changed.
- For the codes of the other countries and details, visit the DOCOMO's International service web site.
- From a fixed line phone, International phone call charges to Japan apply.

Continued on next page

International Access Code for Major Countries (Table 1)

International access codes for major countries are as follows:

Area	Code
Australia	0011
Belgium	00
Brazil	0021/ 0014
Canada	011
China	00
Czech	00
Denmark	00
Finland	00
France	00
Germany	00
Greece	00
Hong Kong	001
Hungary	00
India	00
Indonesia	001
Ireland	00
Italy	00
Korea	001
Luxembourg	00
Macau	00

Area	Code
Malaysia	00
Monaco	00
Netherlands	00
New Zealand	00
Norway	00
Philippines	00
Poland	00
Portugal	00
Russia	810
Singapore	001
Spain	00
Sweden	00
Switzerland	00
Taiwan	002
Thailand	001
Turkey	00
U.A.E.	00
U.K.	00
U.S.A.	011
Vietnam	00

International Prefix Number for the Universal Number (Table 2)

International prefix numbers for the universal number are as follows:

Area	Code
Argentina	00
Australia	0011
Austria	00
Belgium	00
Brazil	0021
Bulgaria	00
Canada	011
China	00
Colombia	009
Denmark	00
Finland	990
France	00
Germany	00
Hong Kong	001
Hungary	00
Ireland	00
Israel	014
Italy	00

Area	Code
Korea	001
Luxembourg	00
Malaysia	00
Netherlands	00
Norway	00
New Zealand	00
Peru	00
Philippines	00
Portugal	00
Singapore	001
South Africa	09
Spain	00
Sweden	00
Switzerland	00
Taiwan	00
Thailand	001
U.K.	00
U.S.A.	011

- The codes may be changed.
- For the codes of the other countries and details, visit the DOCOMO's International service web site.
- Domestic call charges for your overseas stay may apply to calls.

- If you make a call from a hotel, you may be charged for the telephone usage from the hotel. In that case, you are responsible for the charge.
- If you make a call from a mobile phone, the domestic call charge for your overseas stay applies to that call.
- The universal numbers are only available in the countries listed in "International Prefix Number for the Universal Number".

Setting after Returning to Japan

When you return to Japan, the FOMA terminal automatically connects to the FOMA network and appears at the top of the screen.

- If the FOMA network is not connected, check whether "Network search mode" is set to "Auto".→P382

Making a Call from the Country You Stay

When you and the other party are using a telecommunication carrier capable of handling FOMA videophone calls, international videophone calls are also available.

- For information about the countries or areas, and telecommunication carriers that support FOMA videophone calls, visit the DOCOMO's International service web site.
- Depending on the terminal of the other party of an international videophone call, the video streaming may fail, or the connection may not be established.
- Even if the Caller ID notification is set, the Caller ID may not be notified or phone number is not displayed correctly, depending on the telecommunication carrier. In this case, you cannot make a call using the Received calls.

Making an International Call (Including to Japan)

Make a call prefixing "+" and a country code to the other party's phone number.

- Press [0] for 1+ seconds to enter "+".
- To call an overseas "WORLD WING" user, dial "81" as the country code of Japan.

1 [0](for 1+ seconds) ▶ Enter "Country Code - Area Code (City Code) - Phone Number"

- When making a call to a fixed line phone in Japan from abroad, enter "81" as the country code.
- If the Area Code (City Code) starts with "0", remove the "0". (In a few countries/regions such as Italy, "0" must not be removed.)
- When making a call to a mobile phone or PHS in Japan, omit the leading "0" as well.
- Country code→P377

2 [Call]

■ **To make a videophone call**

Press [−/](Menu] ▶ "Video phone call".

Making a Call Easily to Japan

If you make a call using an entry in Redial logs, Received call logs, or the Phonebook in which a phone number with a leading "0" is recorded/registered, the leading "0" is automatically replaced with "+ Country code (+81)".

- Your terminal is configured to enter "+81" (country code of Japan) automatically by default.→P63

1 Display an entry in logs/Phonebook

■ **To use the Redial logs**
Display the Redial list screen (P56) or the Redial detail screen (P57).

■ **To use the Received call logs**
Display the Received calls list screen (P58) or the Received call detail screen (P58).

■ **To use the Phonebook**
Display the Phonebook list screen (P87) or the Phonebook detail screen (P87).

2 Select an entry in the history or Phonebook ▶ 📞

■ **When two or more phone numbers are saved in the Phonebook entry on the Phonebook list screen**
Press ● to select a phone number to dial.

■ **When two or more phone numbers are saved in the Phonebook entry on the Phonebook detail screen**
Press ● to display the phone number to call, and press −[Call].

3 📞

- The Dialing confirmation screen displays a phone number prefixed with "+ Country code".

■ **To make a videophone call**
Press −[Menu] ▶ "Video phone call".

4 "Dial"

Original number : The leading "0" will not be replaced with "+ Country code".
Cancel : Dialing will be canceled.

Note

- This function is available only out of the FOMA network service area (Example: during international roaming).

Selecting Registered Country Code and Making an International Call (Including to Japan)

Register frequently used country names and country codes in "Country code list" of "Int'l dial assist" (P63) to make a call quickly.

1 Enter "Area code (City code) - other party's phone number"

2 −[Menu] ▶ "Int. call"

The Country code selection screen appears.

3 Select a country code

"+ Country code" is added at the beginning of the entered phone number.

- When the entered phone number starts with "0", it is replaced with "+ Country code".

4 📞

■ **To make a videophone call**
Press −[Menu] ▶ "Video phone call".

Note

- By default, 22 country codes are stored in the Select country screen. Country codes can be added.→P64
- Available operations on the Country code selection screen (P64) are the same as on the Country code list screen.

Making a Domestic Call while Overseas

Make a call by dialing the other party's phone number from the area code (city code).

- If you and the other party are using WORLD WING overseas, make an international call using the same steps in "Making an International Call (Including to Japan)" (P379) even if you and the other party are in the same country or region.
- When "Auto international dial" is set to "ON", the Dialing confirmation screen appears if a call is made to a phone number whose area code (city code) starts with "0" from an entry in the Phonebook or Dialed/Redialed calls list. In this case, select "Original number" to make a call.

When you and the other party are using a telecommunication carrier that handles FOMA videophone calls, international videophone calls are available by pressing [−] [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call" after the international call dialing procedure.

- For information such as available countries or telecommunication carriers, visit the DOCOMO's "International service web page".
- Depending on the terminal of the other party of an international videophone call, the video streaming may fail, or the connection may not be established.

Receiving a Call Abroad

1 A call arrives

The ring tone sounds.

- [ ]: Place the call on hold.→P70

2 [ ] or [−] [Answer]

Answer the call.

■ To answer a videophone call using a camera image

Press [ ].

■ To answer a videophone call using an alternate image

Press ●[Image].

3 To terminate the call, [ ]

Note

- In some countries or regions, you may be charged also for incoming calls.
- When a call arrived during international roaming, the call will be forwarded internationally from Japan. The caller is charged for the call fee to Japan and the receiver is charged for the reception fee.

Making calls to your FOMA terminal from Japan

You can receive calls to your phone number as in Japan.

Receiving a call to your FOMA terminal from an overseas caller

You can receive a call via Japan regardless of where you are. Similarly to making an international call to Japan, you can be called using the following steps.

Make a call by entering "International Access Code*1 -81*2 your phone number excluding the leading "0"*3"

*1 When dialing to a mobile phone, you may be able to dial by entering "+" instead of the International Access Code.

*2 Enter the country code of Japan.

*3 Enter "90-XXXX-XXXX" if the number starts with "090" or "80-XXXX-XXXX" if it starts with "080".

Network search mode

Setting a Search Method of Telecommunications Carrier

Select a search mode to find available networks when the network is switched overseas.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Network" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Network search mode]

Auto : Automatically search and set the network.

Manual : The Network search screen appears. Select and configure one of the networks in the list.
▶"Yes" ▶ Select a network
- Available networks are followed by the circular mark.

Network re-search : Search for networks using the same method (Auto/Manual) as the previous search.

[Preferred NW lists]

You can prioritize networks to be searched or set.→P382

[Operator name disp]

Set whether to show the name of the currently connected network on the Stand-by display.→P383

[Host selection]

Specify a host other than i-mode.→P186

[SMS center]

Set the SMS center address.→P166

Note

- After returning to Japan, if the network status indicator remains out of service area, set "Network search mode" to "Auto".

<Network search mode>
- Searching for networks may take a while.
- When this option is set to "Auto", networks will be searched automatically when the FOMA terminal is powered on or status of the FOMA terminal becomes out of service area.

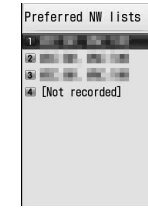
Preferred NW lists

Setting Telecommunications Carrier to Preferentially Connect to

You can register up to 20 networks to be searched or set by priority.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Network" ▶ "Preferred NW lists"

- If networks have been already registered, the network names appear in order of precedence.
- ●[Change]: Replace the selected network with another network.



Preferred NW lists screen

2 [−] [Add] ▶ Perform the following operations

[UPLMN manual select]

Add a network to the Preferred NW list by entering "MCC (country code)" and "MNC (network code)".

▶ Enter an MCC and MNC ▶ [−] [Done] ▶ "Yes"

[UPLMN select by list]
Select and add a network from the default network list.
▶ Select a network ▶ "Yes"
- [−]/[Country]: Select a country name to specify an available network in the country from the list.

[Set VPLMN to UPLMN]
Add the network currently connected.

Note
- Depending on the signal strength, a network that is not registered may be connected.
- The settings of this function are saved on the UIM.

Preferred NW Lists Screen Sub Menu

1 Preferred NW lists screen (P382) ▶ [−]/[Menu] ▶ Perform the following operations

[Add new]
Search and add a newly found network to the selected network. Go to Step 2 in "Setting Telecommunications Carrier to Preferentially Connect to" (P382).

[Change]
Replace the selected network setting with another network's. Go to Step 2 in "Setting Telecommunications Carrier to Preferentially Connect to" (P382).

[Delete]
Delete the selected network.

[Move up]*
Move the selected network one up in the list.

[Move down]*
Move the selected network one down in the list.

* May not appear depending on the current position in the list.

Operator name disp

Displaying Telecommunications Carrier during Roaming

Set whether to show the name of the currently connected network on the Stand-by display.

1 [−]/[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Network" ▶ "Operator name disp" ▶ "ON"/"OFF" ▶ "Yes"

Roaming guidance setting

Activating Roaming Guidance

Before leaving Japan, you can set to play a voice prompt that indicates you are overseas.
- Setting must be done while in Japan.
- The service may not be operable when "圏外" is displayed.

Continued on next page

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Roaming guidance setting" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the roaming guidance.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the roaming guidance.

[Check setting]
Check the current setting status.

2 "Yes"

Note
- When deactivating the guidance, a ring tone set by the international carrier sounds.
- Some international carriers may not offer this option.
- Even if you activated this option, a voice guidance in a foreign language may be played due to the international carrier's services.

Call barring

Setting Incoming Call to Reject during Roaming

You can set to restrict all incoming calls, messages, etc, during roaming. You can also set to restrict only incoming videophone calls.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Call barring" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate-roam]
Activate incoming call restriction.
▶ Select from the following options ▶ Enter the Network security code ▶ "Yes"

Barring all incoming calls : Restrict all incoming calls.
Data calls barring : Restrict only incoming videophone calls.

[Deactivate-roam]
Deactivate incoming call restriction.
▶ Enter the Network security code ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting-roam]
Check the current setting status.

Note
- This may not be set depending on international carriers.

Using Network Services during Roaming

You can use network services of the Voice mail service, Call forwarding service, and Roaming guidance overseas.
- To use Voice mail (int.) or Call forwarding service (Int.), subscription to Voice mail or Call forwarding service is required.
- To use the network service overseas, activate Remote Control beforehand.→P367
- International call charges to Japan apply.
- The services may not be operable in some countries.

Voice mail (Int.)

Operating the Voice Mail Service Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Voice mail service overseas. You can also play recorded messages or change the settings following a voice guidance.

- The service may not be operable when "圏外" is displayed.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Voice mail (Int.)" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the Voice mail service.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the Voice mail service.

[Play messages]
Play a Voice mail message.

[Voice mail setting]
Change the settings following a voice guidance.

[Set ring time]
Set time before connecting to the Voice mail service center after a call arrives.

2 "Yes"

3 Operate according to the voice guidance

Note

- To use this service out of service area at your overseas location, you need to turn off the FOMA terminal where signals can be received in advance.

Call forwarding (Int.)

Operating the Call Forwarding Service Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Call forwarding service overseas.

- The service may not be operable when "圏外" is displayed.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Call forwarding (Int.)" ▶ Perform the following operations

[Activate]
Activate the Call forwarding service.

[Deactivate]
Deactivate the Call forwarding service.

[Call forwarding settings]
Check the current setting status.

2 "Yes"

3 Operate according to the voice guidance

Note

- To use this service out of service area at your overseas location, you need to turn off the FOMA terminal where signals can be received in advance.

Roaming guide(Int.)

Operating the Roaming Guidance Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Roaming guidance overseas.

- The service may not be operable when "圏外" is displayed.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Roaming guide(Int.)"

2 "Yes"

3 Operate according to the voice guidance

Remote access setting(Int.)

Setting Remote Control Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Remote access overseas.

- The service may not be operable when "圏外" is displayed.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Remote access setting(Int.)"

2 "Yes"

3 Operate according to the voice guidance

Caller ID request(Int.)

Operating the Caller ID Request Service Overseas

You can activate/deactivate the Caller ID request service overseas.

- The service may not be operable when "圏外" is displayed.
- While you are abroad and even if "Caller ID request" is activated, "Not support" may be displayed and a call may arrives.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Caller ID request(Int.)"

2 "Yes"

3 Operate according to the voice guidance

PC Connection

Data Communications Available with the FOMA Terminal ····· 388
Precautions before Use ····· 389
Before Using Data Communication ····· 389
Flow of Setup for Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication) ····· 390
Flow of Setup for Data Communication ····· 391
AT Commands ····· 391
Using CD-ROM ····· 392
Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink ····· 392

For details about data communication, see "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF format) contained in the bundled CD-ROM or available at the DOCOMO web site.
Adobe® Reader® is required to open "Manual for PC Connection" in PDF format. If the program is not installed on your PC, install Adobe® Reader® contained in the bundled CD-ROM.
For details about using the program, see "Adobe Reader Help".

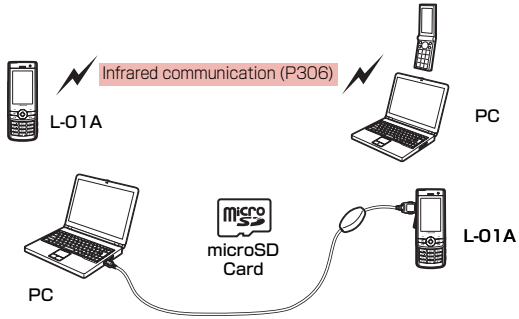
Data Communications Available with the FOMA Terminal

When you connect your FOMA terminal to a PC, you can use packet communication as well as data transmission (OBEX™ Communication).

- The FOMA terminal does not support 64K data communication.
- The FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication.
- The FOMA terminal does not support DOCOMO's PDA, "musea" and "sigmarion Ⅲ".

Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication)

You can exchange data such as images, songs, Phonebook entries, or mail with another FOMA terminal or a PC.



- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional)
- microSD Card (P296)
  DOCOMO keitai datalink (P392)

Packet communication

Communication charges*1 are based on the amount of data sent and received. It is suitable for use to exchange data only when you want while keeping the network connected. DOCOMO provides a best-effort service in which communication speeds change in response to the communication environment and network congestion. Using an access point of DOCOMO internet connection service such as "mopera U" allows you to use high-speed communication at the maximum rate of 7.2Mbps for receiving and 384kbps for sending (based on best-effort connection)*2.

*1 Communication charges become high when you exchange a large amount of data.

*2 ·The maximum speed of 7.2Mbps for receiving and 384kbps for sending are theoretical values and they do not show the actual performance. The actual performance depends on your communication environment and network congestion.
· If you connect to an area which is out of the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area or an access point that does not support HIGH-SPEED, the connection for both sending and receiving will be limited to 384kbps at maximum rate.

L-01A can use an access point, even while in overseas, that supports W-CDMA packet communication to perform data communication.

Precautions before Use

Internet Service Provider Fees

Fees to an Internet service provider (ISP) are required to connect to the Internet. These connection fees, paid to the ISP, are separate from the FOMA service fees. For detailed information on connection fees, contact your ISP.
You can use DOCOMO Internet connection services; "mopera U". A separate subscription (fee-based) is required to use "mopera U".

Setting the Internet Connection

For packet communication, use an access point compatible with packet communication.

- DoPa access points cannot be connected.
- For service contents of "mopera" and its connection settings, visit "mopera" web site.
  http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html (Japanese only)

Conditions for Packet Communication

The following conditions* must be met to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC and perform communication. However, even if the conditions are met, communication may still not be possible depending on the amount of traffic at the base station or the strength of the signal.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) must be available on the PC.
- The FOMA terminal must be in the FOMA service area.
- The access point must support FOMA packet communication.

* These conditions are for domestic use in Japan.

Before Using Data Communication

Operating Environment

The following operating environment is required for a PC to use data communication.

Item	Requirements
PC main unit	• PC-AT compatible device with a CD-ROM capable drive • USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1/2.0 compliant) • Display resolution of 800x600 dots, High Color (65,536 colors) or higher recommended
OS*1*2	• Windows Vista, Windows XP, or Windows 2000 (Japanese versions)
Memory requirement*3	• Windows Vista: 512MB or more • Windows XP: 128MB or more • Windows 2000: 64MB or more
Hard disk space*3*4	• Available space of 5MB or more

*1 The operation on an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.
*2 The operating environment of DOCOMO Connection Manager is Windows 2000 SP4 or later, or Windows XP SP2 or later. For detailed operating environment, check DOCOMO web site.
*3 Memory requirement or hard disk space may vary depending on the PC system configuration.
*4 DOCOMO Connection Manager requires 15MB or more.

Continued on next page

A warning screen may appear when you insert the bundled CD-ROM into a PC. This warning appears as a result of a security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, however, there is no problem.
Click [はい (Yes)].

Required Device

To use data communications, the following devices and software are required in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC:

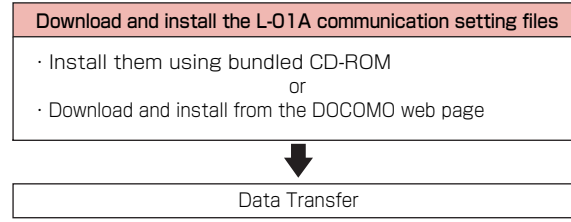
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- CD-ROM for L-01A (supplied)

Note

- Purchase the exclusive FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 or FOMA USB Cable . A generic USB cable for PC is not available because it does not fit the FOMA USB connector.
- The FOMA terminal may not work properly with a USB HUB.

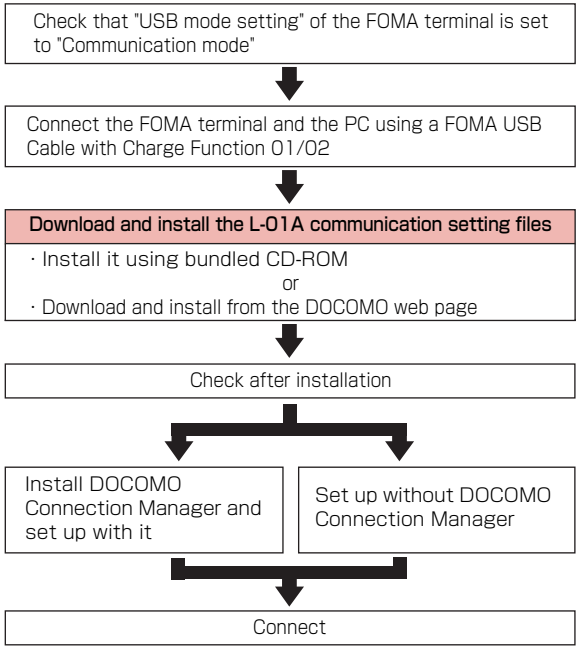
Flow of Setup for Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication)

Install the L-01A communication setting files to use the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).



Flow of Setup for Data Communication

The flow for preparing to connect the FOMA terminal and a PC for performing packet communication is as follows. For details, see "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF format).



Note

- You can also download "L-01A Communication Setup Files (Driver)" or "DOCOMO Connection Manager" that are contained on "CD-ROM for L-01A" from DOCOMO's web site.
  http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/support/download/

L-01A communication setting files and DOCOMO Connection Manager

L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver)

This software (driver) is required for packet communication or file transfer when the FOMA terminal and a PC are connected using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02.

DOCOMO Connection Manager

This software facilitates simple configuration or the settings for a packet communication connection (APN), dial-up connection, etc.

AT Commands

AT commands are used to check the FOMA terminal function settings or status using a PC. For details, see "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF format) in the bundled CD-ROM.

Using CD-ROM

The bundled CD-ROM contains applications to perform data communication with the FOMA terminal, "Manual for PC Connection", and "Kuten Code List" (PDF). For details, see the bundled CD-ROM.

Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink

"DOCOMO keitai datalink" is a software to allow you to make a backup of "Phonebook" or "Mail" on your FOMA terminal and edit them. This software is provided at the DOCOMO web site. For details and to download the software, visit the following web site.
http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Japanese only)

Note

- For details about downloading, transferable data, operating environment such as supported OS, installing, operating, or restrictions, visit the above web site. For operations after installing the software, see Help of the software. To use DOCOMO keitai datalink, a USB Connection Cable (optional) is required.

Appendix/Troubleshooting

Menu List ····· 394
List of Characters Assigned to Dial Keys ····· 406
Multiaccess Combinations ····· 407
Multitask Combinations ····· 408
Service Available for the FOMA Terminal ····· 410
Introduction of Options and Related Devices ··· 411

Interfacing to External Devices

Introduction of Movie Playing Software ····· 411

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting ····· 412
If Error Message Appears Mentioned Below ···· 414
Warranty and After-Sales Service ····· 421
i-mode Fault Diagnosis Site ····· 423
Updating Software ····· Software update 423
Protecting the FOMA terminal from Harmful Data ····· Scanning function 426
Main Specifications ····· 428
Number of Items that can be Stored, Registered and Protected in the FOMA Terminal ····· 434
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phone ··· 435
Export Administration Regulations ····· 436
Intellectual Property Right ····· 437

Menu List

Functions with ■ indicated in "Default settings:" column are those that can be initialized to their defaults with "Reset settings".→P123

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
✉ Mail	Inbox	Inbox	"♪Welcome Mail♪" message	P143
		MessageR	None	P161
		MessageF	None	P161
	Outbox		Empty	P144
	Unsent message		Empty	P144
	Compose message		—	P128
	Check new messages		—	P139
	Receive option		—	P138
	SMS	Compose SMS	—	P163
		Check new SMS	—	P165
	Template		Pre-installed data only	P134
	Mail setting	Communication	Receive option set: OFF Receive attach file: All items selected Check new messages: All items selected	P157
✉ Mail	Mail setting	Edit	Edit header: None Edit signature: None Edit quotation: >Auto attach: "Signature" selected	P157
		Display	Font size: Medium Scroll: 1 line Mail list view: 2 lines Folder security: None Melody auto play: ON Receiving display: Alarm mode	P157
		Mail group	Empty	P158
		SMS	SMS report request: OFF SMS validity period: 3 days SMS input character: JP/KR(70Chara)	P165
		Others	Check settings: — Reset settings: —	P159
i-mode	iMenu		—	P169
	Bookmark		Empty	P176
	Screen memo		Empty	P178
	Last URL		—	P171
	Go to location	Input address	—	P174
		URL history	None	P175

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
i-mode	i-Channel	i-Channel list	Basic channels	P191
		Ticker setting	Ticker display: ON Ticker speed: Normal Ticker font size: Standard Ticker font color: Black	P191
		Reset i-Channel	—	P191
	MessageR/F	Inbox	"♪Welcome Mail♪" message	P143
		MessageR	None	P161
		MessageF	None	P161
	Check new messages		—	P160
	i-mode setting	Communication	Connection timeout: 60 seconds Check new messages: All items selected	P184
		Display	Images: Display Sound effect: ON Use phone info: Use Font size: Standard Scroll: 1 line Message list: 2 lines Auto-display: MessageR preferred Melody auto play: ON	P184

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
i-mode	i-mode setting	i-motion	i-motion auto play: ON i-motion type: Standard type	P189 P189
		Home	Disable, No URL	P185
		Certificates	All valid	P187
		Others	Check settings: — Reset settings: —	P185
	Full browser	Home	—	P194
		Bookmark	Empty	P194
		Last URL	—	P194
		Go to location	Input address: —	P195
			URL history: None	P195
		Full Browser Settings	Communication: - Access Setting: No - Cookie Setting: Valid - Delete Cookie: — - Referer Setting: Send - TLS: Use	P202

Continued on next page

Function name			Default settings	Reference
i-mode	Full browser	Full Browser Settings	View: - Zoom: 100% - Display Mode Setting: Horiz. Scroll Off - Set Image display: ON - PagePilot Display: Activate - Pointer Movement Range: Normal - Pointer Acceleration: Normal - Bookmark Display: Thumbnail - Window Open Guard Setting: Invalid - Script Setting: Valid (notify)	P203
			Home URL: http://www.google.co.jp/	P203
			Others: - Check Settings: – - Reset Settings: –	P204

Function name			Default settings	Reference
i-αppli	Software list		Pre-installed i-αppli only	P263
	i-αppli info	Security error history	None	P271
		Auto start info	None	P271
		Trace info	None	P271
		Standby error info	None	P271
	i-αppli settings	Display SW info	Not display	P263
		Auto start set	ON	P269
		End stand-by display	–	P271
Phonebook &Logs	Add to phonebook		Empty	P78
	Search phonebook		Show all data	P85
	No. of phonebook		–	P91
	Phonebook settings	Default mode	Show all data	P91
		Create domain list	@docomo.ne.jp	P91
		Accept/ Reject list	Accept list: Unregistered Reject list: Unregistered	P91

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Phonebook &Logs	Call/Mail history	Received calls	Empty	P58
		Redial	Empty	P56
		Received mails	Empty	P155
		Sent mails	Empty	P155
	Call duration		—	P334
	Call costs	Check call costs	—	P334
		Set call cost limit	Set limit: OFF	P335
		Delete call cost icon	—	P335
Data box	My picture	i-mode	None	P276
		Camera	None	P276
		Decomail picture	Pre-installed files only	P276
		Decomail picto	Pre-installed files only	P276
		Preinstalled	Pre-installed files only	P276
		Data transfer	None	P276
		Item	Pre-installed files only	P276
		Animation	None	P276
		microSD	—	P276

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Data box	Music	i-mode	None	P256
		Playlists	None	P256
		microSD	—	P256
	Music&Video ch	Distributed program	None	P243
	i-motion	i-mode	None	P286
		Camera	None	P286
		Preinstalled	Pre-installed files only	P286
		Data transfer	None	P286
		microSD	—	P286
	Melody	i-mode	None	P293
		Preinstalled	Pre-installed files only	P293
		Data transfer	None	P293
		microSD	—	P293
	SD-Audio		—	P256

Continued on next page

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
MUSIC	Recent played*		–	P246
	Music player	Music life	Train: All songs, Level 2 Sports timer: All songs, 30 Min. Sleeping: All songs, 30 Min.	P258
		Playlists	Empty	P253
		All songs	Empty	P248
		Artist	Empty	P248
		Genre	Empty	P248
		Album	Empty	P248
	Music&Video ch	Program 1	Empty	P238
		Program 2	Empty	P238
		Set program	–	P238
		Program list	–	P238
		About this service	–	P238
	SD-Audio player	Music life	Train: All songs, Level 2 Sports timer: All songs, 30 Min. Sleeping: All songs, 30 Min.	P258
		Playlists	–	P247

* "Now playing" is displayed when playing music. Select the song to display the Player screen for the song in playback.

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
MUSIC	SD-Audio player	All songs	–	P247
		Artist	–	P247
		Genre	–	P247
		Album	–	P247
1Seg	Activate 1Seg		–	P229
	Booking program list		Empty	P232
	TVlink		Empty	P234
	Channel settings		Empty	P227
	1Seg settings		Subtitles: ON Backlight: 80% Set image display: ON Set effect sound: ON Main/Sub sound: Main+Sub Reset permission display: – Reset 1Seg settings: – Erase storage area: – 1Seg settings status: –	P235
Camera	Photo-mode		–	P209
	Movie-mode		–	P212
	Bar code reader		–	P219
Stationery	Schedule		Empty	P323
	Alarm		Empty	P320
	Memo		Empty	P339
	To do list		Empty	P327

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
30 Stationery	World time		Tokyo	P335
	Calculator		—	P338
	Unit converter	Currency	YEN, USD	P336
		Surface	Square cm, Square m	P337
		Length	mm, cm	P338
		Weight	mg, g	P338
		Temperature	Celsius(℃), Fahrenheit(°F)	P338
		Volume	Milliliter, Liter	P338
		Velocity	km/h, meter/sec	P338
	Remembering dates	Date counter	Empty	P329
		Date search	—	P331
	Stopwatch		—	P336
Settings	Service	Voice mail	Activate: —	P359
			Set ring time: —	P359
			Deactivate: —	P359
			Check setting: —	P359
			Play messages: —	P359
			Voice mail setting: —	P359

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Service	Voice mail	Check messages: —	P359
			Notify missed call: —	P359
			Del. voice mail icon: —	P359
			Tone/Vibration message notification: No	P359
		Call waiting	Activate: —	P360
			Deactivate: —	P360
			Check setting: —	P360
		Call forwarding	Activate: —	P362
			Deactivate: —	P362
			Register the forwarding number: —	P362
			Setting if forwarding number busy: —	P362
			Check setting: —	P362

Continued on next page

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Service	Nuisance call blocking	Register nuisance caller: —	P363
			Register selected number: —	P363
			Delete all entries: —	P363
			Delete last entry: —	P363
			Check the number of entries: —	P363
		Caller ID notification	Activate/ Deactivate: —	P364
			Check setting: —	P364
		Caller ID request	Activate: —	P364
			Deactivate: —	P364
			Check setting: —	P364
		Set in-call arrival act	Activate: —	P365
			Deactivate: —	P365
			Check setting: —	P365
		Arrival call act	Answer	P365

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Service	Others	Additional service: Not recorded	P370
			Additional guide: Not recorded	P371
			English guidance: —	P366
			Service numbers: —	P367
			Roaming guidance setting: —	P383
			Multi number: —	P368
			Dual network: —	P366
			Remote control: —	P367
	Sounds& Vibration	Select ring tone	Voice call: Ringtone01 Video call: Ringtone02 Mail: Message01 MessageR: Message02 MessageF: Message03 SMS: Message04	P94

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Sounds& Vibration	Select effect tone	Keypad tone: Keypad tone 1 Slide tone: Slide tone 1 Dial sound: Digital tone Power ON: Power on Power OFF: Power off Low battery alert: ON	P97
		Volume	Incoming call: Level 4 Mail/Message/SMS: Level 4 Alarm/Schedule: Level 4 Keypad tone: Level 2 Slide tone: Level 2 Dial sound: Level 2 Power ON/OFF: Level 4 Popup tone: Silent Receiver volume: Level 4	P95
		Vibrator	Incoming call: OFF Mail/Message/SMS: OFF Alarm/Schedule: OFF Touch media: ON Pop-up: OFF Power ON/OFF: OFF	P96
		Manner mode set	General manner	P99
		Mail ring duration	1 cycle	P98
		Set mute ring(sec.)	OFF	P121

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Display	Stand-by display	Wallpaper: Image, flashw_dance Display items: Digital Clock Clock type: Normal	P99
		Call display	Incoming voice call: Image, incoming_call_white Incoming video call: Image, incoming_call_white	P101
		Wake-up display	Image, pwron	P102
		Dialing	Motion Dialing: Lawn Dialing Quick Search: ON Dialing font color: —	P102
		Menu settings	Simple menu: OFF Menu customization: OFF Menu guidance: OFF	P105 P104 P104
		Backlight	Display duration: 20 sec. Display brightness: 100% AC connected: Display setting	P103
		Handset theme	White, Grid	P104

Continued on next page

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Display	Lighting LED	Lighting LED: ON Incoming voice call: Aurora Incoming video call: Aurora New mail: Green&Gold New MessageR: Green&Gold New MessageF: Green&Gold New SMS: Green&Gold New Voice mail: Aurora New Record message: Aurora Playing music: Blue&Pink&Aqua Alarm: Blue&Pink&Aqua Schedule/To do: Blue&Pink&Aqua During call: OFF Missed call: ON Unread message: ON	P106

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Call/VT/ Dialing	Incoming call	Answer mode: SEND key only Auto answer: - Auto answering: OFF Accept/Reject call: - Accept/Reject set: Accept - Reject unknown: OFF Anonymous caller: (All items) Disable On hold tone: Hold tone 1 Display phonebook image: ON	P68 P342 P118, P120 P122 P120 P70 P103
		Videophone	Videophone set: - Display setting: Other - Me - Send camera image: ON - Screen size: Large - Visual preference: Normal - Light: Always ON - Auto redial as voice: OFF - Hand-free switch: ON Substitute image: Default Response hold image: Default Holding image: Default	P75 P75 P75 P75 P75 P75 P75 P74 P75 P75

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Call/VT/ Dialing	Call feature	Reconnect alarm : Alarm OFF Quality alarm: Alarm OFF Holding tone: Hold tone 1 Close setting: End the call Noise reduction: ON	P66 P98 P70 P69 P66
		Self mode	OFF	P116
		Prefix dial	PREFIX 1: 009130010 PREFIX 2/ PREFIX 3: Empty	P65
		Sub address setting	ON	P65
		Earphone	Switch call: OFF	P341
	Lock/ Security	Lock	Lock all: Not set Call/Mail lock: OFF Data access lock: OFF	P113 P115 P116
		Secret mode	OFF	P118
		Display Call/Mail logs	(All items) ON	P118
		Auto key lock	When LCD off	P117

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Lock/ Security	Change security code	Terminal Security code (4 digits): 0000	P112
		PIN code	–	P112
		Scanning function	Update: – Set auto-update: – Set scan: - Scan: ON - Message scan: ON Version: 1.1	P426 P427 P426 P426 P428
	Int'l roaming	Network	Network search mode: Auto Preferred NW lists: (Displays the contents saved in the UIM) Operator name disp: ON Host selection: i-mode SMS center: DOCOMO	P382 P382 P383 P186 P166
		Voice mail (Int.)	–	P385
		Call forwarding (Int.)	–	P385
		Remote access setting(Int.)	–	P386
		Caller ID request(Int.)	–	P386

Continued on next page

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Int'l roaming	Roaming guide(Int.)	–	P386
		Call barring	–	P384
		Int'l Service Guide	–	P377
	Int'l dial assist	Auto assist setting	Auto	P63
		IDD prefix setting	IDD prefix name: WORLD CALL IDD prefix code: 009130010	P63
		Auto international dial	Auto international dial: ON Target country: Japan +81	P63
		Country code list	Australia 61, Brazil 55, Canada 1, China 86, England 44, France 33, Germany 49, Hong Kong 852, India 91, Indonesia 62, Italy 39, Japan 81, Korea 82, Malaysia 60, Netherlands 31, Philippines 63, Singapore 65, Spain 34, Taiwan 886, Thailand 66, USA 1, Vietnam 84	P64

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
Settings	Date&Time	Set Date&Time	Auto time adjust: ON	P49
		Date&Time format	Date format: YYYY/MM/DD Time format: 24-hour	P107
		Hour indication	Set sound: OFF	P343
	マルチリンガル (Select language)		日本語 (Japanese)	P48
	Others	Character input	–	P351 P353 P355 P356
		Memory status	–	P343
		Power saver mode	OFF	P103
		Reset/ Clear	–	P123
		Software update	–	P423
		USB mode setting	Communication mode*	P305
		Battery level	–	P46
Own number			Empty	P332

* When the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) is disconnected, the USB mode automatically returns to "Communication mode" even if the setting has been changed.

	Function name		Default settings	Reference
LifeKit	Bar code reader		–	P219
	Receive Ir data	Receive	–	P308
		Receive all	–	P308
	microSD	PIM	–	P300
		Data update	–	P302
		Memory info.	–	P303
		Reset microSD	–	P298
	Custom menu		–	P331
	Record message	Record msg. setting	Activate record msg.: OFF	P73
		Record msg. list	Empty	P74
	Touch media		–	P312

List of Characters Assigned to Dial Keys

Entry Modes / Key	Hiragana and Kanji	Katakana	Alphabetic characters	Digits
1	あいうえおあいうえお*2	アイウエオアイウエオ*2	. @ / : - _*1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコカケ*2*3	abcABC*2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	defDEF*2	3
4	たちつてとつ*2	タチツテトツ*2	ghiGHI*2	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	jklJKL*2	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	mnoMNO*2	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	pqrsPQRS*2	7
8	やゆよやゆよ*2	ヤユヨヤユヨ*2	tuvTUV*2	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	wxyzWXYZ*2	9
0	わをんわ*2 □(Space) 、。ー・！？	ワヲンワ*2*3 □(Space) 、。ー・！？	□(Space)! ? - , ' ; ( ) " _ _*1 & ¥	0
✱	゛゜*4、。ー・！？	゛ ゜ 、。ー・！？	! ? - , ' ; ( ) " _ _*1 & ¥	✱✱+P*5
#	(Line feed)	(Line feed)	(Line feed)	#*5

*1 In full-pitch character entry, "～" is entered.
*2 Press ✱ to switch between upper and lower cases.
*3 Available in full-pitch character entry.
*4 This can be added or entered when a character has not been set. For characters that can take only a voiced sound symbol,"゛ " is added, and for characters that can take both voiced and semi voiced sound symbol, "゛ " or "゜ " is entered.
*5 These symbols can be entered only into the field in which they are valid.

Multiaccess Combinations

New communication task / Function in progress	Voice call		Videophone		i-mode	i-mode mail		SMS		Packet communication connected to a PC	
	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming	Connect	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
Voice call	△*1	△*2	×	×*3	○*4	○	○	○	○	○	×
Videophone	×	×*3	×	×*3	×	×	×	×	○	×	×
i-mode	○	○	△*5	×*3	×	○	○	○	○	×	×
i-mode mail	○	○	×	×*3	○	×	×*6	×	○	×	×
Packet communication connected to a PC	○	○	×	×*3	×	×	×	×	○	×	×

○: Can be launched.
△: Can be launched under certain conditions.
×: Cannot be launched.

*1 If you subscribe to Call waiting, you can place the current voice call on hold and make another call.
*2 If you subscribe to Call waiting, you can place the current voice call on hold and answer another call. If you subscribe to the Voice mail service/Call forwarding service, the function can be launched.
*3 The call is recorded in Received call log as a missed call.
*4 The i-αppli cannot initiate communication.
*5 Available only for outgoing calls using Phone To function. In that case, i-mode will be disconnected.
*6 After sending an i-mode mail, incoming mails will be received.

Multitask Combinations

New function / Running function	Voice call	Videophone	Mail	i-mode	i-αppli	Phonebook	Data box*1	MUSIC	1Seg	LifeKit*2	Camera	Stationary	Service/ Settings	Game (Touch Media)	Document /Line Map (Touch Media)
Voice call	○	×	○	○	×	○	○*3*19	×	×	×	×	○*4	×	×	×
Videophone	×	×	×	×	×	○*5	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Mail	○	○	×	○	○*20	○	○	○	○*12*13	×	○	○*4	×	○	○
i-mode	○	×	○	×	×	○	○*3	○	○*12*13	×	○	○*4	×	○	○
i-αppli	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Phonebook	○	○	○	○	×	○*16	○	○	○*13	×	○*10	×	×	○	○
Data box*1	○	○	○	○	×	○	○*17	○	○*14	×	○	○*4	×	○	○
i-motion	○	○	○	○	×	○	○*17	○	○*14	×	○	○*4	×	○	○
MUSIC (Play in background)*18	○*6	○*6	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○
1Seg*11	○	○*15	○	○	×	○	○*17	×	○*13	×	×	○	×	○	○
LifeKit*2	○	○	○	○	×	○	○*3	○	○*13	×	×	×	×	×	○
Camera	○	○	○	○	×	○	○*3	○	○*13	×	×	×	×	○	○
Stationary	○	○	○	○	×	○	○*3	○	○*13	×	×	×	×	○	○
Service/Settings	○*7	×	×	×	×	○*9	○*8	×	○*13	×	×	×	×	×	×
Game (Touch Media)	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	×	×	○	○	○	×	○	○
Document/ Line Map (Touch Media)	○	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○	○

○: This can run concurrently.
×: This cannot run concurrently.

*1 Except for data stored in microSD card. "Photo" of Touch Media is included.
*2 Except for "Receive Ir data", "microSD", and "Touch Media".
*3 Can be launched to set a melody, a Chaku-Uta Full® song or an image to a Schedule event or a To do task.
*4 "Schedule", "To do list", "Memo", and "Calculator" can be launched from the New task screen.
*5 Can be launched from the sub menu.
*6 Playback will be paused before a new function is launched. After ending a call, the playback resumes.
*7 Can be launched from "Service numbers".
*8 Can be launched from "Select ring tone", "Stand-by display", "Call display", or "Wake-up display".
*9 Can be launched from settings in "Reject on list" and "Call forwarding".
*10 Can be launched when you add an image taken by Camera to a Phonebook entry.
*11 Include "1Seg" of Touch Media.
*12 Can be launched only when using 1Seg-related link displayed in a received mail or a web page, or a site.
*13 Can be launched from "Booking program list".
*14 Cannot be launched from "Booking program list" while playing melody/i-motion.
*15 Cannot dial while connecting to a data broadcasting site via i-mode communication.
*16 Can be launched when composing mail.
*17 Can be launched when attaching a file to a composing mail and setting screen display for saving an entry to Phonebook.
*18 Include "Music" of Touch Media.
*19 "Photo" of Touch Media cannot be launched.
*20 Can be launched when using i-αppli-related links displayed in mail message.

Service Available for the FOMA Terminal

Services available from the FOMA terminal	Phone number
Directory assistance service (charges apply: service and call fees) (No assistance provided for subscribers not listed)	(No prefix) 104
Telegraph (charge applies: telegraph fee)	(No prefix) 115
Time tone (charge applies)	(No prefix) 117
Weather forecast (charge applies)	Area code + 177
Police	(No prefix) 110
Fire and ambulance	(No prefix) 119
Marine emergency call and accident reports	(No prefix) 118
Disaster emergency message dial (charge applies)	(No prefix) 171
Collect call (charges apply: service and call fees)	(No prefix) 106

Note

- If you use the collect call (106) service, the receiver of the call is charged for the call cost and a commission of 90 Yen (94.5 Yen including tax) per call (as of October, 2008).
- When you use the directory assistance service (104), you are charged for the call fee and service charge of 100 Yen (105 Yen including tax). This service is provided free of charge for those visually impaired or physically disabled in the upper body. For details, call 116 (NTT sales contact) from a fixed line phone (as of October, 2008).
- When you use "Call forwarding" from a fixed line phone and have specified a mobile phone as its forwarding destination, the caller may hear a ring tone even if the mobile phone is busy, out of service area, or turned off depending on the settings of the fixed line phone and mobile phone.
- Note that services such as a call to 116 (NTT sales contact), Dial Q2, Message Service and credit card calls are unavailable. (Credit card calls can be made from a fixed line phone or public phone to a FOMA terminal.)
- Even when a UIM is not inserted, emergency phone numbers (911, 999, 112, 000, and 08) can be dialed to make an emergency call overseas. However, when the Self mode is set to "ON", emergency calls cannot be made.
- This FOMA terminal supports "緊急通報位置通知 (Emergency Location Report)". When calling 110, 119, or 118 from the FOMA terminal, your current location (location information) will automatically be notified to concerned organizations such as the Police. The organization may not receive accurate location information depending on your current location or signal conditions. If you do not specify your Caller ID by dialing with "184" added, the location information and Caller ID will not be sent. However, if the concerned organization judges the information is necessary to protect a human life, it may acquire your location information and Caller ID. The introduction area/time of the "Emergency Location Report" depend on the readiness of the respective emergency report reception agencies.
- For a call to 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, because the police or fire department may try to contact you, inform them that you are calling using a mobile phone and give them your phone number and detailed information about the place where you are. Do not move around while you are talking during an emergency call to prevent the call from being terminated unexpectedly. Do not turn the FOMA terminal power off immediately after the call is over; and keep the FOMA terminal ready to receive calls for approximately 10 minutes.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. In such case, use a public phone or fixed line phone nearby.

Introduction of Options and Related Devices

Using the FOMA terminal with optional devices makes it more convenient for various purposes, both personal and business. Some of the products listed below may be unavailable in some areas.
For details, contact a service counter such as a DOCOMO shop. For details about optional devices, see the related instruction manuals.

- Battery Pack L04
- Back Cover L09
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001/P002*1
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna*2
- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Carry Case S 01
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02*3
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)*2
- FOMA USB Cable*3
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02*4
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use*4
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*1
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- Earphone Plug Adapter 01 for External connector terminal
- Earphone/Microphone 01
- Earphone Plug Adapter 01
- Stereo Earphone Set 01

*1 Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required for connecting with L-01A.
*2 For domestic use.
*3 The FOMA terminal may not work properly with a USB HUB.
*4 Charging Using the AC Adapter→P44 and 45

Introduction of Movie Playing Software

You need Apple Computer Inc.'s QuickTime Player (free) Version 6.4 or higher (or ver.6.3+3GPP) to play movies (in the MP4 file format) captured with the FOMA terminal on a PC.
You can download the QuickTime Player from the following web site:
http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/ (Japanese only)

Note

- You need a PC connected to the Internet to download the software. Separate communication charges may apply for downloading.
- For details about operating environment, downloading or operations, visit the above web site.

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Check
The FOMA terminal cannot be powered on (the FOMA terminal cannot be used)	• Is the battery pack inserted correctly?→P43 • Is the battery pack charged?→P45 • If mova is enabled under Dual Network Service, some FOMA services are unavailable. Check whether FOMA is enabled. For details, See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".→P366
A call cannot be made even if the Dial Keys are pressed	• Is Dialing call lock set?→P115 • Is Lock all set?→P113 • Is Self mode set?→P116
A phone number is dialed, but a busy tone sounds and the call cannot be connected	• Did you enter the city code?→P52 • Is the phone out of service area?→P48
The icon indicating the network status remains out of service area and "Out of service area" is displayed	• Are you out of service area, or in the location with week/poor signal reception?→P48
The Terminal security code entry screen appears on the Stand-by display	• Is Lock all set?→P113
No operation is performed even if a key is pressed	• Is the keypad locked?→P30
Charging is not available (the charging light of the FOMA terminal does not light, the illumination blinks in red, the display blinks)	• Is the battery pack inserted correctly?→P43 • Is the adapter power plug correctly connected to an electric outlet or cigarette lighter socket? • Is the AC adapter connected to the terminal properly?→P45
Display is not bright enough	• Is "Power saver mode" set to "ON"?→P103 • Is the battery running low? Charge the battery.→P45
A different ring tone sounds for incoming mail	• Is the sender saved in the Phonebook with a different ring tone?→P79 • Is the sender saved in the Phonebook under a group with a different ring tone assigned?→P83
Images or melodies set for some functions do not work, and default settings are used	• Is the same UIM inserted that was installed when images or melodies were obtained?→P41

Symptom	Check
Accumulated call costs are not counted	• Have you exceeded the call charge limit? Reset the accumulated call costs to restart counting. →P334
"Please wait." or "No lines/ channels are available" is displayed.	• Audio line/packet communication facility failed, or audio line/packet communication network is extremely busy. Try again later.
"Time out." appears and i-mode mail and SMS cannot be sent	
Data cannot be transferred	• Is a USB HUB being used? The FOMA terminal may not work properly with a USB HUB.
1Seg cannot be started	• Are you out of digital terrestrial broadcasting service area or in the location with week/poor signal reception? • Is the Cannel setting made?→P227

■ When using overseas

Symptom	Check
The icon indicating the network status remains as out of service area, and the international roaming service is not available	• Are you out of the international roaming service area, or in a location with weak signal reception? • Check whether you are in an available service area and whether you are using an international carrier listed in the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or at the DOCOMO's International service web site. • Switch to an available network.→P382
Videophones, i-mode mail, SMS, and packet communication are not available	• Check whether you are in an available service area and whether you are using an international carrier listed in the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or at the DOCOMO's International service web site. • Switch to an available network.→P382
Calls or mail cannot be received	• Is "Call barring" activated?→P384
After returning to Japan, the network status icon still shows out of service area	• Is "Network search mode" set to "Manual"?→P382

If Error Message Appears Mentioned Below

Error message	Description
"i-αppli To" function is not set	The i-αppli cannot be started because "Site i-αppli To" is not enabled. Enable the function and try again.
All folders are full	There is not enough storage space for both received message and MessageR/F. Delete unnecessary received messages and MessageR/F.
Already exist	The network cannot be registered because it is already registered.
Already exists	The network cannot be registered because it is already registered.
Already received message on server	The message cannot be sent because it is already stored on the server.
Attached file is deleted	The attached file will be deleted and the message will be forwarded because a different UIM card is inserted than the one that was inserted when the i-mode mail attachment file was received.
Authentication canceled(401)	The connection was suspended because authentication failed.
Authentication failed	The wrong Terminal security code was entered. Enter the correct Terminal security code.
Auto start already 3 software set	Up to 3 i-αppli can be set to auto start.
Battery low	The battery level is low. Charge the battery.
Call rejected	An incoming call was rejected because it was from a caller not registered in the Phonebook. To receive calls from callers not in the Phonebook, set "Reject unknown" to "OFF".
	An incoming call was rejected because it was from a caller registered in "Reject on list".
	An incoming call was rejected because "Reject all calls" is set to "Disconnect call".
Can't save over 50 songs	Up to 50 songs can be added to the Quick playlist. Delete unnecessary music data from the Quick playlist.
Can't zoom in case of this size	"Select size" is set to "5M (2560x1920)". To use the zoom, set the image size smaller.
Cannot access	A connection cannot be established because the host address set for "Host selection" is wrong. Check the setting and then try again.
Cannot access Change the USB mode setting	While "USB mode setting" is set to "microSD mode", you cannot access the microSD card by FOMA terminal operations. Set it to "Communication mode".
Cannot add song	Up to 50 songs can be registered to 1 playlist. Delete unnecessary music data from the playlist.
Cannot add to playlist!	The song cannot be added because the maximum number of playlists/songs in each playlist has already been added. Delete unnecessary playlists/songs.
Cannot create playlist!	Up to 10 playlists can be added. Delete unnecessary playlists.
Cannot receive i-Channel information	The i-Channel information cannot be received because the UIM is not inserted properly, or there is a problem with the UIM. Check the UIM.
Cannot save image	The file cannot be saved because it is a Flash file that cannot be saved or an image that has been partially downloaded.

Error message	Description
Cannot save image without playing	The data cannot be saved because it is a Flash file.
	The data cannot be saved because it is an unplayed Flash animation.
Certificate is rejected (tampered)	A problem was detected during the authentication process of SSL. The connection will be terminated.
	A connection could not be established because a modified SSL certificate was received.
Check new message is set all OFF	No items of "Check new messages" settings is marked. Mark items and try again.
Connection failed (562)	A connection cannot be established because there is a problem with the network. Wait a while and try again.
Connection suspended	The connection was suspended because a certain period of time elapsed without finding the other party. Check the distance from the other device, angle, and operating procedure.
Could not parse all mailto parameters	Some of the parameters are out of range.
Could not receive message	The selected message cannot be received because the host address set for "Host selection" is wrong. Check the setting and then try again.
Exchange failed	Communication failed because the operation was suspended.
Failed to retrieve channel information	i-Channel information was not downloaded because part or all channel information could not be downloaded. Move to a location with a strong signal and then press [5 JKL] in Stand-by to receive the information.
File format not supported	The file cannot be selected because it is in an unsupported format.

Error message	Description
File is deleted	The message is forwarded with the attached file deleted because it cannot be forwarded.
File with copyright will be deleted	The FOMA terminal will delete the attached file and forward message because the file is copyright protected.
Format not supported	The operation cannot be performed because it is not supported.
Home page disabled	"Home" is set to "Disable". Set it to "Enable".
Host name already exists	The host name cannot be registered because it is already registered.
i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.(555)	The line facility failed, or the line is very busy. Wait a while and try again.
Inbox is full	The i-mode mail cannot be received because there is not enough storage space in Inbox. Delete unnecessary received mail.
	SMS cannot be moved/copied from the UIM because there is not enough storage space in Inbox. Delete unnecessary received mail.
Incomplete data saved	A partially downloaded data was saved. To retrieve the rest of the data, perform the operation manually.
Incorrect folder name	Invalid characters or no characters were entered for the folder name. Enter a valid folder name.
Input data	The country name and country code were not entered. Enter the country name and country code.
Input error(205)	The input data contains an error. Check the input data.
International roaming service denied	The operation cannot be performed because you have not subscribed to WORLD WING.

Continued on next page

Error message	Description
Invalid address	The message cannot be sent because the mail address is invalid.
Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay.	The FOMA terminal is set not to obtain streaming type i-motion. Change the setting.
Invalid data	The operation cannot be performed because an inappropriate file is selected.
	The operation cannot be performed because the data is invalid.
Invalid Data (XXX)	The specified site or web page is not supported. * A number to indicate an error type is displayed in the place of X.
	Check whether the URL is correct. * A number to indicate an error type is displayed in the place of X.
	The received data cannot be displayed because it contains an error. * A number to indicate an error type is displayed in the place of X.
Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)	The FOMA terminal was unable to connect properly because of an error at the host.
Invalid date	The value is outside the setting range of Date search.
Invalid end date	The end date is set earlier than the start date. Set the schedule event so that the end date is the same or later than the start date.
Invalid file name is included	The file or folder cannot be saved or created because an invalid character was entered for the file name or folder name.
Invalid number	An invalid number is entered, or no number is entered. Enter a valid number.

Error message	Description
Invalid time	The end time is set earlier than the start time on the same day. Set the end time that is later than the start time.
Invalid title	Invalid characters or no characters were entered for the title name. Enter a valid title name.
Invalid title is included	Invalid characters or no characters were entered for the folder name. Enter a valid folder name.
Invalid UIM, auto start not possible.	i-αppli could not be started automatically due to the UIM security function. Insert the UIM that was inserted when the file was obtained, and then try again.
Invalid UIM, cannot access	The operation cannot be performed due to the UIM security function. Insert the UIM that was inserted when the file was obtained, and then try again.
Invalid UIM, cannot send	The message cannot be sent due to the UIM security function. Insert the UIM that was inserted when the message was created and try again.
Invalid UIM, incorrect display.	Some data subject to restrictions such as images cannot be displayed because a different UIM card is inserted than the one that was inserted when the data was downloaded from the site, or the attached file or MessageR/F was saved. Insert the same UIM that was inserted when you downloaded or saved the data.
	A different UIM card is inserted than the one that was inserted when the screen memo was saved. Insert the same UIM card that was inserted when you saved the screen memo.

Error message	Description
Invalid UIM, requested service not available.	A different UIM card is inserted than the one that was inserted when the data was downloaded from a site, or the mail attachment file or MessageR/F was saved. Insert the same UIM that was inserted when you downloaded or saved the data.
Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start	An i-αppli that is linked to the UIM inserted at the time of download from a site cannot be started. Insert the UIM that was inserted when the software was downloaded.
Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.	The specified software cannot be started because a different UIM is inserted than the one inserted when the software was downloaded from a site. Insert the UIM that was inserted when the software was downloaded.
Invalid UIM. Start not possible.	An i-αppli that is linked to the UIM inserted at the time of download from a site cannot be started. Insert the UIM that was inserted when the software was downloaded.
Keypad dial lock	The operation cannot be performed because Dialing call lock is set. Uncheck "Dialing call lock" in "Call/Mail lock" settings.
Mails could not be sent to following address (561)	Mail could not be sent to the displayed address properly.
Memory shortage.	The process will be suspended because there is not enough memory. If you see this message frequently, turn off, then turn on your FOMA terminal.
Memory shortage. Return to Main Menu	The process will be suspended because there is not enough memory.

Error message	Description
MessageF service unavailable while abroad. Check the Center Inquiry functions.(566)	MessageF service unavailable while abroad. Uncheck "MessageF" in "Check new messages" settings.
Music player is running	The operation cannot be performed because Music player or SD-Audio player is running. Press ⏻ to end Music player or SD-Audio player.
Network Unavailable	The terminal cannot connect to the network because it is out of service area or in a location with no signal. Move to a location with a strong signal and set the network.
	The network list cannot be displayed because there is no UIM inserted. Insert the UIM before using the option.
	The network list could not be saved with "UPLMN select by list" in "Preferred NW lists".
No channel list	No channel list is registered. Register a channel list.
No microSD Can't save	There is no microSD card inserted in the FOMA terminal. If there is no microSD card inserted when taking pictures, they will be saved to the FOMA terminal.
No PLMN found	There is no network that can be selected.
No response (408)	The FOMA terminal was unable to connect because there was no response from the site or web page. Try again.
No save area	The operation cannot be performed because there is not enough storage space in the saving location. Delete unnecessary files.
No space to attach file	The maximum attachment size has been exceeded.

Continued on next page

Error message	Description
Not able to insert a chosen image	The selected image could not be inserted because it exceeds a specified value.
Not enough data memory	There was not enough storage space in Inbox when attempting to obtain the selected received attached file. Delete unnecessary received mail.
Out of service area	The program cannot be downloaded because the terminal is out of service area. Move to a location with a strong signal and then try downloading manually.
Outbox is full	SMS cannot be copied/moved from the UIM because there is not enough storage space in Outbox. Delete unnecessary sent and unsent mail.
Page is not found (404)	The site or web page may not exist, or the URL may be wrong. Check the URL and then try again.
Password is not correct (401)	The user name or password entered in the authentication screen of a site or web page was wrong. Enter the information again.
PIN1 (PIN2) code blocked	If an incorrect PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times in a row, the PIN lock is set. Enter the PUK code.
PIN1 (PIN2) code not recognized	If an incorrect PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times in a row, the PIN lock is set. Enter the PUK code.
Please check the SMS Center settings	The FOMA terminal failed to send SMS. Check "SMS center" setting.
Please set "To type" receiver	There is no address set for the To field. Set at least one address for the To field.
Please wait	The FOMA terminal failed to send the SMS. Wait a while and try again.
Preparing to send	The FOMA terminal is preparing to send the i-mode mail. Wait a while.

Error message	Description
PUK blocked	If you enter an incorrect PUK code 10 times in a row, the PUK code is blocked. Contact a DOCOMO shop.
PUK code error	An incorrect PUK code was entered. Enter the correct PUK code.
PUK code not recognized	If you enter an incorrect PUK code 10 times in a row, the PUK code is blocked. Contact a DOCOMO shop.
Reading UIM	The UIM is being read. Wait a while and try again.
Received Invalid data	The operation cannot be performed because the received data contains an error.
Receiving canceled	Downloading was suspended because the FOMA terminal is out of service area. Move to a location with a strong signal.
Replay is restricted (XX/XX/XXXX, XX:XX) - (XX/XX/XXXX, XX:XX)	The file cannot be played because today is out of the playback period set to the i-motion, music data, or Music&Video Channel program. Play the file during the playback period. * Month, day, year, and time are displayed in the place of X.
Replay is restricted (XX/XX/XXXX, XX:XX)	The file cannot be played because the playback limit set to the i-motion, music data, or Music&Video Channel program has passed. You cannot play the file after the playback limit has expired. * Month, day, year, and time are displayed in the place of X.
Replay period has not yet started	The file cannot be played because the playback period set to the i-motion, music data, or Music&Video Channel program has not yet started. Play the file on or after the day for which playback is possible.

Error message	Description
Retention period has expired (492)	An attached file can no longer be obtained because the retention period at the i-mode center has expired.
Root certificate is not valid	The certificate of the FOMA terminal is set to invalid. Change the setting to establish a connection.
Run i-αppli? Yes/No/Terminate	This message will be displayed when an i-αppli performs a lot of data transfer within a short time. Select "Yes" to continue using the i-αppli. Select "No" to continue using the i-αppli without communication. Select "Terminate" to end the i-αppli.
Same time already set	Another i-αppli is set to start automatically at the same time. Two or more i-αppli cannot start automatically at the same time.
Same URL already saved	The URL cannot be saved because it is already registered in the FOMA terminal.
SD audio file doesn't exist	The operation cannot be performed because there is no SD-Audio compatible music data.
Self mode is set	The operation cannot be performed because Self mode is set. Set Self mode to "OFF".
Size of this page is not supported	The reception was stopped because the page at the site or web page is too large; only an obtained part is displayed.
	The download was stopped because the data exceeded the maximum size that can be downloaded/obtained.
Size over	The size of the template exceeds the specified value. Delete the message or inserted images.
Software terminated due to security error	i-αppli attempted to perform a prohibited activity.

Error message	Description
Some data couldn't save	There is data that could not be saved because there was not enough storage space in the saving location. Delete unnecessary files.
Some function is limited in UIM	Functions are limited because a different UIM card is inserted than the one that was inserted when the data was downloaded from a site, the file was attached to mail, or MessageR/F was saved.
SSL session cannot be established	A connection could not be established because a modified SSL certificate was received or an SSL error occurred.
SSL session failed	A problem was detected during the authentication process of SSL. The connection will be terminated.
	A session was not possible because of an authentication error on the server.
SSL session was terminated	The SSL session was terminated because the connection was canceled.
There is a message already composing. Delete and create new? Yes/No	This message appears when attempting to create a new mail/SMS using Multitask function while composing a mail/SMS. Select "Yes" to save the currently composing message as an unsent message, and create a new mail/SMS.
There is not a message to delete	There is no message that can be deleted because all messages are protected.
There is not a message to delete	There is no message that can be deleted because no message exists or all messages are protected.
This data cannot be saved	The file cannot be saved because the playback limit of the i-motion or music data has expired, or there is no remaining playback count available.

Continued on next page

Error message	Description
This file is not supported	The file cannot be played because the data is not supported or is corrupted.
This software contains an error	The i-αppli data cannot be downloaded because it contains an error.
This UIM cannot be recognized	The UIM cannot be recognized or the wrong type of UIM is inserted. Reinsert the UIM or insert the correct UIM and then try the operation again.
Time out	The network traffic to the i-mode center is heavy. Wait a while and then try again.
	The FOMA terminal searched for a network for a certain period of time, but no network was found.
Time out Resume download?	The attached file linked to the i-mode mail could not be downloaded within the set time. Do you want to try downloading again?
Too much data was entered	Sending is not possible because too many characters were entered in the site or web page input field. Delete some characters and then try sending again.
	URL is too long to display.
Transmission failed (XXX)	The mail could not be sent properly. * A number to indicate an error type is displayed in the place of X.
Unable to acquire	The file cannot be acquired because it is invalid or an error occurred.
Unable to acquire remaining data. Data deleted.	While attempting to download the remaining data of a partially saved file, the data was deleted because an error occurred and the download failed.
Unable to download remaining data. Data deleted.	

Error message	Description
Unable to download. Delete program	The program cannot be downloaded because there is no registration for it in My Menu. Register the Music&Video Channel program provider site in My Menu.
Unable to download	The file cannot be downloaded because it is invalid or an error occurred.
Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error	The data cannot be obtained because it is invalid or today is out of the playback period.
Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)	The site or web page may not exist, or the URL may be wrong. Check the URL and then try again.
Unsent message is full	There is not enough storage space for unsent messages. Delete unnecessary unsent or sent messages.
unsupported card format. please format again.	The format of the microSD card is not supported. Use L-01A to format the microSD card.
Usage is currently restricted. Try again later	This message will be displayed when extremely large amount of data is transferred via your FOMA terminal. This message is displayed only when you subscribe to the fixed amount service for i-mode packet communication. Wait for a while and try again later after you see this message.
α error	An error occurred while an i-αppli is running.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Be sure to receive a warranty at the time you purchase your FOMA terminal. Read contents of the warranty and confirm items such as "shop name and the date of purchase" and keep it in a safe place. If necessary items are not described, immediately contact the shop of purchase. The warranty for free repair is valid for one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and its accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for improvement without prior notice.
- The saved contents of phonebook and other functions may be altered or lost by failure, repair or other handling of the FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you write down the contents of the Phonebook. If a FOMA terminal is repaired, with some exceptions, information downloaded with i-mode or i-αppli is not transferred to the repaired FOMA terminal, because of the copyright law.

* This FOMA terminal allows you to save data, such as phonebook entries or i-motion movies onto the microSD card.

* If you have a PC, your Phonebook data can be transferred to and stored on your hard drive using DOCOMO keitai datalink (P392) and FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional).

After-sales Service

For Problems with Your FOMA Terminal

Before requesting for repairs, read "Troubleshooting" in this manual. If the problem still persists, call "Repairs" at the back of this manual.

For Repairs after Inquiry

Take your FOMA terminal to a repair counter designated by DOCOMO. Repairs are accepted during business hours of the service center. Be sure to bring the warranty when you visit.

■ During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge under the conditions of the warranty.
- Make sure that you bring the warranty for repair. You will be charged even during the warranty period for repair if the warranty is not presented or the trouble or damage is caused by your inappropriate handling.
- You will be charged even during the warranty period for repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DOCOMO-specified.
- You will be charged for repair of the LCD screen or the connectors.

■ Repair may not be possible in the following cases.

- When the repair counter decides the cause of malfunction is exposure to moisture. (For example, when perspiration is detected by the moisture detection seal.)
- When corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or sweat is found in a test result, or any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. (Breakage of External connector terminal (earphone/microphone jack), LCD, or cracked chassis could be the case as well.)

* Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, any repairs, if at all possible, will be charged.

■ After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

Continued on next page

■ Replacement parts

- Replacement parts (parts required to maintain production function) will be kept in stock for at least 4 years in principle after termination of production. However, repair may still not be possible due to a lack of replacement parts depending on the failure. Even after the parts holding period, some failures may be repairable. Call "Repairs" at the back of this manual.

Notes

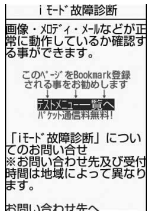
- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - Fire, injury or damage may result.
  - The modified FOMA terminal will be repaired only after the terminal is restored to its original condition. However, depending on the details of modification, repair may be refused.
    Modifications may include the following cases:
    · Put a seal on Color LCD and Keys
    · Add a decoration to the FOMA terminal with bond
    · Exchange exterior with ones other than DOCOMO genuine parts
  - Repair of failure or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove rating stickers placed on the FOMA terminal. The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. If stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the device conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- Various function settings and information including total call time may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal. In such a case, make function settings again.
- The FOMA terminal contains magnetic components given below. Keep cash cards and other objects vulnerable to magnetism away from such components or they may become unusable. Magnetic components: Speaker and earpiece
- If the FOMA terminal gets wet or moistened, immediately turn the power OFF, remove the battery pack, and bring the terminal to a DOCOMO service center. Note that, depending on the conditions of the FOMA terminal, it may not be possible to repair it.

Phonebook and Downloaded Data

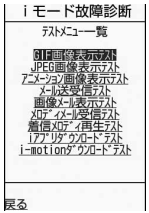
- Write down and keep separately the data you registered in your FOMA terminal. DOCOMO will not accept any liability whatsoever for changes or loss of information.
- The data you created, imported or downloaded from external sources may be altered or lost as a result of changing the FOMA terminal model or repairing the terminal. DOCOMO is not responsible for data alteration or loss under these circumstances. Under some circumstances, DOCOMO may replace your FOMA terminal with its equivalent instead of repairing it. Data including images or melodies downloaded to the FOMA terminal and user-defined data will be transferred to another terminal when the terminal is repaired. (Some data may not be transferred. Depending on severity of the failure, data may not be transferred.)
  * Depending on the amount of data saved on the FOMA terminal, it may take a while to transfer data or data may not be transferred.

i-mode Fault Diagnosis Site

You can check whether your FOMA terminal is properly sending/receiving mail, downloading images or melodies yourself.



Top screen



Test menu screen

- Access method to "ｉモード故障診断 (i-mode malfunction diagnosis site)"
  i-mode site: iMenu ▶ お知らせ (Information) ▶ サービス・機能 (Service/Function) ▶ ｉモード (i-mode) ▶ ｉモード故障診断 (i-mode malfunction diagnosis site)

QR code for accessing web sites

Note

- Packet communication charges do not apply for the i-mode malfunction diagnosis. (Note that the charges apply for this service when you access from overseas.)
- Test items will differ depending on the FOMA terminal model. Test items may change.
- Before diagnosing operations for each test item, read the cautions on the site carefully.
- When accessing the i-mode malfunction diagnosis site, and performing the sending mail test, information unique to your FOMA terminal (such as a model name and mail address) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode malfunction diagnosis server). The information sent is used only for i-mode malfunction diagnosis.
- After the diagnosis, if you think that the FOMA terminal is malfunctioning, call "Repairs" at the back of this manual.

Software update

Updating Software

This function checks whether the FOMA terminal software requires update and, if required, updates the software by downloading a part of it using packet communication*. If software update is necessary, you will be informed at the DOCOMO web site and with "お知らせ (Information)" from iMenu.
Software may be updated in the following two methods: "Now update" and "Reserve".

- Now update: Update the software immediately.
- Reserve: The software is automatically updated at the scheduled date and time.

* Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

Continued on next page

- Software update is available even if you set the access point other than i-mode.
- Fully charge the battery pack before updating software.
- Software update (downloading and rewriting) may take a while.
- Updating software with "PIN1 code request" set to "ON" displays PIN1 code entry screen at the automatic restart after overwriting the software. You cannot make/receive calls or perform communication until you enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot make or receive calls or use communication or other functions while updating software (you can receive voice calls while downloading).
- It is recommended that you update software in a location with strong signal reception with three antenna bars displayed in stationary state. If the signal becomes weak during software download, or download is suspended, retry software update in a location with strong signal reception.
- When your software is up to date, a message indicating that "No update is needed. Continue to use as before" appears when you check availability of software update.
- After software is updated, an icon indicating the i-mode Center storage status disappears. When mail is delivered during software update with "Receive option set" set to "ON", a screen indicating that there is mail may not appear after software update.
- During an update, information unique to your FOMA terminal (such as a terminal model and the serial number) is automatically sent to the server (software update server managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for other purposes than Software update.

- Software update is not available in the following:
  - Lock all
  - Another function is running
  - The date and time are not set
  - UIM not inserted
  - The battery pack is not fully charged
  - Omakase Lock
  - "圏外" appears at the top of the screen
  - Self mode
  - Terminal power is off
  - International roaming

Note

- Never remove the battery pack during software update. Doing so may cause update to fail.
- Software can be updated with data such as phonebook, camera images, downloaded data maintained. Note that, however, such data may not be protected depending on the conditions of the FOMA terminal (failure, damage, expose to moisture, etc.).
  It is recommended that you make a back up of important data (some data such as downloaded data cannot be backed up).
- If software update fails, a message indicating "Rewrite failed" appears. All operations become unavailable. In that case, you have to bring the FOMA terminal to a repair counter designated by DOCOMO.

Starting Software Update

Check whether the FOMA terminal software update is necessary.

1 [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "Software update" ▶ Enter the Terminal security code

- When Software update is already scheduled, the Schedule notification screen appears.

2 Check the contents on the confirmation, and "OK"

- The communication starts to check whether software update is necessary. If update is necessary, the software update confirmation appears.

Updating Software Immediately

1 On the Software update confirmation screen, "Now update" ▶ "OK" on the Download start screen.

- Download starts, and when the download is completed, the confirmation for software rewriting appears.

2 "OK"

- The rewriting starts. The terminal restarts automatically and the Software update completion screen appears, when the rewriting is completed.
- All operations will be disabled during rewriting.

3 "OK"

Updating Software on Scheduled Date

Select the date and time and update software.

1 "Reserve" on the Software update confirmation screen

- The Date and time selection screen appears.

2 Select the date and time

- At the scheduled date and time, the software update starts automatically.
- Select "Others" on the Date and time selection screen to set the desired date and time separately.

Note

- When software update is scheduled, the time of the server appears.
- Note that if you use other functions, the software update may not start at the scheduled time.
- If alarm is activated, the software update may not start.
- If you perform "Clear memory" (P123) after the reservation is set, the software update may not start at the scheduled time. Reschedule the update.

Scanning function

Protecting the FOMA terminal from Harmful Data

First, update the pattern definition to the latest one.

As for data and programs downloaded to FOMA terminal from a site or via i-mode mail, etc., this function enables you to detect and delete data or disable applications that may cause troubles.

- Pattern definition is used for checking. Update pattern definition, which is upgraded as needed when new problems are detected. →P426
- This function provides a means to protect FOMA terminal from data that may invade when viewing web site or receiving mail, etc., causing troubles to FOMA terminal. Note that this function cannot avoid occurrence of troubles if pattern definition specific to individual troubles has not been downloaded to FOMA terminal or such pattern definition does not exist.
- Pattern definition has different contents depending on mobile phone models. Note that, therefore, DOCOMO may stop distributing pattern definition for models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.

Setting Scanning Function

When Scanning Function is set to "ON", data and programs to be performed are automatically checked.

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Scanning function" ▶ "Set scan"

2 "Scan"/"Message scan" ▶ "ON"/"OFF"

Scan : If "ON" is set, an alert is made in 5 levels when data that may cause troubles is detected.→P427

Message scan : If "ON" is set, a screen notifying a phone number or URL is included appears when displaying the SMS which contains a phone number or URL for the first time.

3 "Yes"/"No"

Updating Pattern Definition

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Scanning function" ▶ "Update" ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes"

Updating starts. Upon completion of update, a screen notifying the completion appears.

- When the pattern definition is the latest one, a message screen appears.

2 ● [OK]

Note

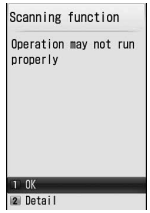
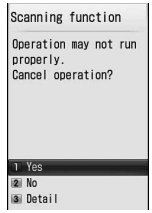
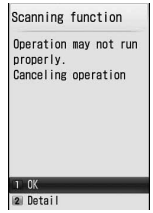
- During pattern definition update, information unique to your FOMA terminal (such as a terminal model and the serial number) is automatically sent to the server (software update server managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for other purposes than the Scanning function.
- Correctly set the clock of FOMA terminal in advance.
- Pattern definition update is disabled in the following:
  - Date&Time is not set
  - UIM is not inserted
  - Low battery level
  - Out of service area
  - Other functions are running
  - Lock all
  - During a call
  - Self mode
  - Data access lock
  - Connected to external device such as a PC

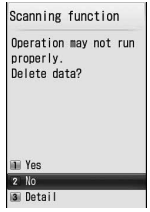
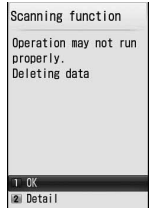
Updating the pattern definition automatically

Automatically update the pattern definition to keep up to date. On the Scanning function screen, "Set auto-update" ▶ "Enable" ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ ●[OK].

Scan Result Display

If data that may cause a problem is detected, a screen appears to show its alert level.

Alert level 0	Alert level 1	Alert level 2
		
"OK": Continue the operation.	"Yes": Stop the operation and exit. "No": Continue the operation.	"OK": Stop the operation and exit.

Alert level 3	Alert level 4
	
"Yes": Delete the data and exit. "No": Stop the operation and exit.	"OK": Delete the data and exit.

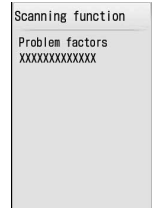
Continued on next page

Note

- The screen may be different depending on the scan result.

■ Display of problem factors after scanning

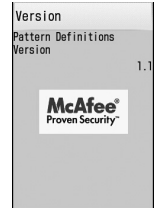
If you select "Detail" on the Alert level screen, the problem list screen as on the right appears.



- The screen image only provides an example. In the actual screen, a detected problem is displayed in the place of "XXXXXXXX".
- Depending on the type of the detected data, "Detail" may not be displayed.
- When 6 or more problem factors are detected, subsequent factors after 6th one will not be shown and only the total number of the factors will be displayed.

Confirming Pattern Definition Version

1 [−] [Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Scanning function" ▶ "Version"



Main Specifications

■ Phone

Model name		L-01A
Dimensions (H×W×D)		Approx. 110×Approx. 52×Approx. 15.7 (Thickest part: Approx. 16.2) mm
Weight		Approx. 140g (with battery pack installed)
FOMA/3G	Continuous stand-by time	Stationary: Approx. 300 hours Moving: Approx. 270 hours
	Continuous call time	Voice call: Approx. 200 minutes Videophone: Approx. 100 minutes
1Seg watching time		Approx. 200 minutes
Charging time		AC adapter: Approx. 200 minutes DC adapter: Approx. 200 minutes
LCD	Type	TFT 262,144 colors
	Size	Approx. 2.8 inches
	Pixels	96,000 pixels (240×400)
Image censor	Type	Inner camera: CMOS Outer camera: CMOS
	Size	Inner camera: 1/11 inches Outer camera: 1/3.2 inches
	Effective pixels	Inner camera: Approx. 310 Kilo pixels Outer camera: Approx. 5.1 Mega pixels
Camera	Recorded pixels (maximum)	Inner camera: Approx. 300 Kilo pixels Outer camera: Approx. 5.0 Mega pixels
	Zoom (Digital)	Inner camera: Up to approx. 3.4 times Outer camera: Up to approx. 3.4 times

Storage	Number of recordable still images	Approx. 200 (for default settings)*1 Approx. 1,000*1 (When deletable pre-installed data are deleted)
	Continuous shooting	CIF (352×288): 4 Wallpaper (240×400, 400×240)/ QVGA (320×240)/ QCIF (176×144)/ Sub-QCIF (128×96)/ Phonebook (120×160)/ Menu-icon (48×48): 6
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Movie recording time	Approx. 60 minutes*2
	Movie file format	MP4
Music playback	Continuous playback time	SD-Audio (Supports background music): Approx. 720 minutes*3 Chaku-Uta Full® (Supports background playback): Approx. 720 minutes*3 i-motion*4: Approx. 250 minutes*3 Music&Video Channel (Supports background playback): Approx. 720 minutes*3
Capacity	Chaku-Uta®/ Chaku-Uta Full®	Approx. 250MB*5

*1 Image size: 128×96 Image quality: Standard File size: 10K
*2 Maximum recording time per movie saved under the following conditions.
Image size: Sub-QCIF File size restriction: None
Quality: Standard Type: Sound+Video
*3 File format: AAC
*4 Sound only i-motion
*5 Shared with Music&Video Channel

■Battery pack

Model name	Battery Pack L04
Battery type	Lithium ion battery
Nominal voltage	3.7V
Nominal capacity	900mAh

- Continuous call time is approximate duration of time to be spent for talking with normal radio wave reception level.
- Continuous stand-by time is approximate usage duration of battery while in motion with normal radio wave reception level. Depending on the battery level, set functions, operating environment such as ambient temperature, or radio wave reception level (poor or weak radio wave reception level), stand-by time can be reduced by half. When i-mode communications are performed, the call (communication)/stand-by time becomes shorter. Even if you do not make calls or perform i-mode communications, the call (communication)/stand-by time becomes short when you compose i-mode mail, start a downloaded i-αppli, start the i-αppli Stand-by display, perform data communications or Multiaccess, use a camera, or play movies or music.
- Continuous stand-by time in a stationary state is the average usage time in stationary state with normal radio wave reception level while FOMA terminal is closed.
- Continuous stand-by time in motion is the average usage time in a state combining "stand still", "in motion" and "out of service area" in an area with normal radio wave reception level while the terminal is closed.
- Note that the time for watching 1Seg may be shorten depending on the battery level, set functions, operating environment such as ambient temperature, or radio wave reception level (poor or weak radio wave reception level).
- The estimated charging time is the duration of time to charge a fully drained battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned off. The charging time becomes longer with the FOMA terminal turned on.

Approximate Number of Savable Still Images

The number of still images that can be saved on the FOMA terminal varies depending on the resolution, image quality, capture conditions, and capture objects.

Storage location	L-01A (Phone)*		
Quality / Resolution	Super fine	Fine	Normal
5M (2560×1920)	Approx. 310	Approx. 630	Approx. 800
3M (2048×1536)	Approx. 400	Approx. 800	Approx. 1,000
2M (1600×1200)	Approx. 570	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
1M (1280×960)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
VGA (640×480, 480×640)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
CIF (352×288)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
Wallpaper (240×400, 400×240)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
QVGA (320×240)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
QCIF (176×144)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
Phonebook (120×160)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000
Menu-icon (48×48)	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000	Approx. 1,000

* Savable number of images when deletable pre-installed data are deleted.

Storage location	microSD card (64MB)		
Quality / Resolution	Super fine	Fine	Normal
5M (2560×1920)	Approx. 70	Approx. 140	Approx. 180
3M (2048×1536)	Approx. 90	Approx. 180	Approx. 260
2M (1600×1200)	Approx. 130	Approx. 250	Approx. 400
1M (1280×960)	Approx. 280	Approx. 450	Approx. 700
VGA (640×480, 480×640)	Approx. 800	Approx. 1,500	Approx. 2,300
CIF (352×288)	Approx. 2,000	Approx. 3,400	Approx. 5,000
Wallpaper (240×400, 400×240)	Approx. 2,400	Approx. 4,000	Approx. 5,600
QVGA (320×240)	Approx. 2,500	Approx. 4,300	Approx. 6,000
QCIF (176×144)	Approx. 2,860	Approx. 4,500	Approx. 6,250
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Approx. 3,230	Approx. 4,700	Approx. 6,500
Phonebook (120×160)	Approx. 2,880	Approx. 4,510	Approx. 6,260
Menu-icon (48×48)	Approx. 6,100	Approx. 8,430	Approx. 12,000

Approximate Movie Capture Duration

The movie capture duration varies depending on the movie length, quality, capture conditions, and capture objects.

■ Continuous capturing duration per movie

Storage location		L-01A (Phone)	
Type	Size restriction	No restriction	
	Quality \ Resolution	QCIF (176×144)	Sub-QCIF (128×96)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
Movie only	Super fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
Sound only		Approx. 60 minutes	

Storage location		L-01A (Phone)		
Type	Size restriction	No restriction		
	Quality \ Resolution	QVGA (320×240)	WQVGA (400×240)	VGA (640×480)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
Movie only	Super fine	–	–	–
	Fine	–	–	–
	Normal	–	–	–
Sound only		–		

Storage location		L-01A (Phone)	
Type	Size restriction	2Mbyte	
	Quality \ Resolution	QCIF (176×144)	Sub-QCIF (128×96)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 117 seconds	Approx. 220 seconds
	Fine	Approx. 153 seconds	Approx. 285 seconds
	Normal	Approx. 222 seconds	Approx. 400 seconds
Movie only	Super fine	Approx. 153 seconds	Approx. 285 seconds
	Fine	Approx. 200 seconds	Approx. 400 seconds
	Normal	Approx. 285 seconds	Approx. 500 seconds
Sound only		Approx. 19 minutes	

Continued on next page

Storage location		L-01A (Phone)	
Type	Size restriction	500Kbyte	
	Resolution / Quality	QCIF (176×144)	Sub-QCIF (128×96)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 29 seconds	Approx. 55 seconds
	Fine	Approx. 38 seconds	Approx. 71 seconds
	Normal	Approx. 55 seconds	Approx. 100 seconds
Movie only	Super fine	Approx. 38 seconds	Approx. 71 seconds
	Fine	Approx. 50 seconds	Approx. 100 seconds
	Normal	Approx. 71 seconds	Approx. 125 seconds
Sound only		Approx. 284 seconds	

Storage location		microSD card (64MB)	
Type	Size restriction	No restriction	
	Resolution / Quality	QCIF (176×144)	Sub-QCIF (128×96)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
Movie only	Super fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 60 minutes	Approx. 60 minutes
Sound only		Approx. 60 minutes	

Storage location		microSD card (64MB)		
Type	Size restriction	No restriction		
	Resolution / Quality	QVGA 120fps	WQVGA 30fps	VGA 30fps
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 4 minutes	Approx. 14 minutes	Approx. 4 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 8 minutes	Approx. 28 minutes	Approx. 8 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 17 minutes	Approx. 54 minutes	Approx. 17 minutes
Movie only	Super fine	–	–	–
	Fine	–	–	–
	Normal	–	–	–
Sound only		–		

Storage location		microSD card (64MB)	
Type	Size restriction	2Mbyte	
	Resolution / Quality	QCIF (176×144)	Sub-QCIF (128×96)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 100 seconds	Approx. 180 seconds
	Fine	Approx. 130 seconds	Approx. 230 seconds
	Normal	Approx. 180 seconds	Approx. 310 seconds
Movie only	Super fine	Approx. 110 seconds	Approx. 230 seconds
	Fine	Approx. 150 seconds	Approx. 295 seconds
	Normal	Approx. 225 seconds	Approx. 440 seconds
Sound only		Approx. 19 minutes	

Storage location		microSD card (64MB)	
Type	Size restriction	500Kbyte	
	Resolution / Quality	QCIF (176×144)	Sub-QCIF (128×96)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 25 seconds	Approx. 47 seconds
	Fine	Approx. 33 seconds	Approx. 60 seconds
	Normal	Approx. 47 seconds	Approx. 80 seconds
Movie only	Super fine	Approx. 28 seconds	Approx. 56 seconds
	Fine	Approx. 38 seconds	Approx. 75 seconds
	Normal	Approx. 56 seconds	Approx. 115 seconds
Sound only		Approx. 280 seconds	

■Total recording time: Common to all Size restrictions

Storage location		L-01A (Phone)*	
Type	Resolution / Quality	QCIF (176×144)	Sub-QCIF (128×96)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 270 minutes	Approx. 500 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 350 minutes	Approx. 630 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 500 minutes	Approx. 810 minutes
Movie only	Super fine	Approx. 300 minutes	Approx. 600 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 400 minutes	Approx. 800 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 600 minutes	Approx. 1200 minutes
Sound only		Approx. 3100 minutes	

* Recording time when deletable pre-installed data are deleted.

Storage location		microSD card (64MB)	
Type	Resolution / Quality	QCIF (176×144)	Sub-QCIF (128×96)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 50 minutes	Approx. 100 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 70 minutes	Approx. 130 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 100 minutes	Approx. 160 minutes
Movie only	Super fine	Approx. 63 minutes	Approx. 122 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 84 minutes	Approx. 160 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 123 minutes	Approx. 230 minutes
Sound only		Approx. 600 minutes	

Storage location		microSD card (64MB)		
Type	Resolution / Quality	QVGA (320×240)	WQVGA (400×240)	VGA (640×480)
Sound+ Video	Super fine	Approx. 4 minutes	Approx. 15 minutes	Approx. 4 minutes
	Fine	Approx. 8 minutes	Approx. 30 minutes	Approx. 8 minutes
	Normal	Approx. 17 minutes	Approx. 54 minutes	Approx. 17 minutes
Movie only	Super fine	–	–	–
	Fine	–	–	–
	Normal	–	–	–
Sound only		–		

Number of Items that can be Stored, Registered and Protected in the FOMA Terminal

The maximum number of items that can be stored or protected varies depending on the data size or memory usage.

Type		Maximum number of savable items	Maximum number of protectable items
Phonebook		1,000*1	—
Schedule	Schedule	200	—
	Holiday	100	—
To do		50	—
Memo		50	—
Mail	Inbox*2	1,000	1,000
	Outbox	500	500
	Unsent message		—
Message	MessageR	100	100
	MessageF	100	100
Template		100*3	—
Bookmarks	i-mode	100	—
	Full Browser	100	—
Screen memo		50	25
i-αppli		100*3	—
Data box	Images*4	1,000*3	—
	Movie/i-motion	1,000*3	—
	Melody	1,000*3	—

*1 Up to 50 entries can be saved on the UIM.
*2 Includes a message "♪Welcome Mail♪ " saved in "Inbox".
*3 Includes pre-installed data.
*4 Up to 30 animations can be saved. (This number is included within 1,000, which is the maximum number of savable images).

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phone

SAR Certification Information

Mobile phone L-01A meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure of radio waves. This technical regulation has been established based on scientific studies so that radio waves emitted from radio devices such as mobile phones used near a human head give no bad influence to the human health. It defines that Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), representing the average amount of energy of radio waves absorbed to a temporal part of human body, should not exceed a permissible value of 2W/kg**. This permissible value includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of users, regardless of the age, body size and other conditions of individuals and is equal to the international guideline recommended by ICNIRP*** which has cooperative relationships with World Health Organization (WHO).
All mobile phones should be confirmed to comply with the governmental regulation according to Radio Law before they are released. The SAR value of L-01A is 0.345 W/kg. This value has been acquired by Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and is the maximum value of those measured under the maximum transmission power of the mobile phone in the procedure defined by the government. Though there may be some differences in SAR value among individual products, they all meet the technical regulation. In addition, mobile phones are designed to have the lowest transmission power required for communication with base stations; therefore, the SAR value during actual phone operation becomes smaller.

SAR value of this mobile phone meets the regulations of individual countries it is available.
For further information about SAR, visit the following web sites:

World Health Organization (WHO)	: http://www.who.int/peh-emf/en/
ICNIRP	: http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC	: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/ index.htm
TELEC	: http://telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DOCOMO	: http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/
LG Mobile	: http://jp.lgmobile.com/

* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
** The technical regulation is defined in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
*** International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

Declaration of Conformity

The product "L-01A" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.
This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.
Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR* limits** for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.336W/kg. While there may be differences between the SAR* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*** the EU requirements for RF exposure.

* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR

** The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

*** Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Important Safety Information

AIRCRAFT
Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers a 'flight mode' or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board

DRIVING
Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

HOSPITALS
Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

PETROL STATIONS
Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

INTERFERENCE
Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

Pacemakers
Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and do not carry it in a breast pocket.

Hearing Aids
Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

For other Medical Devices:
Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories may fall under the category of application of Japan Export Control Regulations ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and relevant laws and regulations). U.S. Re-export Regulations (Export Administration Regulations: EAR) is applied to this product and its accessories. If you export or re-export this product or its accessories, please follow the necessary procedures at your own risk and expense. For details about the procedures, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry or the U.S. Department of Commerce.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyrights and Portrait Rights

You have no right to copy, modify, or distribute contents such as text, images, music, map data, or software downloaded from web sites on the Internet, or images captured by the cameras of this product without permission from the copyright holder except when the copy or quote is for personal use that is allowed under Copyright Law. Note that it may be prohibited to capture or record live performances or exhibitions even for personal use.
Refrain from taking portraits of other persons and uploading such portraits to web sites without their consent, as this violates portrait rights.

Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-αppli", "i-αppliDX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING" "Public mode", "i-area", "i-motion", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "mopera", "mopera U", "sigmarion", "musea", "Dual Network", "visualnet", "V-live", "i-Channel", "Security Scan", "DoPa", "IMCS", "FOMA" logo, "i-mode" logo, "i-αppli" logo, "Music&Video Channel" logo, "HIGH-SPEED" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO, Inc.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- McAfee® is a registered trademark or trademark of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the US and other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2008 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE Inc.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE, and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- This product contains NetFront Browser and NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS Co., Ltd.
- ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., LTD in the United States, Japan, and other countries.
  Copyright© 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
- Adobe and Adobe Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- microSDHC logo is a trademark.
- Microsoft®, Windows® and Windows Vista® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Other company names or product names described in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- Contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated is installed on this product.
  Adobe Flash Lite Copyright© 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- This product contains the module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product uses city rail maps by (株) 国際地学協会 (International Geographical Society Co., Ltd.).
- In this manual, each OS (Japanese version) is described as follows:
  - Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, and Ultimate) operating system.
  - Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system, or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Patent Portfolio License. If you use MPEG-4 videos for private purpose without any profits, you are allowed to use them only when:
  - Recording MPEG-4 Movies that are compliant with the standard of MPEG-4 Visual.
  - Playing back MPEG-4 Movies that consumers recorded for non-commercial activities.
  - Playing back MPEG-4 Movies obtained from MPEG-LA licensees.

  For details, contact MPEG LA, LLC.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390	5,535,239
5,267,262	5,600,754	5,416,797	5,490,165
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483
5,414,796	5,659,569	5,056,109	5,506,865
5,228,054	5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420
5,710,784	5,778,338		

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

Index/Quick Manual/퀵매뉴얼

Index ····· 454
Quick Manual ····· 462
퀵매뉴얼 ····· 472

Index

Using Index

- This index can be used not only as a usual index but also as a table of contents sorted in alphabetical order. You can find the terms used in this manual as well as words that summarize the contents of the chapters or sections. If you cannot find what you are looking for, try another keyword.

Example: To create Deco-mail

Deco-mail 131
Change 134
Create 131
Palette display 131

Compose mail 128
Add address (multi-address transmission) 129
Attach file 135
Deco-mail 131
Mail address 129

- For the settings that are handled at the i-mode Center, such as Mail Address, Receive/Reject Mail, Limit Mail Size, or Suspend/Resume Mail settings, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- For data communication, see "Manual for PC Connection" included on the bundled CD-ROM.

A

Accessories 24
Additional guide 371
Additional service 370
Add 370
Perform 370
After-sales service 421
Alarm 320
Animation
Create 284
Operations 285
View 285
Anonymous caller 120
Answer mode 68
Any key answer 68
Arrival call act 365
Auto answer 342
Auto key lock 117

B

Backlight 103
Bar code reader 219, 272
Battery level 46, 47
Battery pack 43
Bookmark 176
Compose mail 178
Connect 177
Copy microSD 178
Delete 178
Edit title 177
Ir exchange 178
List 177
Save 176

C

Cache 172
Calculator 338
Call barring 384
Call display 101
Call duration 334
Call forwarding 362
Enable/disable guidance 363
Call forwarding (Int.) 385
Call waiting 360
Make a call 360
Receive a call 360, 361
Caller ID request service 364
Caller ID request (Int.) 386

Caller ID notification 50, 60
184/186 60
Call/mail history 92
Call/mail lock 115
Camera
Auto timer 216
Capacity for still images 430
Capture movie 212
Capture still images 209
Movie capture duration 431
Save format of still images or movies 208
Switch inner/outer cameras . . . 214
Zoom 215
Cancel keypad lock 30
Capture
Movies 212
Still images 209
Change i-mode password 174
Change security code 112
Character entry 345
Auto cursor 351
Copy/cut/paste 354
Enter characters 347
Entering pictographs/symbols/emoticons 349
Input common phrases 349
Input Kuten code 354
Prediction input setting 351
Switch input modes 346
Charge 44, 45
Charging time 45
Check call costs 334
Check new messages 139, 160
Check new SMS 165
Clear memory 123
Clear microSD 123
Close setting 69
Common phrases
Input 349
Compose mail 128
Add address (multi-address transmission) 129
Attach file 135
Deco-mail 131
Mail address 129
Preview 129
Save 129
Select template 134
Send 128
Copy files
Image files 277
Melody files 294
Movie/i-motion movie files 288
Copyrights 437
Country code
Auto international dial 63
Country code list 64
Create folders
Bookmark 177
Data box 277, 278
Mail 149
Custom menu 331

D

Data access lock 116
Data box 274
Data communication 387
AT commands 391
Flow of setup 391
Operating environment 389
Date counter 329
Date search 331
Date&Time format 107
Deco-mail 131
Change 134
Create 131
Palette display 131
Palette operations 132
Delete call cost icon 335
Delete files
Image files 277, 278
Melody files 294
Movie/i-motion movie files 288
Delete folders
Bookmark 177
Data box 277
Mail 149
Dial keys assignments to characters 406
Dialing screen setting 102
Display 27, 31
Display call/mail logs 118
Display images 276
Operations 277
Display phonebook image 103
DOCOMO keitai datalink 392
Document viewer 316
Download
Chaku-Uta Full® 245
Dictionary 182
Image 180
i-melody 181
Template 182

Download dictionary 356
DTMF 61
Dual network 366

E

Earphone 341
Edit common phrases. 352
  Edit 353
  Store 352
Edit dictionary 355
  Delete 355
Edit movies/i-motion movies 292
  Capture 292
  Clipping 292
Edit image 281
  Crop 283
  Effect. 282
  Insert 282
  Mirror 282
  Resize 283
  Retouch. 282
  Rotate 281
  Undo 282
Emoticons
  Edit 350
  Input 349
English guidance. 366
Error messages 414
Export administration regulations . . . 437
External connector terminal. 28

F

Flash 173
  Operations. 280
  Play 279
  Set as stand-by display. . . 278, 279
Flat-plug earphone/microphone with
  switch 341
  Make a call 341
  Receive a call 341
Font size
  i-mode 184
  Mail. 157
Framed web page 197
Full browser 193
  Action menu 200
  Bookmark. 198
  Go to location. 198
  Goto Page. 198
  Input address 195
  Last URL 194
  Operations in Full browser 198
  PagePilot. 198
  Play animation 199
  Reload 198
  Shortcut list 200
  SSL info. 199
  Switch between i-mode and Full
    browser. 201
  Upload 201
  Window operation. 199
Full browser settings 202
  Access setting. 202
  Cookie setting 202
  Display mode setting. 203
  Home URL 203
  Referer setting 202
  Script setting 203
  Set Image display. 203
  Set NW transmission 202
  TLS 202
  View settings 203
  Window open guard setting . . . 203
  Zoom 203

H

Handset theme. 104
Hands-free. 53, 66, 76
Holding 70
Holding tone 70
Hour indication 343

I

i-Channel 189
  Channel list 190
  Ticker 190
i-Channel setting
  Ticker setting 191
Image
  Edit 281
  Full screen 279
  Set as stand-by display . . . 278, 279
  View settings 280
  Zoom 279
i-melody 181
iMenu 169
i-mode 167
  Add to phonebook. 173
  Bookmark 176
  Change character code 170
  Compose mail 170

Go to location. 174
Image display 170
Last URL. 171
My Menu 173
Operations on sites. 172
Reload 170
Retry 170
Save image. 180
Screen memo 178
Site view 169
Sound effect. 170
Switch between i-mode and Full browser 201
URL history. 175
View details 170
i-mode fault diagnosis site 423
i-mode mail. 126
i-mode password 111
i-mode setting 184
Auto-display message 160
Connection timeout. 185
Host selection 186
i-motion auto play 189
i-motion type. 189
Melody auto play 160
SSL certificate. 187
i-motion. 187
Download 188
i-motion auto play 189
i-motion type. 189
Inbox 143
Incoming call volume 69
Infrared communication 306
Authentication password 308
Receive all 308
Receive one 308
Send all 308
Send one 307
Infrared port 307
Infrared remote control 309
Inner camera. 28
Intellectual property right 437
International access code 63
Auto assist setting 63
IDD prefix setting. 63
International calls 61
International dial assist 63
International roaming 374
i-αppli 261
Delete 272
Download. 262
Software info. 265
Start. 263
Upgrade. 265
i-αppli info
Auto start info 271
Security error history 271
Trace info 271
i-αppli setting
Auto start 269
Change ring tone/image 266
Display SW info 263
Set i-αppli To 269
Set NW transmission. 265
Use icons 266
View p.book/call records 266
i-αppli Stand-by display 270
i-αppli To function. 184

J

Japan article number code 219

K

Keypad tone 97
Korean-language input 350
Kuten code 354

L

Last URL. 171
Light. 28
Lighting LED. 106
List of ring tones 95
Lock all 113

M

Mail
Add to phonebook. 141
Attachment 142
Auto sort 145
Delete. . . 150, 151, 152, 153, 154
Display 138, 143
Filter 150, 153, 155
Forward 140
Menu. 127
Protect ON/OFF . . . 151, 153, 154
Reply. 140
Retrieve attached file. 141
Set/release security 149
Mail ring duration 98
Mail setting. 157

Mail To function. 183
Main specifications. 428
Manner mode 98
Manner mode set 99
Media To function 183
Melody
Adjust volume 294
Set as a ring tone 294
Set as an alarm tone. 294, 295
Memo 339
Register 339
View memos. 340
Memory status 343
Menu customization 104
Menu guidance 104
Menu list. 394
Menu operations 34
Main menu 34
Notation for operations. 37
Notations 38
Sub menu 35
Touch media menu 38
MessageR/F
Attachment 142
Auto-display message 160
Delete 161, 162
Display 161
Melody auto play 160
Protect ON/OFF. 162
Receive 159
Save image. 180
microSD card. 296
Backup 300, 302
Data update 302
Exchange personal data 300
Folder structure 303
Insert/remove 297
Memory info. 303
Reset microSD card 298
Use as a reader/writer 305
Missed call 72
Move files
Image files. 277
Melody files 294
Movie/i-motion movie files 288
Movie/i-motion movie
Edit. 292
Set as a ring tone 289
Set as an alarm tone. 289
Set as stand-by display. 289
Movie-mode 212
Multi Number 368
Check primary number settings. . . 368
Set primary number 368
Multiaccess 317
Combination 407
Multitask. 319
Combination 408
Music life 258
Music playback 244
Continuous playback 248
Delete 256
Display jacket image 252
Display/switch menu. 244
Download Chaku-Uta Full® 245
Music life. 258
Music player 246
Music&Video Channel player . . . 240
Play in background. 259
Playlists. 253
Quick playlist. 255
Save SD-Audio data. 245
SD-Audio player 247
Set as a ring tone. 251
Set as an alarm tone 251
View lyrics 252
Music player 246
Operations. 249
Music&Video Channel
Chapter list 242
Display/switch menu 244
Move program 242
Operation. 240
Play in background. 259
Play programs. 240
Play saved programs 243
Set programs 238
Music&Video Channel player 240
My Menu (i-mode). 173
My picture 276

N

Network search mode 382
Network security code 110
Network services 357
Noise reduction 66
Nuisance call blocking 363
Number of items that can be stored/
protected on the FOMA terminal. . . .432
Number setting 368

O

Omakase Lock 114

On hold tone 70
Operator name display 383
Options and related devices . . . 24, 411
Outbox 144
Outer camera 28
Overseas use 373
Available services 374
Make a call 379
Network services 384
Overseas use 376
Preparation before departure . . . 375
Receive a call 381
Setting after returning to Japan . . . 379
Own number 50, 332

P

Pause 61
Phone 51
International calls 61
Make 52
Receive 66
Phone To/AV Phone To function . . . 183
Phonebook 77
About phonebook 78
Delete 90
Edit 90
Multiple choice 91
No. of phonebook 91
Save (Phone) 78
Save (Received calls, etc.) 82
Save (UIM) 81
Search 85
View phonebook entries 87
Phonebook settings 91
Photo-mode 209
Pictograph
Input 349
PIN1 code 111, 112
Change 112
PIN1 code request 112
PIN2 code 111
Change 112
Play in background 259
Play melodies 293
Operations 294
Pause 294
Play movies/i-motion movies 286
Fast forward/rewind 287
Operations 287
Playlists
Create 253, 255
Play 253
Portrait rights 437
Power ON/OFF 47
Power saver mode 103
Preferred NW lists 382
Prefix dial 65
Preinstalled 274
Protect ON/OFF
Inbox 151
MessageR/F 162
Outbox 153, 154
Screen memo 179, 180
Public mode (Drive mode) 71
Public mode (Power OFF) 72
PUK code 111, 113

Q

QR code 219
Quality alarm 98
Quick manual 446
Quick playlist 255
Quick search 92

R

Receive option 138
Received calls 58
Add to phonebook 82
Received mails 155
Receiver volume 69
Recent calls 60
Recent mails 155
Recent played 246
Reconnect alarm 66
Record message 72
Play/delete 74
Settings 73
Redial 56
Add to phonebook 82
Reject all calls 120
Reject on list 118
Reject unknown 122
Remembering dates 329
Remote access setting (Int.) 386
Remote control 367
Rename folders
Bookmark 177
Data box 277
Mail 149
Reset i-Channel 191

Reset learnt info 356
Reset settings 123
Roaming guidance setting. 383
Roaming guide (Int.) 386

S

SAR. 435
Save/edit group name 83
Scanning function. 426
Schedule 323
  Register new schedule events . . .323
  View events 324
Screen memo. 178
  Delete 179, 180
  Display 179
  Edit title 179, 180
  List. 179
  Protect ON/OFF. 179, 180
  Retry 180
  Save. 178
  Show properties. 180
  URL info 179
SD-Audio player. 247
  Operations 249
Search phonebook 85
  Domain search. 86
  Group search 86
  Memory No. search 86
  Phone No. search 86
  Reading search 86
  Show all data 86
Secret mode 118
Security code
  Network security code 110
  Terminal security code 110
Security settings. 109, 124
Select effect tone 97
Select language. 48
Select ring tone. 94
Self mode 116
Send files
  Image files. 278
  Melody files 294, 295
  Movie/i-motion movie files . . . 288, 289
SEND key only 68
Sent mails. 155
Service numbers 367
Services available from the FOMA terminal 410
Set as an alarm tone 251, 289, 294, 295
Set call cost limit 335
Set Date&Time 49
Set in-call arrival act 365
Set mute ring (sec.) 121
Simple menu. 105
Site view 169
Slide up 68
SMS
  Add to phonebook 141
  Create 163
  Delete . . . 150, 151, 152, 153, 154
  Filter. 150, 153, 155
  Forward 140
  Protect ON/OFF . . . 151, 153, 154
  Reply 140
  Save. 164
  Send. 163
  Set/release security. 149
SMS settings 165
  Auto sort 145
  SMS center 166
  SMS input character 166
  SMS report request 165
  SMS validity period. 165
Soft keys. 30
Software update. 423
Sort
  Inbox. 150
  MessageR/F 161
  Outbox 153
  Unsent message 155
Sort folders
  Bookmark. 177
  Data box 277
  Mail. 149
SSL communication. 171
Stand-by display. 99
Stopwatch. 336
Sub address 65
Sub menu operations 35
Symbols and special characters
  Input 349

T

Template 134
  Create new 134
  Delete. 135
  Download 182
  Edit title 135
  List 134
  Select. 134
Terminal security code 110

Ticker
i-Channel 190
i-motion 188
To do list 327
Register 327
View To do list 328
Touch media 312
Touch panel 38
Touchpad 30
Touch-tone signals 61
Trademarks 438
Troubleshooting 412

U

UIM 39
Insert/remove 39
Security code 40
Security function (operational restriction) 41
Type 42
Unit converter 336
Unsent message 144
URL history 175
Usage time 45
USB mode setting 305

V

Vibrator 96
Video phone set 75
Video play software 411
Videophone calls
Hands-free call 53, 66, 76
Holding image 75
Make 52
Receive 66
Response hold image 75
Switch camera 56
Switch substitute/camera image . . . 55
View file information
Flash file 280
Image files 280
Melody files 295
Movie/i-motion movie files 291
Voice mail 358
Voice mail (Int.) 385
Volume 95

W

Wake-up display 102
Warranty 421
Web To function 183
WORLD CALL 61
World time 335
WORLD WING 374

Numerals, etc.

1Seg
Activate 1Seg 229
Auto channel set 227
Booking program list 232
Channel search 230
Channel settings 227
Data broadcasting 234
Reset 1Seg settings 235
Select area 227
TVlink 234
1Seg settings 235
1Seg antenna 28
184/186 60

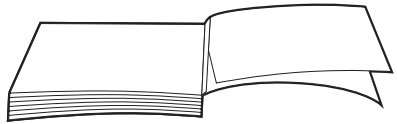
Quick Manual

Using Quick Manual

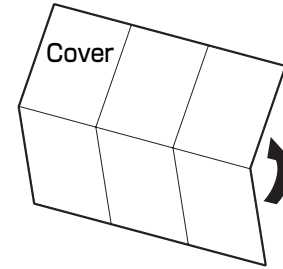
Detach the Quick Manual included in this manual by cutting along the cutoff line and fold it as shown below.
Refer to Quick Manual (Overseas Use) when you use an International roaming (WORLD WING) overseas.

- If using scissors, be careful not to hurt yourself.

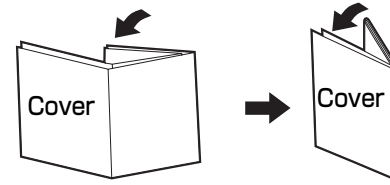
1 Detach the Quick Manual by cutting along the cutoff line



2 Fold lengthwise



3 Fold widthwise twice at the lines



cutoff line

docomo L-01A Quick Manual

General inquiries <docomo Information Center>

0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish, Korean.
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

■ From a DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)
(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

■ From land-line phones (In Japanese only)
0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

■ From a DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)
(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

■ From land-line phones (In Japanese only)
0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

· Make sure that the number is correct before making a call.

Switching Languages

Switching the Display Language to English or Korean

[メニュー (Menu)] ▶ (設定 (Settings)) ▶ "Select language"* ▶ "日本語 (Japanese)"/"English"/"한국어(Korean)"

* "マルチリンガル (Multilingual)" appears when display language is set to English or Korean.

Switch Input Modes in the SMS Message

You can send/receive SMS in Korean between terminals that support Korean. To enter text in Korean, set "JP/KR(70Chara)"

Stand-by display ▶ [✉] ▶ "Mail setting" ▶ "SMS" ▶ "SMS input character" ▶ "Japanese(70Chara)"/"JP/KR(70Chara)"/"English(160Chara)"

Saving Contacts

Saving Contacts

Stand-by display ▶ (●)(for 1+ seconds) ▶ Enter each item ▶ [−][Done]

■ **Select the saving destination**
"(Save to)" ▶ "Phone"/"UIM"

■ **Set a memory number**
"(Memory No.)" ▶ Enter a memory number*

* Appear for the FOMA terminal Phonebook only.

■ **Set name**
"Name" ▶ Enter a Name

■ **Set the reading**
"Reading" ▶ Enter a Reading

■ **Set a phone number**
"Phone number" ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Select an icon to set

■ **Set a mail address**
"Mail address" ▶ Enter a mail address ▶ Select an icon to set

■ **Set a group**
"(Select a group)" ▶ Select a group

Saving Contacts from Redial Logs/Received Calls

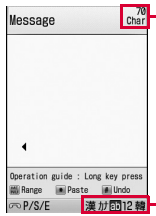
to display Redial logs/Received calls ▶ Select a target entry ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ "Add to phonebook" ▶ "New registration"/"Add registration" ▶ Select the entry to save* ▶ Save the entry ▶ [−][Done]

* Perform only for "Add registration".

Editing Phonebook

Select a Phonebook entry ▶ [−][Menu] ▶ "Edit" ▶ Save/Edit Phonebook entry ▶ [−][Done] ▶ "Yes"

Character Entry



Number of characters (bytes) that can be input further

Show the input mode

* "韓" appears when "SMS input character" is set to "JP/KR(70Chara)".

Main Operations on the Character Entry Screen

■ **Switch input modes**
[−][Mode] ▶ [−][Change] several times

■ **Switch between full-pitch/half-pitch**
[−][Mode] ▶ (*)

■ **Switch to Pictograph/Symbol/Emoticon input mode**
[↩] ▶ [−][Change] several times

■ **Enter voiced/semivoiced sound symbol or switch upper/lower case**
Enter a character and press [*] several times

■ **Enter punctuation**
Press [*] several times

■ **Enter a line feed**
[#]/(●)

■ **Enter a space**
[−][Menu] ▶ "Special input" ▶ "Space"/(●) at the end of a sentence

Example of Character Entry

■ **Enter "ドコモ (DOCOMO)"**

Enter "どこも (DOCOMO)" in Hiragana and Kanji mode

"ど (DO)" : Press [4] 5 times ▶ [*] once

"こ (CO)" : Press [2] 5 times

"も (MO)" : Press [7] 5 times

▶ ◉ to move the cursor to Prediction option field ▶ Use ✣ to move the cursor to "ドコモ (DOCOMO)" ▶ ●[Select]

Using the Camera

Capturing Still Image

Stand-by display ▶ [0] ▶ Frame the shot and ●[(Take)]/[0] ▶ ●[(Save)]/[0]

Capturing Movies

Stand-by display ▶ [0](for 1+ seconds) ▶ Frame the shot and ●[Rec.(Rec.)]/[0] ▶ ●[■]/[0] ▶ ●[(Save)]/[0]

Playing Music Data

[Menu] ▶ ♫ (MUSIC) ▶ "Music player" ▶ "All songs" ▶ Move the cursor to a music data ▶ ●[Play]

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

Making Videophone Calls

Enter a phone number ▶ [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call" ▶ To end the call, [End]

Receiving Videophone Calls

Receive a videophone call ▶ [Answer] ▶ To end the call, [End]

- [Vol.]: Adjust the earpiece volume
- [End]: Place the call on response hold.
- ● [Image]: Answer with substitute image

cutoff line

Main Operations during Videophone Calls

■ **Place a call on hold/Cancel hold**

[Menu] ▶ "Hold"

- ●[Active]: Cancel hold

■ **Set/Cancel Hands-free call**

●[Spk ON]

- Press ● again to cancel.

■ **Switch between camera image/substitute image**

[Image]

- Press [Image] again to return to the camera image.

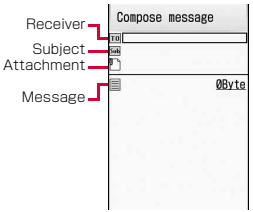
■ **Switch between the Inner and Outer cameras**

[Menu] ▶ "Switch camera"

- Select "Switch camera" again to return to the Inner camera.

i-mode Mail

Composing/Sending i-mode Mail



■ **Display the Compose message screen**

Stand-by display ▶ [Mail] (for 1+ seconds)

■ **Enter the receiver**

Select [TO](Receiver) field ▶ "Direct input" ▶ Enter the address

■ **Enter the subject**

Select [Sub](Subject) field ▶ Enter the subject

■ **Enter the message**

Select [Msg](Message) field ▶ Enter the message text

■ **Send a mail**

[Send]

cutoff line

Attaching Files

■ **Attach an image/movie/melody/Phonebook entry/Calendar event/To do task/Bookmark**

Select (Attachment) field in the Compose message screen (P10) ▶ Select the attachment type ▶ Move the cursor to the folder ▶ ●[Open] ▶ Move the cursor to the file ▶ ●[Select]

* The method to select a file differs depending on a file.

■ **Capture and attach a still image/movie**

Select (Attachment) field in the Compose message screen (P10) ▶ "Image"/"Movie" ▶ "Activate camera" ▶ Capture still image/movie ▶ ●[(Save)]

Receiving i-mode Mail

i-mode mail arrives ▶ "Mail" ▶ Select the folder ▶ Select the i-mode mail to display

Check new messages

Stand-by display ▶ ▶ "Check new messages"

Other Mail Functions

■ **Reply to a Mail**

Open the mail to reply ▶ /[Menu] ▶ "Reply/Forward" ▶ "Reply"/"Reply with quote" ▶ Enter subject and message text ▶ [Send]

■ **Forward a Mail**

Open the mail to forward ▶ /[Menu] ▶ "Reply/Forward" ▶ "Forward" ▶ Enter the address ▶ [Send]

Compose/Send SMS

Stand-by display ▶ ▶ "SMS" ▶ "Compose SMS" ▶ Select TO (Receiver) field ▶ "Direct input" ▶ Enter the address ▶ Select (Message) field ▶ Enter the message text ▶ [Send]

Menu List

Icon	Function name
Mail	Inbox
	Outbox
	Unsent message
	Compose message
	Check new messages
	Receive option
	SMS
	Template
	Mail setting
i-mode	iMenu
	Bookmark
	Screen memo
	Last URL
	Go to location
	i-Channel

Icon	Function name
i-mode	MessageR/F
	Check new messages
	i-mode setting
	Full browser
i-αppli	Software list
	i-αppli info
	i-αppli settings
Phonebook& Logs	Add to phonebook
	Search phonebook
	No. of phonebook
	Phonebook settings
	Call/Mail history
	Call duration
	Call costs

Icon	Function name
Data box	My picture
	Music
	Music&Video ch
	i-motion
	Melody
	SD-Audio
MUSIC	Recent played*
	Music player
	Music&Video ch
	SD-Audio player
1Seg	Activate 1Seg
	Booking program list
	TVlink
	Channel settings
	1Seg settings

* "Now playing" is displayed when playing

Icon	Function name
Camera	Photo-mode
	Movie-mode
	Bar code reader
Stationery	Schedule
	Alarm
	Memo
	To do list
	World time
	Calculator
	Unit converter
	Remembering dates
	Stopwatch

Icon	Function name	
Settings	Service	
		Voice mail
		Call waiting
		Call forwarding
		Nuisance call blocking
		Caller ID notification
		Caller ID request
		Set in-call arrival act
		Arrival call act
		Others

Icon	Function name	
Settings	Sounds&Vibration	
		Select ring tone
		Select effect tone
		Volume
		Vibrator
		Manner mode set
		Mail ring duration
		Set mute ring(sec.)
	Display	
		Stand-by display
		Call display
		Wake-up display
		Dialing
		Menu settings
		Backlight
		Handset theme
		Lighting LED

cutoff line

Icon	Function name	
Settings	Call/VT/Dialing	
		Incoming call
		Videophone
		Call feature
		Self mode
		Prefix dial
		Sub address setting
		Earphone
	Lock/Security	
		Lock
		Secret mode
		Display Call/Mail logs
		Auto key lock
		Change security code
		PIN code
		Scanning function

Icon	Function name	
Settings	Int'l roaming	
		Network
		Voice mail (Int.)
		Call forwarding (Int.)
		Remote access setting(Int.)
		Caller ID request(Int.)
		Roaming guide(Int.)
		Call barring
		Int'l Service Guide
	Int'l dial assist	
		Auto assist setting
		IDD prefix setting
		Auto international dial
		Country code list

Icon	Function name	
Settings	Date&Time	
		Set Date&Time
		Date&Time format
		Hour indication
	マルチリンガル (Select language)	
	Others	
		Character input
		Memory status
		Power saver mode
		Reset/Clear
		Software update
		USB mode setting
		Battery level
Own number		

cutoff line

Icon	Function name
LifeKit	Bar code reader
	Receive Ir data
	microSD
	Custom menu
	Record message
	Touch media

Manner Mode

[#] (for 1+ seconds) in Stand-by

Public Mode (Drive Mode)

[*] (for 1+ seconds) in Stand-by

Network Services

Voice Mail Service

Playing Messages

[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Voice mail" ▶ "Play messages" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the instructions of the voice guidance

Activating Voice Mail Service

[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Voice mail" ▶ "Activate" ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the ringing time with dial keys

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Voice mail" ▶ "Deactivate" ▶ "Yes"

Call Waiting

Activating Call Waiting

[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Call waiting" ▶ "Activate" ▶ "Yes"

Deactivating Call Waiting

[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Call waiting" ▶ "Deactivate" ▶ "Yes"

Holding the Active Call to Answer Another Call

A call arrives ▶ [Answer]

■ **Switch the calls**
[OK] ▶ [Menu] ▶ "Switch"

■ **Disconnect the current call**
[End]

■ **Disconnect a call put on hold**
[OK] ▶ [Menu] ▶ "Switch" ▶ [End]

Terminating the Active Call to Answer Another Call

A call arrives ▶ [OK] ▶ [Menu] ▶ "End active call"

Call Forwarding Service

Activating Call Forwarding Service

[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Call forwarding" ▶ "Activate" ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Register the forwarding number" ▶ Enter the phone number to forward ▶ [Done] ▶ "Set ring time" ▶ Enter the ring time with dial keys ▶ [Done]

Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

[Menu] ▶ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Call forwarding" ▶ "Deactivate" ▶ "Yes"

Services Available from the FOMA Terminal

Services available from the FOMA terminal	Phone number
Directory assistance service (charges apply: service and call fees) (No assistance provided for subscribers not listed)	(No prefix) 104
Telegraph (charge applies: telegraph fee)	(No prefix) 115
Time tone (charge applies)	(No prefix) 117
Weather forecast (charge applies)	Area code + 177
Police emergency	(No prefix) 110
Fire and ambulance	(No prefix) 119
Marine emergency call	(No prefix) 118
Disaster emergency message dial (charge applies)	(No prefix) 171
Collect call (charges apply: service and call fees)	(No prefix) 106

Main Icons

1 Signal strength
Strong ⟷ Weak
Self mode is set to "ON"

2 (Blinking) i-mode connection engaged

3 (White) i-mode mail stored at the i-mode Center
(White) MessageR stored at the i-mode Center
(White) MessageF stored at the i-mode Center
(White) i-mode mail and MessageR/F stored at the i-mode Center

4 (White) Unread i-mode mail and SMS stored

5 (White) Unread MessageR stored

cutoff line

6 (White) Unread MessageF stored

7 Battery level

8 Lock all is activated

9 (Pink) Manner mode is activated

10 A ring tone for voice/videophone call is inactive, and vibration is active
A ring tone for voice/videophone call is inactive, and vibration is inactive

11 A ring tone for mail or MessageR/F is inactive, and vibration is active
A ring tone for mail or MessageR/F is inactive, and vibration is inactive

12 Public mode (Drive mode) is activated

13 Record message is activated

14 Outgoing voice/videophone calls are restricted

15 "Data access lock" is set to "ON"
"Secret mode" is set to "ON"
"Secret mode" is set to "Secret data only mode"

16 Voice mail message stored (the number indicates number of messages)

17 New Record message stored (the number indicates number of messages)

<Emergency contact numbers for loss of FOMA terminal>

Omakase Lock

* Omakase Lock is a fee-based service. However, no charge applies if you are the docomo Premier Club member, or upon or during suspension of your subscription.

Setting/Canceling Omakase Lock

0120-524-360

Available for 24 hours (In Japanese only)

Emergency Contact Numbers for Others

<Contact number: >
<Contact number: >
<Contact number: >

* Make sure the number is correct before making a call.

cutoff line

docomo L-01A

Quick Manual (Overseas Use)

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas <docomo Information Center> (24 hours)

(In Japanese only)

From a DOCOMO mobile phone

International access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** (toll free)

* From a fixed line phone, international phone call charges to Japan apply.

* From L-01A, dial +81-3-5366-3114 (to enter "+", press 0 for 1+ seconds).

From a fixed line phone

<Universal Number>

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

* Domestic call charges for your overseas location may apply to calls.

* For International access codes for major countries (table 1), see P9. For International prefix number for the universal number (table 2), see P10.

Failures encountered overseas <Network Technical Operation Center> (24 hours)

From a DOCOMO mobile phone

International access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** (toll free)

* From a fixed line phone, international phone call charges to Japan apply.

* From L-01A, dial +81-3-6718-1414 (to enter "+", press 0 for 1+ seconds).

From a fixed line phone

<Universal Number>

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

* Domestic call charges for your overseas location may apply to calls.

* For International access codes for major countries (table 1), see P9. For International prefix number for the universal number (table 2), see P10.

- If your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, contact DOCOMO immediately and temporarily halt your subscription.
- If the FOMA terminal which you purchased is broken, please bring it to a repair counter designated by DOCOMO after you return to Japan.

Preparation for Overseas Use

This FOMA terminal only supports 3G service area.

i-mode Setting

■ **Set before leaving Japan**

i ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶ "Options" ▶ "International Settings" ▶ "i-mode services Settings" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select the i-mode password field ▶ Enter i-mode password ▶ "Select"

■ **Set while overseas**

i ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "English" ▶ "Options" ▶ "International settings" ▶ "i-mode services Settings" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select the i-mode password field ▶ Enter i-mode password ▶ "Select"

Setting Remote Control

■ **Set before leaving Japan**

[—] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Remote control" ▶ "Activate" ▶ "Yes"

■ **Set while overseas**

[—] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Remote access setting(Int.)" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the instructions of the voice guidance

Dual Clock Settings

[—] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Display" ▶ "Stand-by display" ▶ "Clock type" ▶ "Dual clock" ▶ "2nd City" ▶ ● [List] ▶ Use ✣ to move the cursor to the target area ▶ ● [Select] ▶ Use ✣ to move the cursor to a city ▶ ● [Set] [—] [Done]

Available Communication Services

This FOMA terminal can be used in the 3G service area.

- Voice call
- Videophone call
- i-mode
- i-mode mail
- SMS
- i-Channel
- Data Communication

Switching Networks

By default, "Network search mode" is set to "Auto". An available network is automatically set overseas.

Setting the Network Manually

[—] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Network" ▶ "Network search mode" ▶ "Manual" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select the network

Setting Preferred Networks

[—] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Network" ▶ "Preferred NW lists" ▶ [—] [Add] ▶ "UPLMN manual select" ▶ Enter the MCC (country code) and MNC (network number) ▶ [—] [Done] ▶ "Yes"

Display

The connected network name is displayed.

Setting After Returning to Japan

With default setting, when you return to Japan, the FOMA terminal automatically connects to the FOMA network and appears at the top of the screen.

■ **When not connect to the FOMA network automatically**

[—] [Menu] ▶ ⚙ (Settings) ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Network" ▶ "Network search mode" ▶ "Auto" ▶ "Yes"

Making a Call

Making an International Call from Overseas

0 (for 1+ seconds) ▶ Enter "Country code - Area code (City code) - the other party's phone number" ▶ ☎

- Omit the leading "0" (zero) from the area code (city code), or from a phone number of Japanese mobile phone or PHS (in some countries or regions such as Italy, the leading "0" may be required).
  Country code → P8
- [—] [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call" : Make a videophone call

Making a Domestic Call while Overseas

Enter the phone number with the area code (city code) in the same way as in Japan ▶ ☎

- [—] [Menu] ▶ "Video phone call" : Make a videophone call

Receiving a Call

Receive a voice/videophone call ▶ [call]

Network Services

To use network services overseas, set the Remote control before leaving Japan.

Roaming Guidance Setting

· Setting must be done while in Japan.

[-/][Menu] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Service" ▶ "Others" ▶ "Roaming guidance setting" ▶ "Activate"/"Deactivate" ▶ "Yes"

Call Barring

· This may not be set depending on int'l carriers.

[-/][Menu] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Call barring" ▶ "Activate-roam" ▶ "Barring all incoming calls"/"Data calls barring" ▶ Enter the network security code ▶ "Yes"

Voice Mail (Int.)

[-/][Menu] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Voice mail (Int.)" ▶ "Activate"/"Deactivate"/"Play messages" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the instructions of the voice guidance

Call Forwarding (Int.)

[-/][Menu] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Call forwarding (Int.)" ▶ "Activate"/"Deactivate" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the instructions of the voice guidance

Roaming Guidance Setting (Int.)

[-/][Menu] ▶ [Settings] ▶ "Int'l roaming" ▶ "Roaming guide(Int.)" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the instructions of the voice guidance

Country Codes of Major Countries

Use the following numbers when you make an international call or for setting country numbers for Int'l dial assist.

Area	Code
Australia	61
Austria	43
Belgium	32
Brazil	55
Canada	1
China	86
Czech	420
Egypt	20
Fiji	679
Finland	358
France	33
Germany	49
Greece	30
Hong Kong	852
Hungary	36
India	91
Indonesia	62
Italy	39
Thailand	66

Area	Code
Japan	81
Korea	82
Macau	853
Malaysia	60
Maldives	960
Netherlands	31
New Caledonia	687
New Zealand	64
Norway	47
Peru	51
Philippines	63
Russia	7
Singapore	65
Spain	34
Sweden	46
Switzerland	41
Tahiti	689
Taiwan	886
U.S.A.	1

cutoff line

Area	Code
Turkey	90
U.K.	44

Area	Code
Vietnam	84

* For the codes of other countries and details, see the DOCOMO's International service web site.

International Access Codes for Major Countries (Table1)

Area	Code
Australia	0011
Belgium	00
Brazil	0021/0014
Canada	011
China	00
Czech	00
Denmark	00
Finland	00
France	00
Germany	00
Greece	00
Hong Kong	001
Philippines	00
Poland	00

Area	Code
Hungary	00
India	00
Indonesia	001
Ireland	00
Italy	00
Korea	001
Luxembourg	00
Macau	00
Malaysia	00
Monaco	00
Netherlands	00
New Zealand	00
Norway	00
Taiwan	002
Thailand	001

Area	Code
Portugal	00
Russia	810
Singapore	001
Spain	00
Sweden	00
Switzerland	00

Area	Code
Turkey	00
U.A.E.	00
U.K.	00
U.S.A.	011
Vietnam	00

International Prefix Number for the Universal Number (Table 2)

Area	Code
Argentina	00
Australia	0011
Austria	00
Belgium	00
Brazil	0021
Bulgaria	00
Canada	011
China	00
Colombia	009
Denmark	00
Malaysia	00
Netherlands	00
New Zealand	00

Area	Code
Finland	990
France	00
Germany	00
Hong Kong	001
Hungary	00
Ireland	00
Israel	014
Italy	00
Korea	001
Luxembourg	00
South Africa	09
Spain	00
Sweden	00

Area	Code
Norway	00
Peru	00
Philippines	00
Portugal	00
Singapore	001

Area	Code
Switzerland	00
Taiwan	00
Thailand	001
U.K.	00
U.S.A.	011

For Inquiries

For loss or theft of the FOMA terminal, accumulated amount settlement, or terminal failure while overseas, contact the "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas " on the front page of Quick Manual (Overseas Use) or "Failures encountered overseas" on P1.

· The contact numbers must be prefixed with the code assigned to the country of stay as shown in "International Access Codes for Major Countries (Table 1)" or "International Prefix Number for the Universal Number (Table 2)".

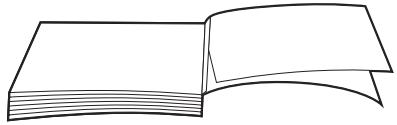
퀵매뉴얼

퀵매뉴얼 사용 방법

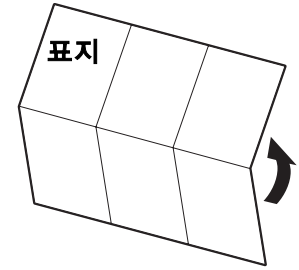
본 매뉴얼에 첨부되어 있는 퀵매뉴얼은 절취선을 따라 잘라낸 후, 아래와 같이 접어서 사용하십시오.
퀵매뉴얼(해외이용편)은 해외에서 국제 로밍(WORLD WING)을 이용할 때 휴대하십시오.

- 가위 등을 사용하여 잘라낼 경우에는 상처를 입지 않도록 주의하십시오.

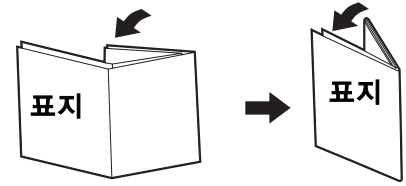
1 절취선을 따라 퀵매뉴얼을 잘라냅니다.



2 세로로 반을 접습니다.



3 페이지 선에 맞춰 가로로 2번 접습니다.



절취선

docomo L-01A

퀵매뉴얼

종합 문의처<도코모 인포메이션 센터>

0120-005-250 (무료)

※영어, 포르투갈어, 중국어, 스페인어, 한국어로 지원됩니다.
※휴대폰, PHS로도 이용할 수 있습니다.

■도코모 휴대폰 사용 시 (일본어 전용)
(국번없이)151(무료)
※일반 전화로는 이용할 수 없습니다.

■일반 전화 사용 시 (한국어)
0120-800-000(무료)
※휴대폰, PHS로도 이용할 수 있습니다.

고장 문의처

<일본어 전용>

■도코모 휴대폰 사용 시
(국번없이)113(무료)
※일반 전화로는 이용할 수 없습니다.

■일반 전화 사용 시
0120-800-000(무료)
※휴대폰, PHS로도 이용할 수 있습니다.

• 다이얼 번호를 잘 확인하여 잘못 걸지 않도록 주의하십시오.

다국어 전환

화면을 영어나 한국어 표시로 전환하기

[メニュー(메뉴)]▶(設定(설정))▶「Select language」※▶「日本語(일본어)」/「English」/「한국어」

※ 화면을 영어 또는 한국어로 전환한 경우 「マルチリンガル(다국어)」라고 표시됩니다.

SMS 본문에서 입력 모드 전환하기

한국어를 지원하는 단말기 간에 한국어로 입력된 SMS를 송수신할 수 있습니다. 한국어를 입력하려면 「일/한(70문자)」로 설정하십시오.

대기화면▶▶「Mail설정」▶「SMS」▶「SMS본문입력」▶「일본어(70문자)」/「일/한(70문자)」/「영어(160문자)」

전화번호부 등록

전화번호부 등록

대기 화면▶(1초 이상)▶항목을 각각 입력▶[완료]

■ **등록처 설정**
「(등록처선택)」▶「휴대폰」/「UIM」

■ **메모리 번호 설정**
「(메모리번호입력)」▶메모리 번호 입력※
※FOMA 단말기(본체) 전화번호부만 표시됩니다.

■ **이름 설정**
「이름」▶이름 입력

■ **후리가나 설정**
「후리가나」▶후리가나 입력

■ **전환번호 설정**
「전화번호」▶전화번호 입력▶등록할 아이콘 선택

■ **Mail 주소 설정**
「Mail주소」▶Mail 주소 입력▶등록할 아이콘 선택

■ **그룹 설정**
「(그룹 선택)」▶그룹 선택

재발신/착신이력에서 등록

으로 재발신/착신이력 표시▶재발신/착신이력 선택▶[Menu]▶「전화부등록」▶「신규등록」/「추가등록」▶등록할 전화번호부 선택※▶전화번호부 등록▶[완료]

※「추가등록」인 경우에만 선택합니다.

전화번호부 수정

전화번호부 선택▶[Menu]▶「편집」▶전화번호부 등록/수정▶[완료]▶「예」

문자 입력

입력 가능한 남은 문자 수(바이트 수) 표시

입력 모드 표시

※「韓」은 SMS 본문 입력을 「일/한(70문자)」으로 설정한 경우에 표시됩니다.

문자 입력 화면에서의 주요 조작

■ **입력 모드 전환하기**
[문자]▶[전환] 여러 번 누르기

■ **전각/반각 전환하기**
[문자]▶

■ **그림 문자/기호/이모티콘 입력 모드로 전환하기**
▶[전환] 여러 번 누르기

■ **탁음, 반탁음 입력/대문자 또는 소문자 전환**
문자를 입력하고 [*] 여러 번 누르기

■ **구두점 입력**
[*] 여러 번 누르기

■ **줄바꾸기 입력**
[#]/

■ **Space 입력**
[Menu]▶「특수입력」▶「띄움」/문장 끝에서

문자 입력 예

■「ドコモ(도코모)」입력하기

「どこも(도코모)」입력

「ど(도)」: 4 5회 ▶ ✱ 1회

「こ(코)」: 2 5회

「も(모)」: 7 5회

▶◎으로 커서를 예측 후보로 이동 ▶⊕으로 커서를「ドコモ(도코모)」로 이동 ▶●[선택]

■ 한국어로 「도코모」 입력하기

「도코모」 입력

「도」: 2 1회 ▶ ✱ 1회 ▶ 6 1회

「코」: 1 1회 ▶ ✱ 1회 ▶ 6 1회

「모」: 5 1회 ▶ 6 1회

카메라 기능

정지 화상 촬영

대기 화면 ▶○ ▶피사체를 확인하고 ●[(촬영)]/○ ▶●[(저장)]/○

동영상 촬영

대기 화면 ▶○(1초 이상) ▶피사체를 확인하고 ●[(녹화)]/○ ▶●[■]/○ ▶●[(저장)]/○

음악 데이터 재생

[Menu] ▶ (뮤직) ▶「뮤직플레이어」▶「전곡」▶음악 데이터로 커서 이동 ▶●[재생]

영상통화 걸기/받기

영상통화 걸기

상대의 전화번호 입력 ▶[Menu] ▶「영상통화발신」▶통화가 끝나면

영상통화 받기

영상통화 착신 ▶ ▶통화가 끝나면

- /: 수화음량 조절하기
- : 응답 보류하기
- ●[대체]: 대체 영상으로 응답하기

영상통화 중의 주요 조작

■ 통화 보류/보류 해제

[Menu] ▶「통화보류」

- ●[통화]: 보류 해제하기

■ 스피커폰 통화 설정/해제

●[Spk ON]

- 다시 한 번 ●을 누르면 해제됩니다.

■ 카메라 영상/대체 영상 전환

[대체]

- 다시 한 번 을 누르면 카메라 영상으로 되돌아갑니다.

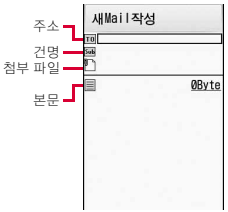
■ 인 카메라/아웃 카메라 전환

[Menu] ▶「카메라전환」

- 다시 한 번 「카메라전환」을 선택하면 인 카메라로 되돌아갑니다.

i-mode Mail

i-mode Mail 작성/송신



■ 신규 Mail 작성 화면을 표시

대기 화면 ▶ (1초 이상)

■ 주소 입력

TO(주소)열 선택 ▶「직접입력」▶주소 입력

■ 건명 입력

Sub(건명)열 선택 ▶건명 입력

■ 본문 입력

(본문)열 선택 ▶본문 입력

■ Mail 송신

[송신]

절취선

파일 첨부

■ **이미지/동영상/멜로디/전화번호부/달력/할일/Bookmark 첨부**

i-mode Mail 작성 화면(P.10)에서 (첨부파일)열 선택 ▶첨부할 파일 종류 선택 ▶폴더로 커서 이동 ▶●[열기] ▶파일로 커서 이동 ▶●[선택]

※ 파일에 따라 선택 방법이 다릅니다.

■ **정지 화상/동영상을 촬영하여 첨부**

i-mode Mail 작성 화면(P.10)에서 (첨부파일)열 선택 ▶「이미지」/「동영상」▶「카메라 기동」▶정지 화상/동영상 촬영 ▶●[(저장)]

i-mode Mail 수신

i-mode Mail 수신 ▶「Mail」▶폴더 선택 ▶표시할 i-mode Mail 선택

i-mode메시지확인

대기 화면 ▶ ▶「i-mode메시지확인」

기타 Mail 기능

■ **Mail 회신**

회신할 Mail 표시 ▶[−/][Menu] ▶「답장/전달」▶「답장」/「인용첨부답장」▶건명, 본문 입력 ▶[−][송신]

■ **Mail 전달**

전달할 Mail 표시 ▶[−/][Menu] ▶「답장/전달」▶「전달」▶주소 입력 ▶[−][송신]

SMS 작성/송신

대기 화면 ▶ ▶「SMS」▶「SMS작성」▶(주소)열 선택 ▶「직접입력」▶주소 입력 ▶(본문)열 선택 ▶본문 입력 ▶[−][송신]

메뉴 목록

아이콘	기능 이름
Mail	받은Mail
	보낸Mail
	작성중Mail
	새Mail작성
	i-mode메시지확인
	Mail선택수신
	SMS
	템플릿
	Mail설정
i-mode	i Menu
	Bookmark
	화면메모
	최근페이지접속
	인터넷접속
	i-Channel

아이콘	기능 이름
i-mode	MessageR/F
	i-mode메시지확인
	i-mode설정
	Full browser
i-αppli	i-αppli목록
	i-αppli정보
	i-αppli설정
전화번호부	전화부등록
	전화부검색
	전화부등록건수
	전화부설정
	통화/Mail사용이력
	통화시간표시
	통화요금표시

아이콘	기능 이름
데이터박스	사진
	음악
	Music&Video ch
	i-motion
	멜로디
	SD오디오
뮤직	최근재생음악※
	뮤직플레이어
	Music&Video ch
	SD오디오플레이어
1Seg	1Seg시청
	시청예약리스트
	TV링크
	채널설정
	1Seg설정

※ 재생 중인 곡이 있는 경우에는「재생중음악」이라고 표시됩니다.

아이콘	기능 이름
카메라	사진촬영
	비디오촬영
	바코드리더
알람/일정	일정
	알람
	메모
	할일
	세계시간
	계산기
	단위변환기
	D-Day
	스톱워치

아이콘	기능 이름	
설정	서비스	
		음성사서함서비스
		통화중대기
		전송전화서비스
		스팸전화차단
		발신자번호통지
		번호표시요청서비스
		통화중착신설정
		통화중착신동작선택
		그외

아이콘	기능 이름	
설정	사운드/진동	
		벨소리선택
		효과음선택
		음량설정
		진동설정
		매너모드설정
		Mail수신알림설정
		호출동작개시시간설정
	화면	
		대기화면
		착신화면
		전원켤때화면
		다이얼화면
		Menu화면
		조명설정
		컬러테마설정
		LED설정

아이콘	기능 이름	
설정	통화관련기능	
		전화착신설정
		영상통화
		통화중기능
		셀프모드
		프리픽스설정
		서브어드레스설정
		이어폰설정
	잠금/보안	
		잠금
		비밀모드
		통화/Mail이력표시
		자동키잠금
		비밀번호변경
		PIN코드
		스캔기능

아이콘	기능 이름	
설정	국제로밍	
		네트워크
		음성사서함서비스(해외)
		전송전화서비스(해외)
		원격조작설정(해외)
		번호표시요청서비스(해외)
		로밍가이드설정(해외)
		로밍시착신제한
		해외이용가이드
	국제전화	
		자동국제접속번호변환설정
		국제접속번호설정
		자동국제전화설정
		국가번호목록

아이콘	기능 이름	
설정	날짜/시각	
		날짜/시각설정
		날짜/시각표시설정
		정시알림
	마르치리갈(다국어)	
	그외	
		문자입력
		메모리정보
		전원절약모드
		초기화/삭제
		소프트웨어 업데이트
		USB모드설정
		배터리잔량
내정보		

절취선

아이콘	기능 이름
편의기능	바코드리더
	적외선수신
	microSD
	Custom menu
	수신메모
	터치미디어

매너모드

대기 화면에서 #(1초 이상)

공공모드(드라이브모드)

대기 화면에서 ✱(1초 이상)

네트워크 서비스

음성사서함서비스

음성사서함메시지재생

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「서비스」▶「음성사서함서비스」▶「음성사서함메시지재생」▶「예」▶음성 안내에 따라 실행

음성사서함서비스시작

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「서비스」▶「음성사서함서비스」▶「음성사서함서비스시작」▶「예」▶「예」▶다이얼 버튼으로 호출 시간 입력

음성사서함서비스정지

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「서비스」▶「음성사서함서비스」▶「음성사서함서비스정지」▶「예」

통화중대기

통화중대기시작

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「서비스」▶「통화중대기」▶「통화중대기시작」▶「예」

통화중대기정지

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「서비스」▶「통화중대기」▶「통화중대기정지」▶「예」

통화를 보류하고 걸려온 전화 받기

전화가 걸려오면 ▶

■ **통화 전환**

[OK] ▶[Menu] ▶「통화전환」

■ **통화 중인 전화 끊기**

■ **보류 중인 전화 끊기**

[OK] ▶[Menu] ▶「통화전환」▶

통화를 종료하고 걸려온 전화 받기

전화가 걸려오면 ▶[OK] ▶[Menu] ▶「통화종료」

전송전화서비스

전송전화서비스시작

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「서비스」▶「전송전화서비스」▶「전송전화서비스시작」▶「예」▶「전송전화번호변경」▶전송전화번호 입력 ▶[완료] ▶「호출시간설정」▶다이얼 버튼으로 호출시간 입력 ▶[완료]

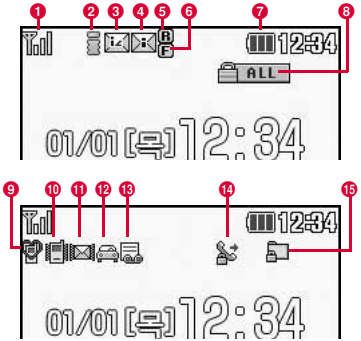
전송전화서비스정지

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「서비스」▶「전송전화서비스」▶「전송전화서비스정지」▶「예」

FOMA 단말기에서 이용할 수 있는 서비스

FOMA 단말기에서 이용할 수 있는 서비스	전화번호
번호 안내 서비스 (유료: 안내 요금＋통화 요금) (전화번호 안내를 희망하지 않는 고객에게는 서비스되지 않습니다.)	(국번없이) 104
전보 발신 (유료: 전보 요금)	(국번없이) 115
시간 알림 서비스 (유료)	(국번없이) 117
일기 예보 (유료)	해당 지역의 시외 국번＋177
경찰에 긴급 신고	(국번없이) 110
소방 · 구급대에 긴급 신고	(국번없이) 119
해상에서 사건 · 사고가 났을 경우의 긴급 신고	(국번없이) 118
재해용 전언 다이얼 (유료)	(국번없이) 171
수신자 부담 전화 (유료: 안내 요금＋통화 요금)	(국번없이) 106

주요 아이콘



❶ 강 ⟷ 약
전파 수신 강도
self 셀프모드 설정 중
❷ (점멸) i-mode 접속 중
❸ (흰색) i-mode센터에 i-mode Mail 있음
(흰색) i-mode센터에 MessageR 있음
(흰색) i-mode센터에 MessageF 있음
(흰색) i-mode센터에 i-mode Mail과 MessageR/F 있음
❹ (흰색) 읽지 않은 i-mode Mail과 SMS 있음
❺ (흰색) 읽지 않은 MessageR 있음

❻ (흰색) 읽지 않은 MessageF 있음
❼ ~ 배터리 잔량 표시
❽ ALL 전체잠금 설정 중
❾ (분홍색) 매너모드 설정 중
❿ 음성통화/영상통화의 착신음을 울리지 않고 진동으로 동작하도록 설정 중
음성통화/영상통화의 착신음을 울리지 않고 진동도 동작하지 않도록 설정 중
⓫ Mail 또는 MessageR/F의 착신음을 울리지 않고 진동으로 동작하도록 설정 중
Mail 또는 MessageR/F의 착신음을 울리지 않고 진동도 동작하지 않도록 설정 중
⓬ 공공모드(드라이브모드) 설정 중

⓭ 수신메모 설정 중
⓮ 음성통화/영상통화 발신 제한 설정 중
⓯ 「사생활모드설정」을 「ON」으로 설정 중
「비밀모드」를 「ON」으로 설정 중
「비밀모드」를 「비밀전용모드」로 설정 중
⓰ 음성사서함서비스 전언 메시지 있음 (숫자는 건수)
⓱ 수신메모 있음(숫자는 건수)

<분실 시 등의 긴급 연락처>

원격잠금

※ 원격잠금은 유료 서비스입니다. 단, 도코모 프리미어 클럽 회원인 고객의 경우 또는 이용을 일시 중단함과 동시에 신청했거나 일시 중단 중에 신청한 경우에는 무료입니다.

원격잠금 설정/해제

0120-524-360

접수 시간 24시간(일본어 전용)

기타 긴급 연락처

＜연락처 : ＞

＜연락처 : ＞

＜연락처 : ＞

※ 다이얼 번호를 잘 확인하여 잘못 걸지 않도록 주의하십시오.

절취선

docomo L-01A

퀵매뉴얼(해외이용편)

해외에서의 분실, 도난, 정산 정보 <도쿄모 인포메이션 센터>(24시간 접수)

<일본어 전용>

도쿄모 휴대폰 사용 시

체재 국가의 국제 전화 접속 번호(표1) **-81-3-5366-3114*(무료)**

* 일반 전화 등으로 거실 경우에는 일본으로의 통화 요금이 부과됩니다.

※ L-01A로 이용하는 경우에는 +81-3-5366-3114로 연결됩니다.
(「+」는 0을 1초 이상 누릅니다.)

일반 전화 사용 시

<유니버셜 넘버>

유니버셜 넘버용 국제 전화 식별 번호(표2) **-800-0120-0151***

* 체재 국가 내 통화 요금 등이 부과되는 경우가 있습니다.

※ 주요 국가의 국제 전화 접속 번호(표1)는 P.9를, 유니버셜 넘버용 국제 전화 식별 번호(표2)는 P.10을 참조하십시오.

해외에서의 고장 정보 <네트워크 테크니컬 오퍼레이션 센터>(24시간 접수)

도쿄모 휴대폰 사용 시

체재 국가의 국제 전화 접속 번호(표1) **-81-3-6718-1414*(무료)**

* 일반 전화 등으로 거실 경우에는 일본으로의 통화 요금이 부과됩니다.

※ L-01A로 이용하는 경우에는 +81-3-6718-1414로 연결됩니다.
(「+」는 0을 1초 이상 누릅니다.)

일반 전화 사용 시

<유니버셜 넘버>

유니버셜 넘버용 국제 전화 식별 번호(표2) **-800-5931-8600***

* 체재 국가 내 통화 요금 등이 부과되는 경우가 있습니다.

※ 주요 국가의 국제 전화 접속 번호(표1)는 P.9를, 유니버셜 넘버용 국제 전화 식별 번호(표2)는 P.10을 참조하십시오.

- **분실 · 도난 등을 당하면 바로 이용 정지를 신청하십시오.**
- **고객이 구입한 FOMA 단말기가 고장난 경우에는 귀국 후에 도쿄모 지정 AS 센터로 가져 오십시오.**

해외에서 이용하기 위한 준비

본 FOMA 단말기는 3G 서비스 지역만 지원합니다.

i-mode 설정

■ **일본에서 설정**

i ▶「iMenu」▶「お客様サポート(고객지원)」▶「お申込・お手続き(신청・절차)」▶「海外利用のお申込・お手続き(해외이용 신청・절차)」▶「海外利用設定(해외이용설정)」▶「iモード利用設定(i-mode이용설정)」▶「利用する(이용하기)」▶ i-mode패스워드 입력란 선택 ▶ i-mode패스워드 입력 ▶「決定(결정)」

■ **해외에서 설정**

i ▶「iMenu」▶「海外利用設定(해외이용설정)」▶「iモード利用設定(i-mode이용설정)」▶「利用する(이용하기)」▶ i-mode패스워드 입력란 선택 ▶ i-mode패스워드 입력 ▶「決定(결정)」

원격 조작 설정

■ **일본에서 설정**

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「서비스」▶「그외」▶「원격조작설정」▶「원격조작시작」▶「예」

■ **해외에서 설정**

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「국제로밍」▶「원격조작설정(해외)」▶「예」▶음성 안내의 지시에 따라 실행

듀얼 시계 설정

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「화면」▶「대기화면」▶「시계종류」▶「듀얼 시계」▶「다음도시」▶[목록] ▶으로 커서를 지역으로 이동 ▶[선택] ▶으로 커서를 도시로 이동 ▶[설정] ▶[완료]

이용할 수 있는 통신 서비스

본 FOMA 단말기는 3G 서비스 지역에서 이용할 수 있습니다.

- 음성통화
- 영상통화
- i-mode
- i-mode Mail
- SMS
- i-Channel
- 데이터 통신

네트워크 전환

구입 시에는 「네트워크검색설정」이 「자동」으로 설정되어 있습니다. 해외에 도착하면 이용 가능한 네트워크가 자동으로 설정됩니다.

수동으로 네트워크 설정

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「국제로밍」▶「네트워크」▶「네트워크검색설정」▶「수동」▶「예」▶네트워크 선택

우선적으로 이용할 네트워크 설정

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「국제로밍」▶「네트워크」▶「우선네트워크설정」▶[추가] ▶「수동으로 선택」▶국가번호와 네트워크 번호 입력 ▶[완료] ▶「예」

디스플레이 표시

디스플레이에는 접속 중인 네트워크 이름이 표시됩니다.

귀국 후 설정

구입 시에는 귀국 후 자동으로 FOMA 네트워크에 접속되어 이 표시되도록 설정되어 있습니다.

■ **FOMA 네트워크로 전환되지 않는 경우**

[Menu] ▶ (설정) ▶「국제로밍」▶「네트워크」▶「네트워크검색설정」▶「자동」▶「예」

전화 걸기

일본이나 체재 국가 이외의 나라로 전화 걸기

0(1초 이상) ▶「국가번호 - 지역번호(시외국번) - 상대 전화번호」입력 ▶

- 지역번호(시외국번)의 첫 번째 숫자가 「0」인 경우나 일본 휴대폰 · PHS인 경우에는 「0」을 빼고 입력합니다.(상대가 이탈리아 등 일부 국가 · 지역인 경우에는 「0」이 필요한 경우가 있습니다.) 국가번호→P.8
- [Menu] ▶「영상통화발신」: 영상통화 발신하기

체재 국가 내에 전화 걸기

일본 국내와 마찬가지로 상대 전화번호를 지역번호(시외국번)부터 입력 ▶

- [Menu] ▶「영상통화발신」: 영상통화 발신하기

전화 받기

음성통화/영상통화 착신 ▶

네트워크 서비스

해외에서 네트워크 서비스를 이용할 경우에는 사전에 원격 조작을 설정해야 합니다.

로밍가이드설정

• 일본 국내에서 설정하십시오.

[Menu] ▶(설정) ▶「서비스」▶「그외」▶「로밍가이드설정」▶「로밍가이드시작」/「로밍가이드정지」▶「예」

로밍시착신제한

• 해외 통신 사업자에 따라서 설정할 수 없는 경우도 있습니다.

[Menu] ▶(설정) ▶「국제로밍」▶「로밍시착신제한」▶「로밍시착신제한시작」▶「모든착신제한」/「영상통화착신제한」▶네트워크 비밀번호 입력 ▶「예」

음성사서함서비스(해외)

[Menu] ▶(설정) ▶「국제로밍」▶「음성사서함서비스(해외)」▶「음성사서함서비스시작」/「음성사서함서비스정지」/「음성사서함메시지재생」▶「예」▶음성 안내에 따라 실행

전송전화서비스(해외)

[Menu] ▶(설정) ▶「국제로밍」▶「전송전화서비스(해외)」▶「전송전화서비스시작」/「전송전화서비스정지」▶「예」▶음성 안내에 따라 실행

로밍가이드설정(해외)

[Menu] ▶(설정) ▶「국제로밍」▶「로밍가이드설정(해외)」▶「예」▶음성 안내에 따라 실행

주요 국가번호

국제 전화를 이용하거나 국제 다이얼 어시스트 설정 등에 이용할 국가번호는 다음을 참조하십시오.

이용 지역	번호
그리스	30
네덜란드	31
노르웨이	47
뉴질랜드	64
뉴칼레도니아	687
대만	886
독일	49
러시아	7
마카오	853
말레이시아	60
몰디브	960
미국	1
베트남	84
벨기에	32
브라질	55
스웨덴	46
스위스	41
스페인	34

이용 지역	번호
오스트리아	43
이집트	20
이탈리아	39
인도	91
인도네시아	62
일본	81
중국	86
체코	420
캐나다	1
타히티	689
태국	66
터키	90
페루	51
프랑스	33
피지	679
핀란드	358
필리핀	63
한국	82

이용 지역	번호
싱가폴	65
영국	44
오스트레일리아	61

이용 지역	번호
헝가리	36
홍콩	852

※기타 국가의 번호 및 상세한 내용은 도코모의「국제 서비스 홈페이지」를 확인하십시오.

주요 국가의 국제 전화 접속 번호(표1)

이용 지역	번호
그리스	00
네덜란드	00
노르웨이	00
뉴질랜드	00
대만	002
덴마크	00
독일	00
러시아	810
룩셈부르크	00
마카오	00
말레이시아	00
모나코	00
미국	011
베트남	00

이용 지역	번호
아랍에미리트	00
아일랜드	00
영국	00
오스트레일리아	0011
이탈리아	00
인도	00
인도네시아	001
중국	00
체코	00
캐나다	011
태국	001
터키	00
포르투갈	00
폴란드	00

이용 지역	번호
벨기에	00
브라질	0021/0014
스웨덴	00
스위스	00
스페인	00
싱가폴	001

이용 지역	번호
프랑스	00
핀란드	00
필리핀	00
한국	001
헝가리	00
홍콩	001

유니버셜 넘버용 국제 전화 식별 번호(표2)

이용 지역	번호
남아프리카	09
네덜란드	00
노르웨이	00
뉴질랜드	00
대만	00
덴마크	00
독일	00
룩셈부르크	00
말레이시아	00
미국	011
벨기에	00
불가리아	00

이용 지역	번호
아일랜드	00
영국	00
오스트레일리아	0011
오스트리아	00
이스라엘	014
이탈리아	00
중국	00
캐나다	011
콜롬비아	009
태국	001
페루	00
포르투갈	00

이용 지역	번호
브라질	0021
스웨덴	00
스위스	00
스페인	00
싱가폴	001
아르헨티나	00

이용 지역	번호
프랑스	00
핀란드	990
필리핀	00
한국	001
헝가리	00
홍콩	001

문의 정보

해외에서의 분실이나 도난, 정산, 고장에 대해서는 퀵매뉴얼(해외이용편) 표지의「해외에서의 분실, 도난, 정산 정보」, 또는 P.1의「해외에서의 고장 정보」로 문의하십시오.

• 각 문의처 번호의 첫 번째 숫자에는 체재 국가에 해당하는「주요 국가의 국제 전화 접속 번호(표1)」또는「유니버셜 넘버용 국제 전화 식별 번호(표2)」가 필요합니다.

You can view/change your contract contents, subscribe to services, or request the information over the Internet.

From i-mode iMenu ⇒ お客様サポート (user support) ⇒ お申込・お手続き (subscriptions & procedures) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (subscriptions & procedures) Packet communication charges free

From PC My docomo (http://www.mydocomo.com/)⇒各種お申込・お手続き (subscriptions & procedures)

* "Network security code" is required if you access the site from i-mode.
* No packet communication charges apply if you access the site from i-mode. Charges apply when accessing from overseas.
* "docomo ID and password" is required if you access the site from PC.
* If you do not have or remember "Network security code" or "docomo ID and password", contact "General Inquiries" at the back of this manual.
* You may not be able to access the site depending on your subscription.
* The site may not be available due to system maintenance.

Don't forget your FOMA terminal or your manners!

When using the FOMA terminal, be considerate and do not disturb people around you.

Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in the following situations:

■ Where use of the mobile phone is prohibited
Be sure to turn off your FOMA terminal in airplanes and in hospitals.
* People using electronic medical equipment are in places other than the actual wards. Make sure you have turned the power off even if you are in a lobby or waiting room.

■ When in crowded places such as packed trains, where you could be near a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator
The implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator operation may be affected by radio emissions from the FOMA terminal.

In the following cases, be certain to set Public mode.

■ While driving
Operating the terminal while driving may be severely punished.
* If you receive a call unavoidably, you must use Hands-free to tell the caller to call back and park the car at a safe place to make a call.

■ When in theaters, movie theaters, museums, and similar venues
If you use your FOMA terminal where you are supposed to be quiet, you will disturb people around you.

Pay attention to your surroundings and the loudness of your voice and ring tone

■ Do not raise your voice when using the FOMA terminal in quiet places such as in restaurants or hotel lobbies.

■ Use the FOMA terminal so as not to disturb pedestrian traffic.

Consider privacy

Please be considerate of other people's privacy when capturing and sending pictures using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions help you keep your manners in public

Handy functions such as for not answering to incoming calls or muting all tones generated by the FOMA terminal are available.

● **Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF)**
The guidance is played announcing that you are in such a place as train, bus or movie theater where you have to turn off the terminal, and the call is disconnected.→P71, P72

● **Record message**
Callers can record a message when you cannot answer the phone.→P72

● **Vibrator**
The terminal vibrates to notify of an incoming call.→P96

● **Manner mode/Original manner**
The key tone, ring tone or every other sound generated by the FOMA terminal are muted (Manner mode).→P98
You can change the operation of the FOMA terminal for Manner mode (Original manner).→P99

This manual was produced in such a way as to allow easy recycling. Please recycle this manual when no longer needed.

General Inquiries
<docomo Information Center>

0120-005-250 (toll free)
* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish, Korean.
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

■From DOCOMO mobile phones
(In Japanese only)
(No prefix) **151** (toll free)
* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■From land-line phones
(In Japanese only)
0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

■From DOCOMO mobile phones
(In Japanese only)
(No prefix) **113** (toll free)
* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

■From land-line phones
(In Japanese only)
0120-800-000 (toll free)
* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

●Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
●For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo shop etc. near you, on the NTT DOCOMO website or the i-mode site.
NTT DOCOMO website http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/ i-mode site iMenu ⇒ お客様サポート (user support) ⇒ ドコモショップ (docomo Shop) * In Japanese only

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas
<docomo Information Center> (available 24 hours a day)

From DOCOMO mobile phones

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** (toll free)
* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.
※If you use L-01A, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to enter '+', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

From land-line phones
<Universal number>
International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-0120-0151***
* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
※See page 378 for international call access codes for major countries (table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2).

Failures encountered overseas
<Network Technical Operation Center> (available 24 hours a day)

From DOCOMO mobile phones

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** (toll free)
* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.
※If you use L-01A, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to enter '+', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

From land-line phones
<Universal number>
International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-5931-8600***
* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.
※See page 378 for international call access codes for major countries (table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2).

●If you lose your FOMA terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the FOMA terminal.
●If the FOMA terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.

Don't forget your mobile phone ··· or your manners!
○ When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.
Manufacturer: LG Electronics Japan INC.

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to a docomo service counter, an docomo agent or a recycle center.

This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

Made from recycled paper.

'08.10 (1.2 Edition)
MMBB0291311

L-01A Manual for PC Connection

Data Communications Available with the FOMA Terminal 1
Precautions before Use 1
Before Using Data Communication 2
Flow of Setup for Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication) 2
Flow of Setup for Data Communication 3
Connecting the FOMA Terminal and the PC 3
Cautions when Installing/Uninstalling 4
Installing the L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver) 5
Checking the Installed L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver) 9
Uninstalling the L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver) 10

Configuring Communication Settings Using DOCOMO Connection Manager

DOCOMO Connection Manager 10
Before Installing the DOCOMO Connection Manager 11
Installing the DOCOMO Connection Manager 12
Starting the DOCOMO Connection Manager 13

Configuring Communication Settings without Using DOCOMO Connection Manager

Configuring a Dial-up Network 14
Communicating 21
AT Commands 22
AT Commands List 23

About Manual for PC Connection

This manual explains the items required for making data communication on the L-01A as well as how to install "L-01A 通信設定ファイル（ドライバ）(L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver))" and "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)" inside the CD-ROM. Some procedures and displays in this manual may differ depending on your operating environment.

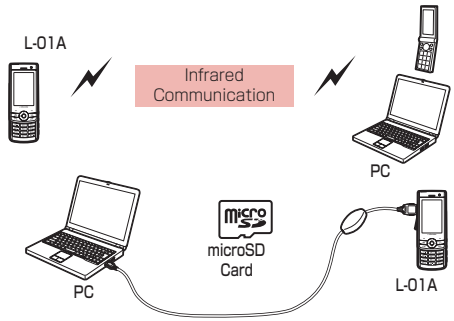
Data Communications Available with the FOMA Terminal

When you connect your FOMA terminal to a PC, you can use packet communication as well as data transmission (OBEX™ Communication).

- The FOMA terminal does not support 64K data communication.
- The FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication.
- The FOMA terminal does not support DOCOMO's PDA "musea" and "sigmarion III".

Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication)

You can exchange data such as images, songs, Phonebook entries, or mail with another FOMA terminal or a PC.



- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional)
- microSD Card
- DOCOMO keitai datalink

Packet Communication

Communication charges*1 are based on the amount of data sent and received. It is suitable for use to exchange data only when you want while keeping the network connected. DOCOMO provides a best-effort service in which communication speeds change in response to the communication environment and network congestion.

Using an access point of DOCOMO internet connection service such as "mopera U" allows you to use high-speed communication at the maximum rate of 7.2Mbps for receiving and 384kbps for sending (based on best-effort connection)*2.

*1 Communication charges become high when you exchange a large amount of data.

*2 The maximum speed of 7.2Mbps for receiving and 384kbps for sending are theoretical values and they do not show the actual performance. The actual performance depends on your communication environment and network congestion.

- If you connect to an area which is out of the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area or an access point that does not support HIGH-SPEED, the connection for both sending and receiving will be limited to 384kbps at maximum rate.

L-01A can use an access point, even while in overseas, that supports W-CDMA packet communication to perform data communication.

Precautions before Use

Internet Service Provider Fees

Fees to an Internet service provider (ISP) are required to connect to the Internet. These connection fees, paid to the ISP, are separate from the FOMA service fees. For detailed information on connection fees, contact your ISP. You can use DOCOMO Internet connection service; "mopera U". A separate subscription (fee-based) is required to use "mopera U".

Setting the Internet Connection

For packet communication, use an access point compatible with packet communication.

- DoPa access points cannot be connected.
- For service contents of "mopera" and its connection settings, visit "mopera" web site. http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html (Japanese only)

Conditions for Packet Communication

The following conditions* must be met to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform communication. However, even if the conditions are met, communication may still not be possible depending on the amount of traffic at the base station or the strength of the signal.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) must be available on the PC.
- The FOMA terminal must be in the FOMA service area.
- The access point must support FOMA packet communication.

* These conditions are for domestic use in Japan.

Before Using Data Communication

Operating Environment

The following operating environment is required for a PC to use data communication.

Item	Requirements
PC main unit	• PC-AT compatible device with a CD-ROM-capable drive • USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1/2.0 compliant) • Display resolution of 800x600 dots, High Color (65,536 colors) or higher recommended
OS*1*2	• Windows Vista, Windows XP, or Windows 2000 (Japanese version)
Required memory*3	• Windows Vista: 512MB or more • Windows XP: 128MB or more • Windows 2000: 64MB or more
Hard disk space*3*4	• Available space of 5MB or more

*1 The operation on an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.

*2 The operating environment of DOCOMO Connection Manager is Windows 2000 SP4 or later, or Windows XP SP2 or later. For detailed operating environment, check DOCOMO web site.

*3 Memory requirement or hard disk space may vary depending on the PC system configuration.

*4 DOCOMO Connection Manager requires 15MB or more.

- The recommended browser for using the menu is Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later. Perform the following steps if a menu does not appear after the CD-ROM is inserted in the drive:
  - ① Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "コンピュータ (Computer)".
  - ■ For Windows XP
    Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "マイコンピュータ (My Computer)"
  - ■ For Windows 2000
    Double-click an icon "マイコンピュータ (My Computer)" on the desktop.
  - ② Right-click the CD-ROM icon ▶ Select "開く (Open)"
  - ③ Double-click "index.html"
  - * For Windows XP/2000, the recommended browser is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later.
- A warning screen may appear if you insert the bundled CD-ROM into a PC. This warning appears as a result of a security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, however, there is no problem. Click [はい (Yes)].

Required Devices

To use data communications, the following devices and software are required in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC:

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- CD-ROM for L-01A (supplied)

Note

- Purchase the exclusive FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 or FOMA USB Cable. A generic USB cable for PC is not available because it does not fit the FOMA USB connector.
- The FOMA terminal may not work properly with a USB HUB.

Flow of Setup for Data Transmission (OBEX™ Communication)

Install the L-01A communication setting files to use the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).

Download and install the L-01A communication setting files

- Install them using bundled CD-ROM
  or
- Download and install from the DOCOMO web page

↓

Data Transfer

Flow of Setup for Data Communication

The flow for preparing to connect the FOMA terminal and a PC for performing packet communication is as follows.

Check that "USB mode setting" of the FOMA terminal is set to "Communication mode"→P3

↓

Connect the FOMA terminal and the PC using a FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02→P3

↓

Download and install the L-01A communication setting files

- Install them using bundled CD-ROM

or

- Download and install from the DOCOMO web page

↓

Check after installation→P9

↓

Install DOCOMO Connection Manager and set up with it→P10	Set up without DOCOMO Connection Manager→P14

↓

Connect→P21

L-01A communication setting files and DOCOMO Connection Manager

L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver)

This software (driver) is required for packet communication or file transfer when the FOMA terminal and a PC are connected using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02.

DOCOMO Connection Manager

This software facilitates simple configuration or the settings for a packet communication connection (APN), dial-up connection, etc.

Connecting the FOMA Terminal and the PC

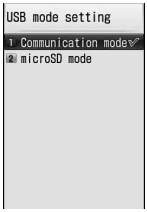
This section explains how to connect the FOMA terminal and a PC using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).

USB Mode Setting

Setting the USB Mode

Set the FOMA terminal's "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode"

1 [−] ▶ ⚙(Settings) ▶ "Others" ▶ "USB mode setting"

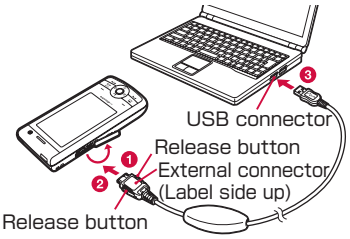


2 "Communication mode"

Connect the FOMA Terminal and a PC Using a FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional)

1 Open the cover of the external connector terminal (❶) of the FOMA terminal and hold the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 so that the label is facing upwards and insert the connector straight into the terminal until you hear it click into place (❷)

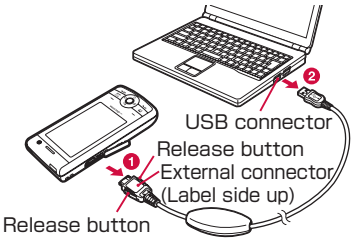
2 Plug the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 to a USB connector on the PC (❸)



Continue on the next page

Unplugging

① To unplug the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional), pull it straight out while holding the release buttons of the connector (❶)



② Unplug the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 from the USB port of the PC (❷).

Note

- Do not unplug the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 during data communication because doing so will cause communication to be cut off, or an operation failure or data loss.
- Do not connect FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 to the connector by sheer strength. Doing so may result in malfunction. The connectors must be inserted with the correct orientation and angle. With correct orientation and angle, the connectors can be plugged smoothly without requiring excessive force. If you cannot connect the cable easily, do not use excessive force. Check the orientation, angle and shape of the connectors again.
- Do not apply excessive force to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02. Using excessive force may result in malfunction.

Cautions when Installing/ Uninstalling

Keep the following in mind when installing or uninstalling L-01A communication setting files (Driver) or DOCOMO Connection Manager.

- Make sure to install or uninstall the software from a user account with the administrator privileges. An error will occur if you attempt to install or uninstall them from an account without administrator privileges. For settings and operations regarding PC administrator privileges, contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Inc.
- Before you install or uninstall the software, check that no other software is running. Quit any running software before installing or uninstalling.

For Windows Vista

If the "ユーザーアカウント制御 (User Account Control)" screen appears, click "許可 (Permit)" or "続行 (Continue)", or enter the password, then click "OK". For settings and operations regarding PC administrator privileges, contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Inc.

Installing the L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver)

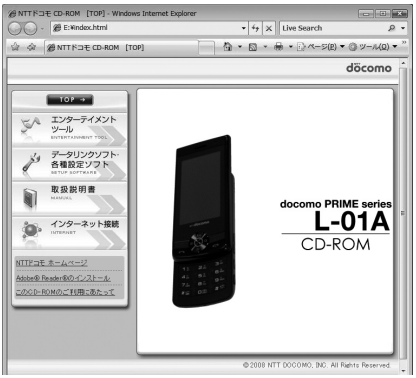
The L-01A communication setting files need to be installed the first time you connect the FOMA terminal and a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional).

- Before installing L-01A communication setting files, make sure that the FOMA terminal is unplugged from your PC.
- Make sure to read "Cautions when Installing/Uninstalling" (P4) before starting the operation.

Installing on Windows Vista

1 Insert the CD-ROM for L-01A into a PC

The "L-01A CD-ROM" screen appears.



- Depending on the PC settings, this screen may not appear. In this case, go to Step 3.

2 Click ✕ at the upper right of the screen.

The "L-01A CD-ROM" screen will close.

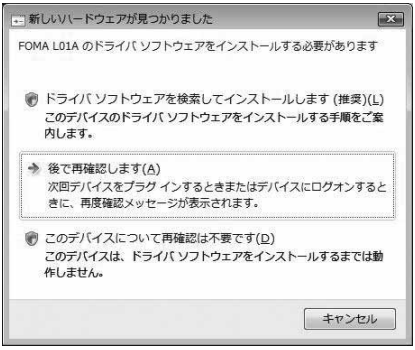
3 Connect the FOMA terminal and the PC

A pop-up message "新しいハードウェアが見つかりました (New hardware was found)" will be displayed for a few seconds from the task bar of the PC screen.

- Connecting→P3
- Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA terminal turned on.

4 Click "ドライバソフトウェアを検索してインストールします(推奨) (Search for the driver and install (recommended))"

- After the click, a pop-up message "デバイス ドライバソフトウェアをインストールしています (Device driver is being installed)" will be displayed for a few seconds from the task bar of the PC screen.
- If L-01A communication setting files are installed on the same PC twice or more, the next screen may not appear, and a popup message "デバイス ドライバソフトウェアが正しくインストールされました (The device driver was installed successfully)" may be displayed for a few seconds from the task bar of the PC screen, then the installation may complete automatically.
  In this case, check that the L-01A communication setting files have been installed correctly.→P9



5 Click "ディスクはありません。他の方法を試します (No disk found. Try another method.)"

Continue on the next page

6 Click "コンピュータを参照してドライバソフトウェアを検索します(上級) (Browse the PC to find the driver (advanced))"

7 Enter the search location of the L-01A communication setting files (Driver) ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥guide¥L-01A_USB_Driver¥Drivers¥WinVista32" in the "次の場所でドライバソフトウェアを検索します (Search for the driver in the following location)" field.

8 Click [閉じる (Close)] on the installation completion screen.

Repeat Steps 6 to 8 twice to install all of L-01A communication setting files.

After the installation of all L-01A communication setting files completes, a popup message "デバイス ドライバソフトウェア が正しくインストールされました (Device driver installed successfully)" will be displayed for a few seconds from the task bar of the PC screen.
Then, check whether the L-01A communication setting files have been installed correctly.→P9

Installing on Windows XP

1 Insert the CD-ROM for L-01A into a PC

The "L-01A CD-ROM" screen appears.

- Depending on the PC settings, this screen may not appear. In this case, go to Step 3.

2 Click ☒ at the upper right of the screen.

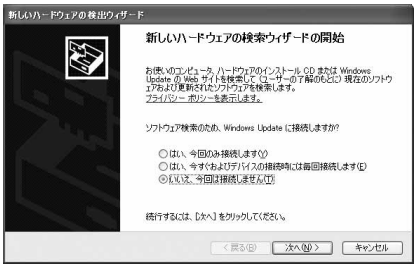
The "L-01A CD-ROM" screen will close.

3 Connect the FOMA terminal and the PC

A pop-up message "新しいハードウェアが見つかりました (New hardware was found)" will be displayed for a few seconds from the task bar of the PC screen.

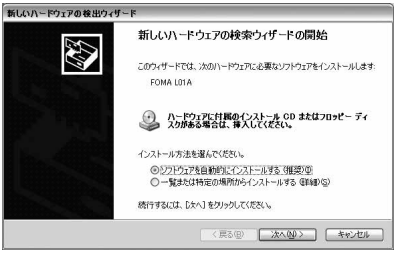
- Connecting→P3
- Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA terminal turned on.

4 Select "いいえ、今回は接続しません (No, not this time)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]



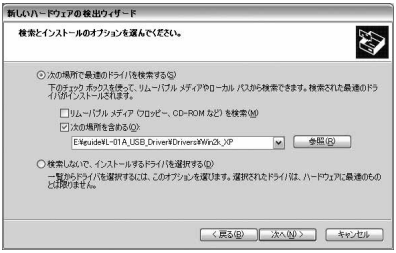
Continue on the next page

5 Select "一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細) (Install from the list or a specific location (details)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]



6 Select "次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する (Search the most suitable driver in the following location)" ▶ Remove the check mark from "リムーバブル メディア (フロッピー、CD-ROMなど) を検索 (Search removable media (such as a floppy disk or CD-ROM))" ▶ Mark for "次の場所を含める (Include the following location)" ▶ Enter the search location of L-01A communication setting files (Driver) ▶ Click [次へ (next)]

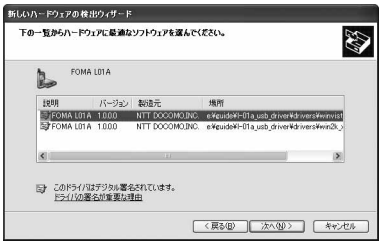
Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥guide¥L-01A_USB_Driver¥Drivers¥Win2k_XP" in the "次の場所を含める (include the following location)" field.



■ If the selection screen for the most suitable software appears

Depending on the PC settings, the following screen may appear.

If the screen appears, select "<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥guide¥L-01A_USB_Driver¥Drivers¥Win2k_xp" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)] to continue the installation.



7 Click [完了 (Finish)] on the New hardware search wizard completion screen.

Repeat Steps 4 to 7 twice to install all L-01A communication setting files.

After the installation of all L-01A communication setting files completes, a popup message "新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました (New hardware installed and ready)" will be displayed for a few seconds from the task bar of the PC screen.
Then, check whether the L-01A communication setting files have been installed correctly.→P9

Installing on Windows 2000

1 Insert the CD-ROM for L-01A into a PC

The "L-01A CD-ROM" screen appears.

- Depending on the PC settings, this screen may not appear. In this case, go to Step 3.

2 Click ✕ at the upper right of the screen.

The "L-01A CD-ROM" screen will close.

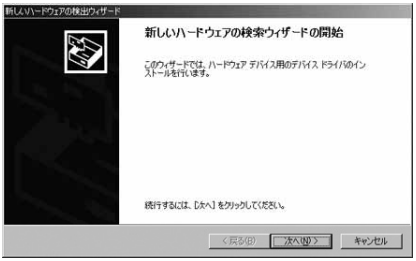
3 Connect the FOMA terminal and the PC

The "新しいハードウェアが見つかりました (New hardware was found)" screen will be displayed for a few seconds.

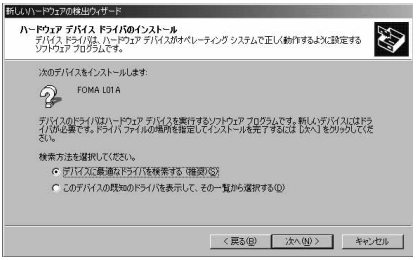
- Connecting→P3
- Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA terminal turned on.

Continue on the next page

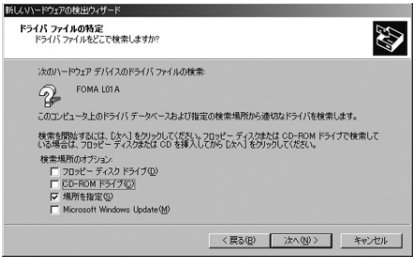
4 Click [次へ (Next)]



5 Select "デバイスに最適なドライバを選択する（推奨） (Select the most suitable driver for the device (recommended))" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

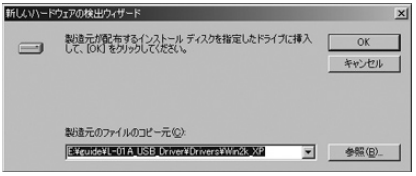


6 Select "場所を指定 (Specify the location)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]



7 Enter the search location of L-01A communication setting files (Driver) ▶ Click [OK]

Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>:¥guide¥L-01A_USB_Driver¥Drivers¥Win2k_XP" in the "製造元のファイルのコピー元 (Copy manufacturer's files from)" field.



8 Check the driver name ▶ Click [次へ(Next)]

9 Click [完了 (Finish)] on the New hardware search wizard completion screen.

Repeat from Steps 4 to 9 twice to install all L-01A communication setting files.

After the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected, the L-01A communication setting files are installed automatically.
After the installation of all L-01A communication setting files completes, a popup message "新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました (New hardware installed and ready)" will be displayed for a few seconds from the task bar of the PC screen.
Then, check whether the L-01A communication setting files have been installed correctly.→P9

Checking the Installed L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver)

Check that the L-01A communication setting files have been installed correctly.

Example: For Windows Vista

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" ▶ "システムとメンテナンス (System and Maintenance)"

■ For Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" ▶ "パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and Maintenance)" ▶ "システム (System)".

■ For Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "設定 (Settings)" ▶ "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" ▶ "システム (System)".

2 Click "デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager)" ▶ [続行 (Continue)]

■ For Windows XP

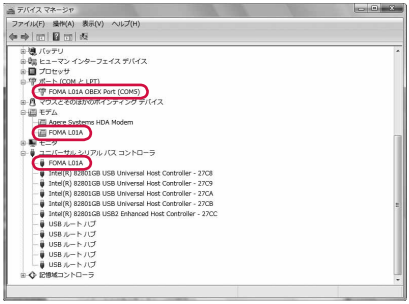
Click the "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab ▶ Click [デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager)].

■ For Windows 2000

Click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab ▶ "デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager)".

3 Click a device name to view the installed driver name

Check that all drivers are displayed in "USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ (Controller)", "ポート (Port) (COM/LPT)", and "モデム (Modem)".



For Windows Vista

Device	Driver
USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ [USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller]	FOMA L01A
ポート(COM/LPT) (Port (COM/LPT))	FOMA L01A OBEX Port
モデム (Modem)	FOMA L01A

To view the FOMA terminal COM port number

The modem name or COM port (communication port) number of the FOMA terminal may be required if you set up communication without using the DOCOMO Connection Manager. This section explains how to view them from the Device Manager window.

① **Connect the FOMA terminal and the PC**

• Connecting→P3

② **Perform Steps 1 and 2 described in "Checking the Installed L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver)"**

③ **Click "モデム (Modems)" ▶ Select "FOMA L01A"**
▶ From the menu bar, click [操作 (Action)]
▶ [プロパティ (Properties)]
▶ Click the "モデム (Modems)" tab

The FOMA terminal COM port number appears on the right side of "ポート: (Port:)".

Uninstalling the L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver)

To uninstall the L-01A communication setting files (Driver), perform the following steps.

- Before uninstalling the L-01A communication setting files, make sure that the FOMA terminal is unplugged from your PC.
- Make sure to read "Cautions when Installing/Uninstalling" (P4) before starting the operation.

Example: For Windows Vista

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" ▶ "プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall the program)"

The "プログラムのアンインストールまたは変更 (Uninstall or change a program)" screen appears.

■ For Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" ▶ "プログラムの追加と削除 (Add or Remove Programs)".

■ For Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "設定 (Settings)" ▶ "コントロールパネル (Control Panel)" ▶ Double-click [アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add or Remove Applications)]

2 Select "FOMA L01A USB" ▶ "続行 (Continue)"

■ For Windows XP/2000

Select "FOMA L01A USB" ▶ Click [変更と削除 (Change or Remove)].

3 Click [OK]

4 Click [OK] on the uninstallation confirmation screen

Uninstallation will be completed.

Note

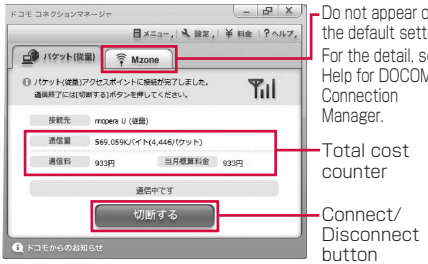
- The L-01A communication setting files may not be installed properly in case the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) is disconnected or in case you abort the installation by clicking [キャンセル (Cancel)] button on the PC. In this case, uninstall the L-01A communication setting files first, and install them again.

DOCOMO Connection Manager

"DOCOMO Connection Manager" is a packaged software that includes "Flat-Rate Data Plan Connection Software" needed for using flat-rate data plan and a software needed for using metered rate data communication.

"DOCOMO Connection Manager" is a software capable of connecting to the Internet using a data communication compatible terminal. You can subscribe to "mopera U" and configure your PC easily.

Also, you can check a data traffic and a total amount of spending by using a total cost counter function as a guide.



This manual explains up until installing the DOCOMO Connection Manager for a metered rate connection.

For a connection to the Internet by using the terminal, you need to subscribe to an Internet service provider, such as "mopera U", capable of services and data communication.

For the detail, visit the DOCOMO's web site.

Note

<Using metered rate data communication (including "Pake-hodai" and "Pake-hodai full", etc.)>

- Note that using packet communication to perform with a large amount of data such as accessing web sites with images, or data download (example: downloading an application or music/movie data, updating OS/anti-virus software) may increase communication charge. Note that data communication via PC connection is exempt from the fixed amount service packet communication, "Pake-hodai", "Pake-hodai full", "Pake-hodai double", "Biz-hodai", and "Biz-hodai double"

<Using flat-rate data plan>

- To use flat-rate data plan, you need to subscribe to an Internet service provider and rate plan capable of flat-rate data communication. For the detail, visit the DOCOMO's web site.

Continue on the next page

- To use flat-rate data plan, please make sure to use "Flat-Rate Data Plan Connection Software". You can download the "Flat-Rate Data Plan Connection Software" from the DOCOMO's web site.

<Using mopera>

- For the connection settings, visit "mopera" web site. http://www.mopera.net/mopera/support/index.html (Japanese only)

Before Installing the DOCOMO Connection Manager

Steps for installing

① Prepare the FOMA terminal and FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or USB Cable

② Check for a contractual coverage and the service of your Internet service provider

③ If there is any connection software other than the DOCOMO Connection Manager, change the settings not to start the program automatically as needed.

- "Using a connection software other than the DOCOMO Connection Manager"→P11

Internet Explorer settings

Before installing the DOCOMO Connection Manager, make sure to set connection setting to [ダイヤルしない (Never dial a connection)] on the Internet Options setting of the Internet Explorer.

① Start the Internet Explorer, select [ツール (Tools)] ▶ [インターネットオプション (Internet Options)]

② Select [接続 (Connections)] tab, then select [ダイヤルしない (Never dial a connection)]

③ Click [OK]

Note

<Using a connection software other than the DOCOMO Connection Manager>

The DOCOMO Connection Manager has equivalent functions of following software so that there is no need of using such software at the same time.

* Change the settings not to start or uninstall the following software as needed.
  - mopera U start up tool
  - mopera U connection & setting tool
  - FOMA PC setting software
  - FOMA byte counter

When you use Mzone (public wireless LAN connection) using the DOCOMO Connection Manager, please uninstall following public wireless LAN connection software.

* If any of the following software is installed, the DOCOMO Connection Manager cannot establish the Mzone connection.
  - U public wireless LAN utility software
  - DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility software
  - DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility program

1 Log on as a user of the DOCOMO Connection Manager

■ For Windows Vista

An administrator account is required. If you log on with an account other than the administrator account, a screen will appear asking to enter a user name and the password during the installation process.

■ For Windows XP/2000

You need to log on with one of the Administrators Group accounts or a user of "コンピュータの管理者 (Administrator)" account.

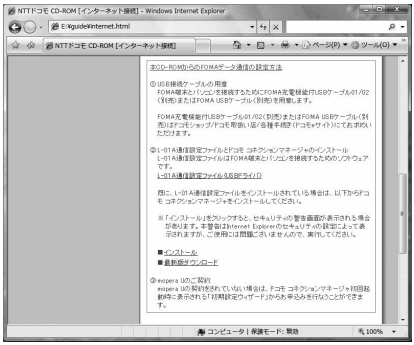
2 Quit all running programs

Quit resident programs on Windows including a virus check software.

- Example: Right-click an icon on a task bar, select [閉じる (Close)] or [終了 (Quit)].

Installing the DOCOMO Connection Manager

1 Start the installer following a navigation of the bundled CD-ROM for L-01A



If L-01A communication setting files (Driver) are not installed, you need to install the driver before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager.
"Installing L-01A Communication Setting Files (Driver)"→P5

If the driver is already installed, you can install from "インストール (Install)" of DOCOMO Connection Manager.

Note

- If MSXML6 · Wireless LAN API is not on Windows XP, before installing the DOCOMO Connection Manager, it must be installed. When a confirmation appears, press [Install] to install the MSXML6 · Wireless LAN API. After the installation is completed and the computer is restarted, the DOCOMO Connection Manager installation starts automatically.

2 Click [続行 (Continue)]

- For Windows XP/2000, [ユーザーアカウント制御 (User Account Control)] screen does not appear. The Setup program starts at once.

3 Click [次へ (Next)]

4 Read the precautions carefully, then click [次へ (Next)]

Continue on the next page

5 Read the license agreement of the DOCOMO Connection Manager and if you agree to the terms, select [使用許諾契約の条項に同意します (I Agree)] and click [次へ (Next)]

6 Check a destination folder for the installation, click [次へ (Next)]

7 Click [インストール (Install)]

The installation starts.

8 Click [完了 (Done)]

Complete the installation process.

Starting the DOCOMO Connection Manager

1 "スタート (Start)" ▶ "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" ▶ "NTT DOCOMO" ▶ "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)" ▶ "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)"

Starts the DOCOMO Connection Manager.

■ For Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ▶ "NTT DOCOMO" ▶ "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)" ▶ "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

■ For Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ "NTT DOCOMO" ▶ "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)" ▶ "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

2 For the first time of the start, a configuration wizard appears automatically

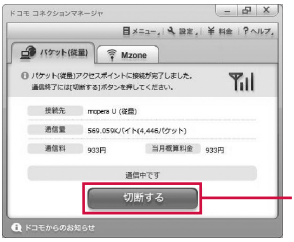
By operating/configuring through the wizard thereafter, you will be ready to connect to the Internet.

For the detail, see "DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual".

Continue on the next page

Note

- Exiting the Internet browser or mail software does not terminate the connection. When you do not use the communication, terminate the connection by pressing [切断する (Terminate)] on the DOCOMO Connection Manager. Note that if Automatic Updating is set for such OS update, software may be updated automatically and it may increase communication charge.



Connect/ Disconnect button

Configuring a Dial-up Network

This section describes the steps to configure settings for packet communication without using the DOCOMO Connection Manager.

Setting APN

Set an access point (APN) for packet communication. Up to 11 APNs can be set up and they are managed with cid's.

Communication software is required to enter AT commands. This section describes the steps necessary for using the "Hyper Terminal" that comes with Windows.

- The registration number (cid) 1 is set to mopera.ne.jp and the registration number 3 is set to mopera.net by default. Use cid2 or from 4 to 11 when setting another access point.
- "Hyper Terminal" does not run on Windows Vista. To configure the settings in Windows Vista, use communication software compatible with Windows Vista. For the setting procedure, refer to the instruction manual and other documentation that come with the software to be used.
- For a connection (APN) other than "mopera U" and "mopera", contact your ISP or network administrator.

Example: For Windows XP

1 Connect the FOMA terminal and the PC

- Connecting→P3

2 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Communication)" ▶ "ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)"

Hyper Terminal starts.

■ For Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Communication)" ▶ "ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)"

3 Enter a connection name in the "名前 (Name)" field ▶ Click [OK]

4 Enter a non-existing phone number (such as "0") in the "電話番号 (Phone Number)" field ▶ Check that "FOMA L01A" is displayed for "接続方法 (Connection Method)" ▶ Click [OK]

- If more than one modem name is displayed in the "接続方法 (Connection Method)" field, check the FOMA terminal modem name and select the proper one.→P9

5 Click [キャンセル (Cancel)] on the Connection screen

The Hyper Terminal entry screen opens.

Continue on the next page

6 Enter the APN in the following format ▶ Press ↵

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"<PDP type>","<APN>" ↵

Enter the following information in the corresponding <cid>, <PDP type>, and <APN> sections.

If "OK" appears after you enter the information, the APN has been setup.

cid : Enter any number from 2, and from 4 to 11.
* Note that the old setting information will be overwritten if you select a cid number which has already been set.

PDP type : Select either PPP or IP for the connection method supported by the access point, and then enter the information enclosed with quotation marks " ".

APN : Enter the connection (APN) enclosed with quotation marks " ".

- If the entered characters do not appear, enter ATE1 ↵.

To register an access point with PPP as the PDP type and XXX.com as the APN to cid2

■ To reset the APN settings of the specified cid

Enter AT+CGDCONT=<cid> ↵.

■ To view the registered APN

Enter AT+CGDCONT? ↵.

7 Click "ファイル (File)" ▶ "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit Hyper Terminal)"

8 Click [はい (Yes)] on the confirmation to disconnect screen ▶ Click [いいえ (No)] on the confirmation to save screen

Hyper Terminal will quit, and the setting of the APN completes.

Note

- The APN information is saved on the FOMA terminal. If you connect a different FOMA terminal, register the APN information again.
- If you want to use the APN information saved on the PC, register the same APN to the same cid on the FOMA terminal.

Setting Show/Hide Caller ID

You can set whether to show your Caller ID to the access point during packet communication. This section describes how to use an AT command ("DGPIR command→P24) to configure the settings prior to connecting.

Your Caller ID is valuable information. Be sufficiently cautious when showing your Caller ID.

- "Hyper Terminal" does not run on Windows Vista. To configure the settings in Windows Vista, use communication software compatible with Windows Vista. For the setting procedure, refer to the instruction manual and other documentation that come with the software to be used.

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 in "Setting APN" (P14)

Hyper Terminal starts.

2 Use an AT command to set whether to show (186) or hide (184) Caller ID

Enter the AT command in the AT*DGPIR=<n> format as follows.

If "OK" appears after you enter the AT command, the setting of whether to show or hide Caller ID is completed.

- If the entered characters do not appear, enter ATE1 ↵.

■ To hide Caller ID

AT*DGPIR=1 ↵

When you make or answer a call, 184 is added automatically.

■ To show Caller ID

AT*DGPIR=2 ↵

When you make or answer a call, 186 is added automatically.

■ To reset the show/hide Caller ID setting to its default (unset) using a *DGPIR command

AT*DGPIR=0 ↵

Note

- When you use the DOCOMO Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera", the Caller ID needs to be set to "通知 (Show)"

Continue on the next page

Setting Show/Hide Caller ID Using the Access Point Number

You can also show or hide your Caller ID by adding 186 (show) or 184 (hide) to the access point number when you configure dial-up network settings (P16).

The show/hide status of the Caller ID for each setting of the access point number and *DGPIR command is as follows.

Setting Access Point Number (when cid=3)	Setting Using *DGPIR Command		
	Unset	Hide	Show
*99***3#	Show	Hide	Show
184*99***3#	Hide (The setting of the access point number (184) takes priority.)		
186*99***3#	Show (The setting of the access point number (186) takes priority.)		

Configuring Dial-up Network Settings

Set up the dial-up network on the PC.

- For setting up a connection to other than "mopera U" and "mopera", contact your ISP or network administrator.

Example: Connecting to the DOCOMO Internet connection service "mopera U", which is registered to <cid>=3

Setting on Windows Vista

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "接続先 (Connection)"

2 Click "接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Set up connection or network)"

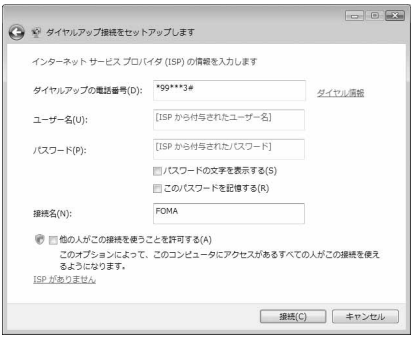
3 Select "ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします (Set up dial-up connection)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

4 When the modem selection screen appears, click "FOMA L01A"

The modem selection screen appears only when the PC has more than one modem.

5 Configure various settings, then click [接続 (Connect)]

- Enter the access point number in the "ダイヤルアップの電話番号 (Phone number to a dial-up connection)".
- Enter a connection name in the "接続名 (Connection Name)" field.
- Enter the user name and password provided by your ISP or network administrator in the "ユーザー名 (User name)" and "パスワード (Password)" fields.
- You can leave the user name and password fields unfilled when connecting to "mopera U" or "mopera".



6 Click [スキップ (Skip)] on the "(接続名) に接続中... (Connecting to (APN))" screen

The connection test will not be performed. Only the settings will be checked.

- If you do not click [スキップ (Skip)], the connection to the Internet will be established.

7 Click "接続をセットアップします (Set up the connection)" ▶ [閉じる (Close)]

8 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "接続先 (Connection)"

9 Select the icon of the created dial-up connection ▶ Right-click and then select "プロパティ (Properties)"

Continue on the next page

10 Check the settings on the "全般 (General)" tab

If more than one modem is connected to the PC, enable only "モデム−FOMA L01A (Modem−FOMA L01A)" in the "接続方法 (Connection Method)" field.

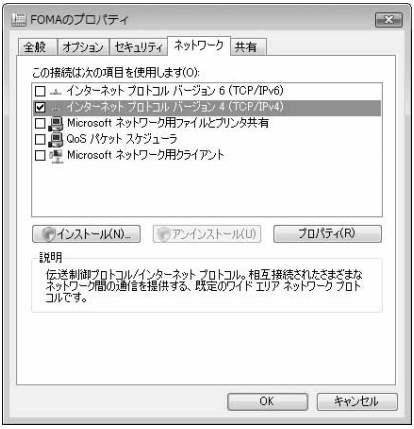
- Disable "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dialing information)".

11 Click the "ネットワーク (Networking)" tab ▶ Configure various settings

Mark the "インターネット プロトコル バージョン 4 (TCP/IPv4) (Internet Protocol 4 (TCP/IPv4))" checkbox in the "この接続は次の項目を使用します (This connection uses the following items)" field.

Obtain the settings for "QoSパケット スケジューラ (QoS Packet Scheduler)" from your ISP or network administrator.

- To set up TCP/IP, click [プロパティ (Properties)]. Contact your ISP or network administrator for setting up.



12 Click the "オプション (Option)" tab ▶ Click [PPP設定 (PPP Settings)]

13 Remove checkmarks from all items ▶ Click [OK]

14 On the "オプション (Option)" tab, click [OK]

Setting on Windows XP

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Communication)" ▶ "新しい接続ウィザード (New Connection Wizard)"

2 On the New connection wizard screen, click [次へ (Next)]

3 Select "インターネットに接続する (Connect to the Internet)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

4 Select "接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up the connection manually)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

5 Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use a dial-up modem to connect)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

6 If the "デバイスの選択 (Select a device)" screen appears, select "モデム−FOMA L01A (Modem - FOMA L01A)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

The "デバイスの選択 (Select a device)" screen appears only when the PC has more than one modem.

Continue on the next page

7 Enter a name in the "ISP名 (ISP Name)" field ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

8 Enter the APN phone number in the "電話番号 (Phone Number)" field ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

9 Select the connection usage range ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

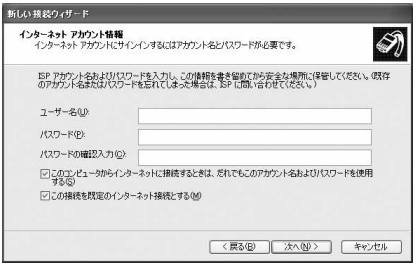
Select a user.

- Depending on the PC settings, this screen may not appear.

10 Fill in the "ユーザー名 (User Name)", "パスワード (Password)", and "パスワードの確認入力 (Confirm password)" fields ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

Enter the information provided by your ISP or network administrator.

- To connect to "mopera U" or "mopera", these fields can be left unfilled.

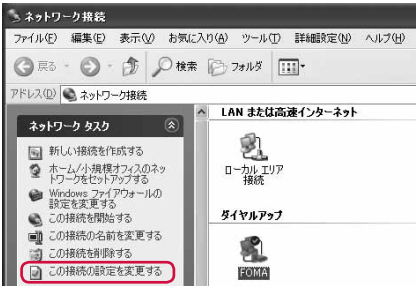


11 Click [完了 (Finish)]

The new connection wizard appears.

12 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Communication)" ▶ "ネットワーク接続 (Network Connection)"

13 Select the icon of the created dial-up connection ▶ Click "この接続の設定を変更する (Change the setting of this connection)"



14 Check the settings on the "全般 (General)" tab

- If more than one modem is connected to the PC, enable only "モデム－FOMA L01A (Modem - FOMA L01A)" in the "接続方法 (Connection Method)" field.
- Disable "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dialing information)".

Continue on the next page

15 Click the "ネットワーク (Networking)" tab ▶ Configure various settings

- Select "PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Dial-up server type to call)" field.
- Enable "インターネット プロトコル (Internet Protocol) (TCP/IP)" in the "この接続は次の項目を使用します (This connection uses the following items)" field. You cannot change the settings of "QoS パケット スケジューラ (QoS Packet Scheduler)".

16 Click [設定 (Settings)]

17 Remove checkmarks from all items ▶ Click [OK]

18 On the "ネットワーク (Networking)" tab, click [OK]

For Windows 2000

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Communication)" ▶ "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and Dial-up Connections)"

2 On the Network and Dial-up connection screen, double-click the "新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)" icon

3 If the location information screen appears, enter "市外局番 (City code)" ▶ Click [OK]

This appears only when "新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)" is launched for the first time. Go to Step 5 when launching this for the second time or later.

4 On the phone and modem option screen, click [OK]

5 On the Network connection wizard screen, click [次へ (Next)]

6 Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Connect to the Internet via dial-up)" ▶ Click [次へ(Next)]

7 Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set up the Internet connection manually, or connect to the Internet using LAN)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

8 Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to the Internet using a telephone line and a modem)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

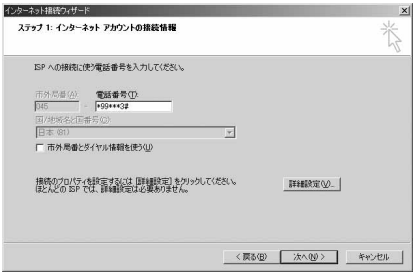
9 If the modem selection screen appears, select "FOMA L01A" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

The modem selection screen appears only when the PC has more than one modem.

- If "FOMA L01A" is not displayed, click "インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select the modem used to connect to the Internet)" field and then select "FOMA L01A".

10 Enter the APN phone number in the "電話番号 (Phone Number)" field ▶ Click [詳細設定 (Advanced settings)]

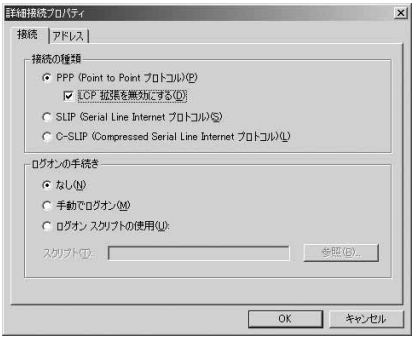
Disable "市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use the city code and dialing information)".



Continue on the next page

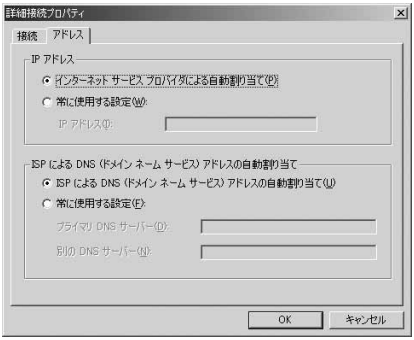
11 Configure the settings on the "接続 (Connection)" tab according to the examples on the screen.

- If you are connecting to other than "mopera U" and "mopera", fill in the "接続の種類 (Connection type)" and " ログオンの手続き (Log on procedures)" fields according to the information provided by your ISP or network administrator.



12 Click the "アドレス (Address)" tab ▶ Configure settings according to the examples on the screen ▶ Click [OK]

- If you are connecting to other than "mopera U" and "mopera", fill in the "IPアドレス (IP address)" and "ISP によるDNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て (Assign DNS address automatically by ISP)" fields according to the information provided by your ISP or network administrator.

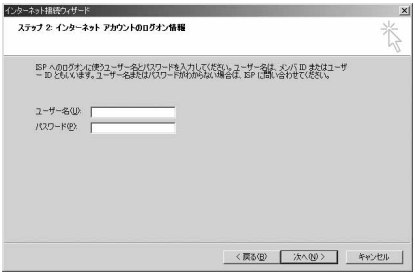


13 On the "インターネットアカウントの接続情報 (Internet account connection information)" screen, click [次へ (Next)]

14 Enter "ユーザー名 (User Name)" and "パスワード (Password)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

Enter the information provided by your ISP or network administrator.

- To connect to "mopera U" or "mopera", these fields can be left unfilled. If they are not filled, warnings that the user name and password fields are not filled appear consecutively. Click [はい (Yes)] on each screen.



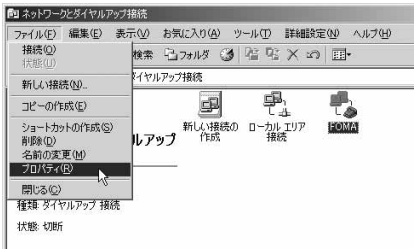
15 Enter a connection name in the "接続名 (Connection Name)" field ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

16 Select "いいえ (No)" ▶ Click [次へ (Next)]

17 Click [完了 (Finish)]

- If "今すぐインターネットに接続するにはここを選び完了をクリックしてください (Select this to connect to the Internet now and click Finish)" appears, disable the option.

18 Select the icon of the created dial-up connection ▶ Click "ファイル (File)" ▶ "プロパティ (Properties)"



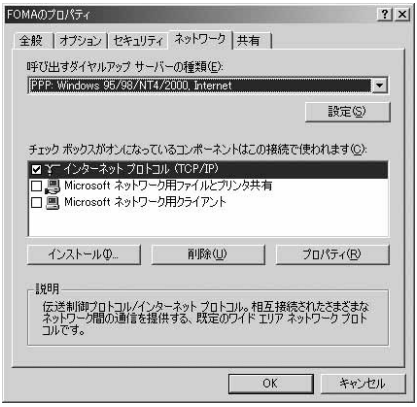
Continue on the next page

19 Check the settings on the "全般 (General)" tab

- If more than one modem is connected to the PC, enable only "モデム– FOMA L01A (Modem - FOMA L01A)" in the "接続の方法 (Connection Method)" field.
- Disable "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dialing information)".

20 Click the "ネットワーク (Networking)" tab ▶ Configure various settings

- Select "PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Dial-up server type to call)" field.
- Enable only "インターネット プロトコル (Internet protocol) (TCP/IP)" in the "チェックボックスがオンになっているコンポーネントはこの接続で使われます (Checked components are used for this connection)" field.



21 Click [設定 (Settings)]

22 Remove checkmarks from all items ▶ Click [OK]

23 On the "ネットワーク (Networking)" tab window, click [OK]

Communicating

This section describes steps to start and terminate communication without using the DOCOMO Connection Manager.

- Check that the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected properly before starting communication.→P3
- When performing communication, connect the FOMA terminal you used to configure the settings. If a different FOMA terminal is connected, the L-01A communication setting files may need to be reinstalled.

Example: For Windows Vista

1 Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "接続先 (Connect to)" ▶ Select the access point that has been set up ▶ Click "接続 (Connect)"

■ For Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Communication)" ▶ "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)" ▶ Double-click the icon of the access point that has been set up.

■ For Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)" ▶ "プログラム (Programs)" ▶ "アクセサリ (Accessories)" ▶ "通信 (Communication)" ▶ ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and Dial-up Connections)" ▶ Double-click the icon of the access point that has been set up.

Continue on the next page

2 Enter "ユーザー名 (User Name)" and "パスワード (Password)"▶Click [ダイヤル (Dial)]

The access point will be connected.

- To connect to "mopera U" or "mopera", you can leave the "ユーザー名 (User Name)" and "パスワード (Password)" fields unfilled and click [ダイヤル (Dial)]. If another ISP or dial-up connection is selected, fill in the "ユーザー名 (User Name)" and "パスワード (Password)" fields and click [ダイヤル (Dial)].
- You can save the user name and password or just the password to skip entering them next time.
- Depending on the operating system, a connection completion screen may appear when the dial-up connection is established. However, the connection completion screen does not appear if you previously set the completion message not to appear.

Disconnecting

Exiting the Internet browser may not terminate the connection. Perform the following steps to terminate the connection securely.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task tray of the PC

A screen indicating the connection status appears.

2 Click [切断 (Disconnect)]

The communication will be terminated.

Note

- The communication speed shown on the PC screen may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Commands

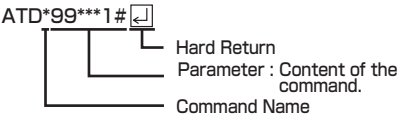
AT commands are used to check the FOMA terminal function settings or status on a PC. Usually the communication software issues AT commands so that you do not have to be aware of them. Use AT commands if you want to control the FOMA terminal in your own way.

Format of AT Commands

AT commands should be entered on the Terminal Mode screen of the communication software such as Hyper Terminal.

- Terminal Mode is for sending text input on a PC to the line connected to the communication port.

Example of Entry Format



- An AT command must be entered on a single line including parameters (numbers and symbols) following the command. On the Terminal Mode screen of the communication software, "one line" is from the first character to the character prior to ↵. You can enter up to 256 characters including the AT command.
- Be sure to enter half-pitch alphanumeric characters for the AT command, including any parameters that follow the command.
- If the entered characters do not appear, enter ATE↵.

AT Commands List

The following commands can be used with the L-01A modem.

- The following commands can be entered but are invalid commands that will not work.
  - AT (input only AT)
  - ATS0 (set number of rings until the FOMA terminal automatically answers a call)
  - ATS6 (set time for pause until dialing)
  - ATS8 (set time for pause when comma dial modifier)
  - ATS10 (set time for delay until automatic disconnection)

AT Commands	Overview	Parameters/Descriptions	Command Examples
A/	Repeat the last AT command executed. A carriage return (CR) does not need to be entered after inputting this command.	—	A/ OK
AT%V	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V L01A-XXXXXXXXX-XXXXX- XXX-XX-2008-DCM-JP X [XXX XX 2008 XX:XX:XX] OK
AT&C<n>	Set the operating conditions of the circuit CD signals for DTE.	n=0 : Always keep circuit CD signal ON. n=1 : CD changes depending on the other party modem carrier (default)	AT&C1 OK
AT&D<n>	Set the operation performed when a circuit ER signal received from DTE is switched from ON to OFF.	n=0 : Ignore ER signals (Always regard as ON). n=2 : When ER signals are turned off by disconnecting, the PC switches over to the offline command mode (default)	AT&D2 OK
AT&F<n>	Restore all registers to their defaults. If this command is entered during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only n=0 can be set (optional)	—
AT&W<n>	Store the current setting value to the FOMA terminal.	Only n=0 can be set (optional)	—
AT*DANTE	Display the signal strength (number of antenna bars) of the FOMA terminal.	Result format: *DANTE:<m> m=0 : Out of service area m=1 : State of 0 or 1 antenna bar displayed m=2 : State of 2 antenna bars displayed m=3 : State of 3 antenna bars displayed	AT*DANTE *DANTE:3 OK

Continue on the next page

AT Commands	Overview	Parameters/Descriptions	Command Examples
AT*DGPIR=<n>	Set whether to show or hide the Caller ID to the access point during packet communication. The setting of this command is enabled when a call is made. This setting can also be set by adding 184 (hide) or 186 (show) to the access point number when configuring the dial-up network settings. →P16	n=0 : Connect with the APN setting as is. n=1 : Connect with 184 (hide) added to the APN. n=2 : Connect with 186 (show) added to the APN. AT*DGPIR? : Display the current setting value.	AT*DGPIR=0 OK AT*DGPIR? *DGPIR:0 OK
AT*DRPW	Display the received power indication value of the FOMA terminal (minimum value to maximum value: 0 to 75).	−	AT*DRPW *DRPW:25 OK
AT+CACM="<passwd>"	Reset the cumulative billing value recorded on the UIM (FOMA card).	passwd: PIN2 code If the entered PIN2 code is correct, the cumulative billing value is reset.	("1234" is entered for the PIN2 code) AT+CACM="1234" OK
AT+CBC	Display the battery level of the FOMA terminal.	Result format: +CBC:<bcs>,<bcl> bcs=0 : Power is supplied from the battery pack bcs=1 : Power is not supplied from the battery pack bcs=2 : The battery pack is not connected to the FOMA terminal bcs=3 : A call cannot be made from the FOMA terminal as a result of a power supply error bcl : Remaining battery power is displayed with a value from 0 to 100	AT+CBC +CBC:0,70 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Set APN for Packet communication.	See P30.	See P30.
AT+CGEQMIN	Register the threshold to accept the QoS (Quality of Service) sent from the network when packet communication is established via a PPP connection.	See P30.	See P30.
AT+CGEQREQ	Set the QoS (Quality of Service) to be requested from the network when packet communication via PPP connection is dialed.	See P30.	See P30.
AT+CGMR	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	−	AT+CGMR XXXXXXXXXXX XXXXX OK

Continue on the next page

AT Commands	Overview	Parameters/Descriptions	Command Examples
AT+CGREG=<n>	Set whether to be notified of the status of registration to the network. Display whether in or out of service area based on the information received from the network.	n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : Notified Notify when switching in or out of service area. AT+CGREG? : Display the current status. Result format: +CGREG:<n>,<stat> n: Display the current setting value for whether a notification is sent. stat=0: Out of the packet service area stat=1: Within the packet service area stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Within the packet service area (while roaming)	AT+CGREG=1 OK (When notification is set to be sent) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: 1,0 OK (When out of the packet service area)
AT+CGSN	Display the serial number of the FOMA terminal.	−	AT+CGSN XXXXXXXXXXX XXXX OK
AT+CMEE=<n>	Set whether there is an error report format of the FOMA terminal.	n=0 : Use the normal ERROR result (default). n=1 : Use +CME ERROR:<err> result code, and use a numerical value for <err>. n=2 : Use +CME ERROR:<err> result code, and use characters for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Display the current setting values. The example on the right shows the display when a wrong PUK Code or PIN1/PIN2 Code was entered.	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CPIN="123 45678","1234" ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CPIN="123 45678","1234" +CME ERROR : 16 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CPIN="123 45678","1234" +CME ERROR : incorrect password
AT+CNUM	Display the own number of the FOMA terminal.	Result format: +CNUM:,<number>,<type> number : own number type=129 : Show the number without the international access code "+". type=145 : Show the number with the international access code "+".	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"090XX XXXXXX",129 OK

Continue on the next page

AT Commands	Overview	Parameters/Descriptions	Command Examples
AT+CPAS	Display whether the control signals to the FOMA terminal are available.	Result format: +CPAS:<pas> pas 0: Control signals can be exchanged with the FOMA terminal	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0
AT+CPIN="<pin>"[,"<newpin>"]	Enter the PIN code to the FOMA terminal.	Enter the PIN1/PIN2/PUK Code. AT+CPIN? : Display the status of the PIN1 or PIN2 code. For the result code, see P31. * PIN can be authenticated with AT+CPIN, however, it will not appear on the FOMA terminal. Be aware of this.	AT+CPIN? +CPIN : SIM PIN OK ("1234" is entered for the PIN1 or PIN2 Code.) AT+CPIN="1234" OK ("12345678" is entered for the PUK Code, and "1234" for the new PIN1 or PIN2 Code.) AT+CPIN="12345678","1234" OK
AT+CPUC="<currency>","<ppu>"[,"<Passwd>"]	Rewrite the currency table on the UIM.	passwd: PIN2 code * If a wrong PIN2 code is entered, "ERROR" appears. AT+CPUC? : Display the current setting value.	("1234" is entered for the PIN2 code) AT+CPUC="YEN","0.2","1234" OK AT+CPUC? +CPUC:"YEN","0.2" OK AT+CPUC =? OK
AT+CREG=<n>	Set whether a result will be displayed regarding the terminal is in or out of service area. (Depending on the operating system of the PC, this may not be available).	n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : Notified Notify when switching in or out of service area. AT+CREG? : Display the current status. Result format: +CREG:<n>,<stat> n: Display the current setting value for whether a notification is sent. stat=0: Out of the voice service area stat=1: Within the voice service area stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Within the voice service area (while roaming)	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to notification) AT+CREG? +CREG:1,0 OK (When out of service area) +CREG:1 (When you move into the service area)

Continue on the next page

AT Commands	Overview	Parameters/Descriptions	Command Examples
AT+FCLASS=<n>	Set the communication type supported by the FOMA terminal.	n=0 : Only data communication is supported (default) AT+FCLASS? : Display the current setting values.	AT+FCLASS=0 OK
AT+GCAP	Display the AT command support capabilities of the FOMA terminal.	−	AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM, +FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI	Display the manufacturer name.	−	AT+GMI LG Electronics Inc OK
AT+GMM	Display the FOMA terminal product name.	−	AT+GMM FOMA L01A OK
AT+GMR	Display the version of the FOMA terminal.	−	AT+GMR L01A- MSM409565- VXXX-XXX-XX- XXXX-DCM-JP X [XXX XX 2008 XX:XX:XX] OK
AT+IFC=<n>,<m>	Set the local flow control method.	n:DCE by DTE m:DTE by DCE Parameters of <n> and <m> 0:No flow control 1:XON/XOFF flow control 2:RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default) AT+IFC? : Display the current setting values.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC:2,2
AT+WS46=<n>	Set the wireless network to be used by the FOMA terminal.	n=12:GSM n=22:3G (W-CDMA) n=25: Auto switch (default) AT+WS46? : Display the current setting values.	AT+WS46=22 OK AT+WS46? 22 OK
AT¥S	Display the currently set commands and S register content.	−	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 S000=000 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 OK

Continue on the next page

AT Commands	Overview	Parameters/Descriptions	Command Examples
ATD	Set automatic dialing	Input format : ATD*99***<cid># cid: Enter from 1 to 11 for the registration number (cid) of the APN set with the +CGDCONT command. • If cid is omitted and "ATD*99***#" is entered, the APN registered to cid1 is dialed automatically.	ATD*99***3# CONNECT
ATE<n>	Specify whether there is echo back for DTE in the command mode.	n=0 : No echo back n=1 : Echo back (default)	ATE1 OK
ATH	Disconnect the line during packet communication.	—	(During packet communication) ATH NO CARRIER
ATI<n>	Display the confirmation code.	n=0 : Display "NTT DOCOMO". n=1 : Display the product name. n=2 : Display the version of the FOMA terminal. n=3 : Display each element of the ACMP signal. n=4 : Display details of the communication functions of the FOMA terminal.	ATI0 NTT DOCOMO OK ATI1 FOMA L01A OK
ATQ<n>	Set whether to display the result code for DTE.	n=0 : Show (default) n=1 : Hide	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 ("OK" is not displayed at this time)
ATS3=<n>	Set the carriage return character.	n=13 : Default value (only "13" can be specified) ATS3?: Display the current setting values.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=<n>	Set the line feed character.	n=10 : Default value (only "10" can be specified) ATS4?: Display the current setting values.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5=<n>	Set the back space character.	n=8 : Default value (only "8" can be specified) ATS5?: Display the current setting values.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATV<n>	Set all result codes to be displayed in numeric or alphabetic characters.	n=0 : Display result codes in numeric values. n=1 : Display result codes in text (default).	ATV1 OK

Continue on the next page

AT Commands	Overview	Parameters/Descriptions	Command Examples
ATX<n>	Set whether to display the speed in the CONNECT indication when connected. Also detect a busy tone or dial tone.	n=0 : Not detect busy tones, not detect dial tones, and not display speed. n=1 : Not detect busy tones, not detect dial tones, and display speed. n=2 : Not detect busy tones, detect dial tones, and display speed. n=3 : Detect busy tones, not detect dial tones, and display speed. n=4 : Detect busy tones, detect dial tones, and display speed (default).	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Reset the AT command settings to the content in non-volatile memory. If this command is entered during communication, the settings will not be reset	–	ATZ OK

Supplementary Explanation of AT Commands

■ Command name : +CGDCONT=[Parameter]

- Overview
  Set APN for sending packets.
  This is a setting command, however, it is not reset by &F.
- Format
  +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"<PDP type>"[,"<APN>"]]]
- Parameter descriptions
  <cid>*1 : 1 to 11
  <PDP type>*2: PPP or IP
  <APN>*3: Optional

*1 <cid> is a number used to manage the access point (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. From 1 to 11 can be registered to this FOMA terminal. By default, mopera.ne.jp is registered to <cid>=1, and mopera.net is registered to <cid>=3.

*2 The <PDP type> is the connection method for packet communication.
Select to enter either PPP or IP for the connection method supported by the access point.

*3 <APN> is any text string that indicates an access point.

- Command examples
  Command to register an APN with the name of abc (when registering the APN to cid2)
  AT+CGDCONT=2,"IP","abc"
  OK
- Operations without a parameter
  AT+CGDCONT=
  : Reset all < cid> to their defaults.
  AT+CGDCONT=<cid>
  : Reset the specified <cid> to its default.
  AT+CGDCONT=?
  : Display a list of values that can be specified.
  AT+CGDCONT?
  : Display the current setting values

■ Command name : +CGEQMIN=[Parameter]

- Overview
  Register the threshold to accept the QoS (Quality of Service) sent from the network when packet communication is established.
  This is a setting command, however, it is not reset by &F.
- Format
  +CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]
- Parameter descriptions
  <cid>*1 : 1 to 11
  <Maximum bitrate UL>*2 : None (default) or 384
  <Maximum bitrate DL>*2 : None (default) or 7,232

*1 <cid> is a number used to manage the access point (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. From 1 to 11 can be registered in this FOMA terminal.
By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to <cid>=1, and "mopera.net" is registered to <cid>=3.

*2 <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> indicate the minimum communication speed [kbps] of upload and download traffic respectively between the FOMA terminal and the base station. If these settings are set to None (default), all speeds are permissible. Not that if you set these settings to 384 and 7,232, a packet communication connection may not be able to be established since any speeds other than those set are not permissible.

- Command examples
  (1) Command to permit all speeds for both upload and download (when cid=2)
  AT+CGEQMIN=2
  OK
  (2) Command to permit only 384kbps for upload and 7,232kbps for download (when cid=2)
  AT+CGEQMIN=2,,384,7232
  OK
  (3) Command to permit 384kbps for upload and all speeds for download (when cid=2)
  AT+CGEQMIN=2,,384
  OK
  (4) Command to permit all speeds for upload and only 7,232kbps for download (when cid=4)
  AT+CGEQMIN=4,,,7232
  OK
- Operations without a parameter
  AT+CGEQMIN=
  : Reset all <cid> to their defaults.
  AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>
  : Reset the specified <cid> to its default.
  AT+CGEQMIN=?
  : Display a list of values that can be specified.
  AT+CGEQMIN?
  : Display the current setting values.

■ Command name : +CGEQREQ=[Parameter]

- Overview
  Set the QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network when packet communication is dialed.
  Only the command described in the following example can be used, and it is set as default.
  This is a setting command, however, it is not reset by &F.
- Format
  +CGEQREQ=[<cid>]
- Parameter descriptions
  <cid>*:1 to 11
  * : <cid> is a number used to manage the access point (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. From 1 to 11 can be registered to this FOMA terminal. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to <cid>=1, and "mopera.net" is registered to <cid>=3.
- Command examples
  Command used to require 384kbps upload and 7,232kbps download (when <cid>=2)
  AT+CGEQREQ=2,2,384,7232
  OK

Continue on the next page

- Operations without a parameter
  AT+CGEQREQ=
  : Reset all <cid> to their defaults.
  AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>
  : Set the specified <cid> as default.

List of Error Reports

Numeric display	Text display	Reason
15	SIM wrong	A SIM other than a UIM (non-NTT DOCOMO IC card) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	The password is incorrect.
100	unknown	There is an unknown error.

Result Codes

■ List of Result Codes

Numeric display	Text display	Description
0	OK	Performed properly.
1	CONNECT	Connected to the other party.
2	RING	Receiving a call.
3	NO CARRER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Unable to accept a command.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tones.
7	BUSY	Detecting busy tones.
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed (timeout)
100	RESTRICTION	The network access is restricted.

Note

- The result codes are displayed as text if the ATVn command (P28) is set to n=1 (default), and the result codes are displayed as numbers if set to n=0.

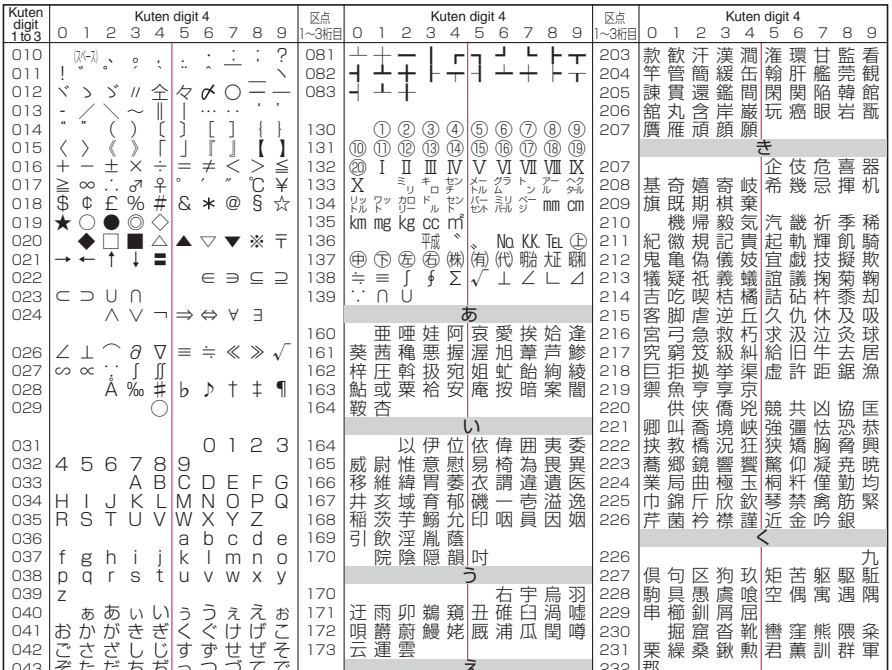
■ Result code of AT+CPIN?

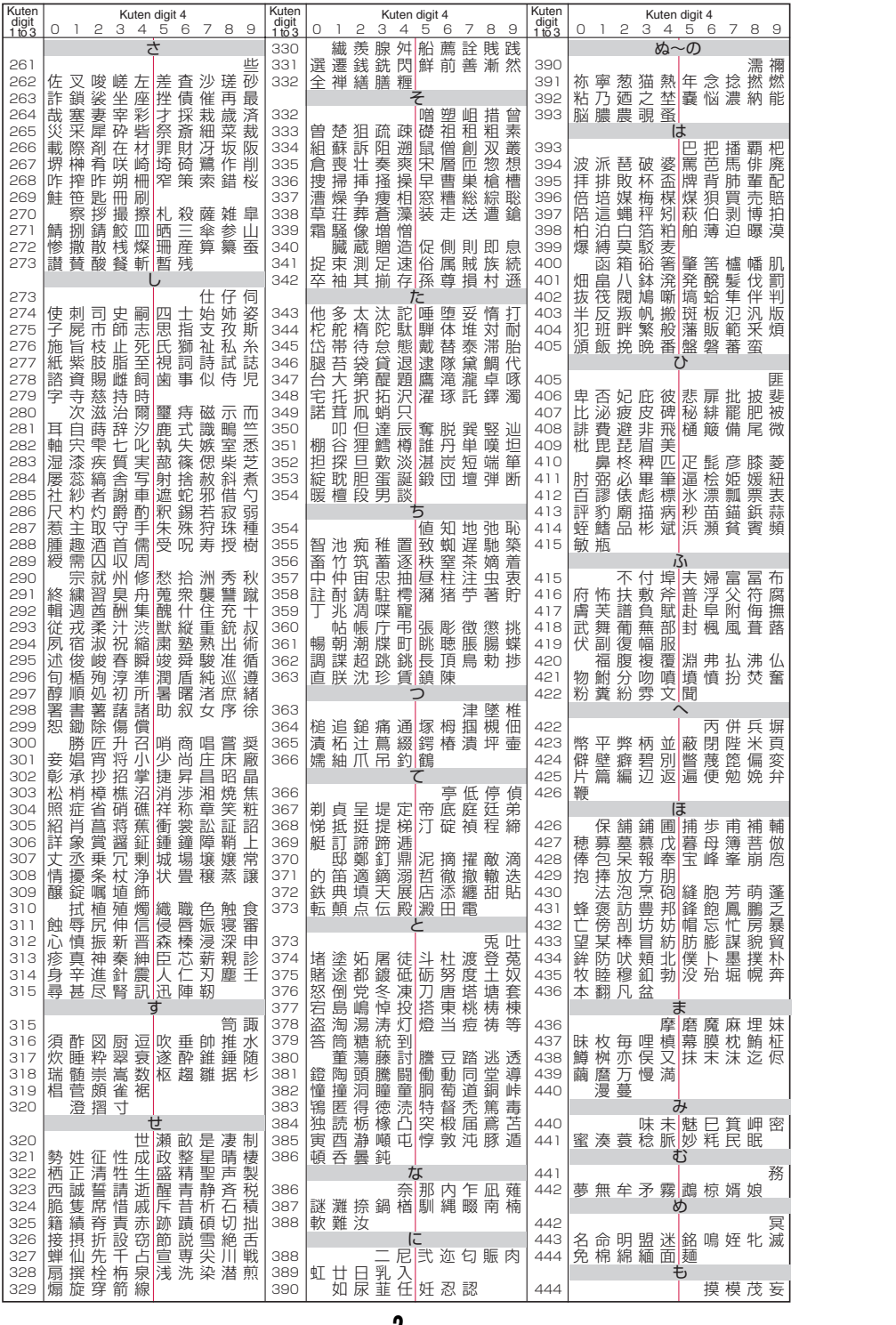
FOMA terminal state	Result Codes
Waiting for input	+CPIN: SIM PIN (for PIN1 code) +CPIN: SIM PIN2 (for PIN2 code)
Waiting for input of PIN Unlock Code.	+CPIN: SIM PUK (for PIN1 code) +CPIN: SIM PUK2 (for PIN2 code)
PINCode authenticated	+CPIN: READY
Inappropriate command was entered	+CME ERROR: Operation is not allowed
Incorrect command entered	ERROR

Kuten Code List for L-01A

Kuten Code List

- The kuten codes in the following table may differ from the appearances of the actual display.




Kuten digit 1 to 3
Kuten digit 4
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
さ
し
す
せ
た
ち
つ
て
と
な
に
ぬ〜の
は
ひ
ふ
へ
ほ
ま
み
む
め
も

Kuten digit 1 to 3	Kuten digit 4 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	亡		木	黙
446	目	杢		餅	尤	戻			問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							
448						や				
449										
450					也					弥
451	矢	厄		役	約	夜		野	柳	薮
452		鑓				訳		耶	靖	
453										
454										
455						ゆ				
456										
457										
458					治	葉		爺	踊	
459										
460										
461										
462										
463										
464										
465										
466										
467										
468										
469										
470										
471										
472										
473										
474										
475										
476										
477										
478										
479										
480										
481										
482										
483										
484										
485										
486										
487										
488										
489										
490										
491										
492										
493										
494										
495										
496										
497										
498										
499										
500										
501										
502										
503										
504										
505										
506										
507										
508										
509										
510										
511										
512										
513										
514										
515										
516										
517										
518										
519										
520										
521										
522										
523										
524										
525										
526										
527										
528										
529										
530										
531										
532										
533										
534										
535										
536										
537										
538										
539										
540										
541										
542										
543										
544										
545										
546										
547										
548										
549										
550										
551										
552										
553										
554										
555										
556										
557										
558										
559										
560										
561										
562										
563										
564										
565										
566										
567										
568										
569										
570										
571										
572										
573										
574										
575										
576										
577										
578										
579										
580										
581										
582										
583										
584										
585										
586										
587										
588										
589										
590										
591										
592										
593										
594										
595										
596										
597										
598										
599										
600										
601										
602										
603										
604										
605										
606										
607										
608										
609										
610										
611										
612										
613										
614										
615										
616										
617										
618										
619										
620										
621										
622										
623										
624										
625										
626										
627										
628										
629										
630										
631										
632										
633										
634										
635										
636										
637										
638										
639										
640										
641										
642										
643										
644										
645										
646										
647										
648										
649										
650										
651										
652										
653										
654										
655										
656										
657										
658										
659										
660										

Kuten digit 1 to 3	Kuten digit 4										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
661	皖	皓	盍	皙	皚	皰	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盆	眇	眩	眦	眥	眸	睇	睚	睛
663	眸	睛	睡	睨	睫	瞞	瞋	瞑	瞰	瞥
664	瞥	瞰	矇	矍	矗	矐	矚	矜	矻	矼
665	矽	砌	砧	砿	礦	砠	砥	砫	砦	砭
666	砧	砿	礪	砫	砮	砧	硎	硏	硅	碵
667	碓	碇	磐	碪	碣	碵	碪	碯	磑	磆
668	磋	碼	磅	磊	磈	磧	磚	磽	磴	礇
669	礎	礙	礑	礫	礬	礪	礫	礮	礴	示
670	礽	礿	祁	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祧	祓
671	祺	祿	禊	禝	禧	禳	禹	禼	离	秉
672	秕	秖	秦	秩	秬	秤	秫	秧	秬	秸
673	稍	稘	稙	稠	稟	稱	穀	穂	穆	穉
674	穡	穢	穩	龝	穹	窠	窣	窕	窶	窸
675	窺	竇	竰	竿	笂	笄	笊	笋	笏	笑
676	笘	笳	笵	笹	筅	筇	筈	筊	筍	筑
677	筒	答	策	筮	筰	筱	箇	箋	箍	箏
678	箘	箙	箚	箝	箠	箭	箴	篇	篌	篏
679	篝	篠	篥	篦	篩	篭	篳	篶	篷	簀
680	簇	簍	簔	簗	簟	簠	簡	簣	簧	簪
681	簫	簷	簸	簽	籀	籃	籌	籍	籏	籐
682	籘	籟	籠	籤	籥	籬	籵	粁	粂	粃
683	粋	粑	粔	粕	粗	粘	粛	粟	粢	粧
684	粨	粲	粳	粶	粽	糀	糅	糊	糎	糒
685	糘	糠	糢	糲	糴	糶	糸	糺	紂	紅
686	紆	紈	紊	紐	紓	純	紕	紖	紗	紘
687	紙	級	紛	紜	紝	紡	紬	絅	絆	絋
688	絎	絏	絖	絛	絣	絨	絽	絺	絽	絿
689	綛	綟	綣	綧	綫	綮	綯	綰	綱	綸
690	綵	綻	綽	綾	綿	緇	緋	緌	緍	緑
691	緕	緖	緘	緙	線	緝	緞	締	緡	緤
692	緦	編	緩	緬	緯	緲	緶	緻	縁	縄
693	縅	縋	縒	縔	縕	縛	縞	縟	縡	縢
694	縦	縫	縮	縲	縵	縷	縹	縻	縼	繁
695	繃	繆	繊	繋	繍	繒	繕	繖	繙	繚
696	繝	繞	繧	繭	繰	繹	繻	繿	纂	纈
697	纉	纊	纍	纏	纐	纒	纓	纔	纖	纛
698	纜	纝	纞	纟	纡	缶	缸	缺	罅	罐
699	罎	罩	罸	罹	罽	罾	羂	羃	羇	羈
700	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羨	羯	羲	羶
701	羸	羹	羺	羽	羿	翁	翅	翊	翌	翔
702	翕	翡	翦	翩	翫	翰	翳	翹	翻	翼
703	耀	老	考	耄	者	耆	耋	而	耐	耑
704	耕	耗	耘	耙	耜	耡	耨	耳	耶	耽
705	耿	聊	聒	聘	聚	聟	聡	聢	聨	聳
706	聴	聶	職	聿	肄	肆	肅	肇	肉	肋
707	肌	肖	肘	肚	肛	肝	肢	肥	肩	肪
708	肬	肭	胃	胄	胆	胎	胙	胛	胝	胡
709	胤	胥	胯	胱	胴	胸	胼	能	脂	脆
710	脇	脈	脊	脚	脛	脣	脩	脯	脳	脹
711	腆	腊	腋	腎	腑	腓	腔	腕	腟	腥
712	腦	腫	腮	腰	腱	腴	腸	腹	腺	腿
713	膀	膂	膃	膈	膊	膏	膓	膕	膚	膜
714	膝	膠	膣	膤	膨	膰	膳	膵	膸	膺
715	臂	臆	臈	臉	臍	臑	臓	臙	臚	臠
716	臣	臥	臧	臨	自	臭	臯	臰	臱	臲
717	臺	舁	舂	舅	與	舋	舌	舎	舐	舒
718	舗	舘	舛	舜	舞	舟	舩	舫	舳	舵
719	舶	舷	舸	舺	艀	艇	艋	艘	艙	艚
720	艝	艟	艠	艢	艤	艦	艨	艪	艫	艮
721	良	艾	芋	芍	芒	芙	芟	芥	芦	芫
722	芭	芯	芳	芸	芹	芻	芽	苅	苋	苍
723	苑	苒	苓	苔	苗	苛	苜	苞	苟	苡
724	苣	若	苦	苧	苫	苴	苺	苻	苾	茂
725	茆	茎	茖	茗	茘	茜	茣	茨	荊	荏
726	荐	荒	荘	荳	荵	荷	荻	荼	莅	莇
727	莊	莎	莓	莖	莘	莚	莞	莟	莠	莢
728	莧	莨	菁	菅	菊	菌	菎	菓	菖	菘
729	菜	菟	菠	菩	華	菰	菱	菲	萁	萃
730	萄	萇	萋	萌	萍	萎	萓	萠	萢	萩
731	萪	萬	葆	葎	葑	葒	葛	葡	董	葦
732	葩	葭	葯	葱	葵	葷	葺	蒂	蒄	蒋
733	蒐	蒔	蒙	蒜	蒟	蒡	蒭	蒲	蒴	蒸
734	蒹	蒻	蒼	蒿	蓁	蓄	蓆	蓉	蓊	蓋
735	蓍	蓑	蓖	蓙	蓚	蓜	蓞	蓟	蓠	蓢
736	蓣	蓧	蓪	蓬	蓮	蔀	蔆	蔇	蔈	蔊

Kuten digit 1 to 3	Kuten digit 4										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
737	蔌	蔑	蔕	蔗	蔘	蔚	蔟	蔡	蔣	蔦
738	蔬	蔵	蔽	蕁	蕃	蕈	蕉	蕊	蕋	蕎
739	蕏	蕕	蕗	蕘	蕚	蕣	蕤	蕨	蕩	蕪
740	蕷	蕺	蕻	蕾	薀	薄	薈	薊	薏	薐
741	薑	薔	薗	薙	薛	薜	薤	薦	薨	薩
742	薪	薫	薬	薮	薯	薹	薺	薼	薽	薾
743	薿	藁	藉	藍	藏	藐	藕	藜	藝	藤
744	藥	藪	藷	藹	藺	藻	藾	蘂	蘆	蘇
745	蘊	蘋	蘑	蘓	蘖	蘗	蘚	蘞	蘢	蘭
746	蘰	蘴	蘸	蘹	蘼	虍	虎	虐	虔	虚
747	虜	虞	虢	虧	虫	虱	虹	虻	虼	虽
748	虻	蚁	蚂	蚊	蚋	蚌	蚓	蚕	蚖	蚘
749	蚜	蚝	蚣	蚤	蚩	蚪	蚫	蚯	蚰	蚱
750	蚵	蚶	蚺	蛄	蛆	蛇	蛉	蛋	蛍	蛎
751	蛔	蛙	蛛	蛞	蛟	蛤	蛩	蛭	蛮	蛯
752	蛸	蛹	蛻	蛾	蜀	蜂	蜃	蜆	蜈	蜉
753	蜊	蜍	蜑	蜒	蜘	蜚	蜜	蜥	蜩	蜴
754	蜷	蜻	蜿	蝉	蝋	蝌	蝎	蝓	蝕	蝗
755	蝙	蝟	蝠	蝣	蝦	蝨	蝪	蝮	蝴	蝶
756	蝸	蝿	螂	螃	螄	螈	螋	融	螟	螢
757	螫	螭	螯	螳	螵	螺	螻	螽	蟀	蟄
758	蟆	蟇	蟋	蟐	蟒	蟠	蟥	蟬	蟯	蟲
759	蟷	蟹	蟻	蟾	蠅	蠍	蠑	蠕	蠖	蠡
760	蠢	蠣	蠧	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠻	血	衂	衄
761	衆	衒	衙	衛	衝	衢	衫	衰	衲	衵
762	衾	衿	袁	袈	袋	袍	袒	袖	袗	被
763	袮	袰	袱	袴	袵	袷	袿	裀	裁	裂
764	裃	裄	裏	裔	裕	裙	補	裟	裡	裨
765	裲	裳	裴	裵	裸	裹	製	裾	褂	褄
766	褊	褌	褐	褒	褓	褜	褞	褥	褪	褫
767	褶	褻	襁	襃	襄	襖	襞	襟	襠	襤
768	襦	襪	襯	襲	襴	襷	襾	覃	覆	覇
769	覈	覊	覓	覗	覘	覚	覦	覧	覩	親
770	覲	観	覺	覽	覿	觀	角	觜	觝	解
771	觧	觴	觸	言	訂	訃	訇	訊	訌	訐
772	訖	訓	訕	訖	託	訛	訝	訟	訣	訥
773	訪	設	許	訳	訴	訶	診	註	証	詁
774	詆	詐	詒	詔	評	詛	詞	詠	詡	詢
775	詣	試	詩	詫	詬	詭	詮	詰	話	該
776	詳	詼	詿	誂	誄	誅	誆	誇	誉	誌
777	認	誑	誒	誓	誕	誘	誚	語	誠	誡
778	誣	誤	誥	誦	誨	説	読	誰	課	誹
779	誼	調	諄	談	請	諏	諒	論	諚	諛
780	諜	諞	諠	諡	諢	諤	諦	諧	諫	諭
781	諮	諱	諳	諶	諷	諸	諺	諾	謀	謁
782	謂	謄	謌	謎	謐	謔	謖	謗	謙	謚
783	講	謝	謠	謡	謦	謨	謫	謬	謳	謹
784	謾	譁	譌	譎	證	譖	譚	譛	譜	譟
785	譫	譬	譯	譱	譲	譴	譽	讀	讃	讌
786	讎	讐	讒	讓	谷	谺	豁	豆	豈	豊
787	豌	豎	豐	豕	豚	象	豢	豪	豫	豸
788	豹	貂	貅	貊	貍	貎	貔	貘	貝	貞
789	貢	貧	貨	販	貪	貫	責	貭	貮	貯
790	貰	貲	貳	貴	貶	買	貸	貺	費	貼
791	貽	貿	賀	賁	賂	賃	賄	資	賈	賊
792	賎	賑	賓	賚	賛	賜	賞	賠	賡	賢
793	賣	賤	賦	賧	質	賭	賮	賴	賵	賸
794	賻	購	賽	賾	贄	贅	贇	贈	贋	贍
795	贐	贔	贖	赤	赦	赧	赫	赭	走	赳
796	赴	起	趁	趂	趄	超	越	趙	趣	趨
797	足	趺	趾	跂	跋	跌	跏	跖	跗	跙
798	跛	距	跟	跡	跣	跨	跪	跫	跬	路
799	跳	践	跼	跽	踈	踉	踊	踏	踐	踝
800	踞	踟	踢	踣	踧	踪	踰	踵	踴	蹂
801	蹇	蹈	蹉	蹊	蹌	蹐	蹕	蹙	蹟	蹠
802	蹣	蹤	蹠	蹲	蹴	躁	躄	躅	躇	躊
803	躋	躍	躑	躓	躔	躙	躡	躪	身	躬
804	躯	躰	躱	躾	軀	軅	軆	軈	軋	軌
805	軏	軒	軛	軟	転	軣	軫	軸	軻	軼
806	軽	軾	較	載	輅	輌	輊	輅	輙	輜
807	輝	輟	輦	輩	輪	輯	輳	輸	輻	輾
808	輿	轂	轄	轅	轆	轉	轌	轍	轎	轗
809	轜	轟	轡	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣	辨
810	辮	辯	辰	辱	農	辺	辻	込	辿	迂
811	迄	迅	迎	近	返	迢	迥	迦	迪	迫
812	迭	迯	述	迴	迷	迸	迹	迺	追	退

Kuten digit 1 to 3	Kuten digit 4										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
813	送	逃	逅	逆	逋	逍	透	逐	逓	途
814	逕	逖	逗	這	通	逝	逞	速	造	逢
815	連	逮	週	進	逵	逶	逸	逹	逼	逾
816	遁	遂	遅	遉	遊	運	遍	過	遏	遐
817	遑	遒	道	達	違	遖	遘	遜	遞	遠
818	遡	遣	遥	遨	適	遭	遮	遯	遵	遶
819	遷	選	遺	遼	遽	避	邀	邁	邂	邃
820	還	邉	邊	邏	邑	邕	邨	邪	邯	邱
821	邵	邸	邾	郁	郊	郎	郢	郤	郭	郵
822	郷	郾	都	鄂	鄒	鄔	鄙	鄭	鄰	鄲
823	鄳	鄵	鄶	鄽	酊	酌	酎	酒	酔	酖
824	酘	酙	酛	酢	酣	酥	酩	酪	酬	酳
825	酵	酷	酸	酺	酽	酿	醂	醇	醉	醋
826	醍	醐	醒	醗	醜	醢	醤	醪	醯	醴
827	醵	醸	醺	釀	釁	釆	采	釉	釋	里
828	重	野	量	釐	金	釘	釜	針	釣	釦
829	釧	釵	釶	鈍	鈎	鈐	鈑	鈔	鈕	鈞
830	鈦	鈩	鈬	鈴	鈷	鈸	鈹	鈿	鉄	鉅
831	鉈	鉉	鉋	鉌	鉍	鉑	鉗	鉚	鉛	鉞
832	鉢	鉤	鉦	鉱	鉾	銀	銃	銅	銑	銓
833	銕	銖	銘	銚	銛	銜	銭	銷	銹	鋏
834	鋐	鋒	鋓	鋙	鋤	鋪	鋭	鋲	鋳	鋸
835	鋺	鋼	錆	錍	錐	錑	錘	錙	錚	錠
836	錣	錦	錨	錫	錬	錮	錯	録	錵	鍄
837	鍋	鍍	鍑	鍔	鍖	鍛	鍜	鍠	鍡	鍥
838	鍦	鍬	鍮	鍵	鍼	鍾	鎂	鎌	鎔	鎗
839	鎚	鎧	鎬	鎮	鎰	鎳	鏃	鏆	鏈	鏑
840	鏖	鏘	鏝	鏡	鏢	鏤	鏥	鏨	鏩	鏰
841	鏵	鏹	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐓	鐔	鐘	鐙	鐚
842	鐡	鐥	鐦	鐧	鐫	鐶	鐸	鐺	鑁	鑄
843	鑊	鑑	鑒	鑓	鑚	鑞	鑢	鑪	鑰	鑵
844	鑷	鑼	鑽	鑾	鑿	閂	閇	閉	閊	開
845	閏	閑	閖	間	閘	閙	閠	閤	閧	閨
846	閭	閲	閹	閻	閼	閾	闇	闊	闌	闍
847	闔	闕	闖	闘	關	闡	闢	闥	阡	阨
848	阮	阯	陂	陉	陋	陌	降	陝	陟	陦
849	陲	陬	陰	陳	陵	陶	陸	険	陽	隅
850	隆	隈	隊	隋	隍	階	随	隔	隕	隗
851	隘	隙	際	障	隠	隣	隧	隨	険	隰
852	隴	隶	隷	隹	雀	雁	雄	雋	雌	雍
853	雎	雑	雕	雖	雙	雛	雜	雝	雞	離
854	難	雨	雪	雰	雲	零	雷	雹	雾	需
855	霄	霆	震	霈	霊	霍	霎	霏	霑	霓
856	霖	霙	霜	霞	霤	霧	霪	霰	露	霸
857	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	青	靖	静	靜
858	靠	靡	面	靤	靦	靨	革	靫	靭	靱
859	靴	靶	靹	鞁	鞄	鞆	鞋	鞍	鞏	鞐
860	鞘	鞜	鞠	鞣	鞦	鞨	鞭	鞳	鞴	韃
861	韆	韈	韋	韓	韜	韭	音	韶	韻	響
862	頁	頂	頃	項	順	須	頌	頓	頗	領
863	頚	頡	頤	頬	頭	頴	頷	頸	頻	頽
864	顆	顋	顎	顔	顕	顚	顛	顜	顡	顢
865	顥	顧	顫	顯	顰	顱	顳	顴	風	飄
866	飆	飜	飡	飢	飩	飫	飭	飯	飲	飴
867	飼	飽	飾	餃	餅	餉	養	餌	餐	餒
868	餓	餔	餘	餝	餞	餡	館	餮	餽	餾
869	饂	饅	饉	饋	饌	饐	饑	饒	饗	饜
870	饞	饟	馗	馘	馥	馨	馬	馭	馮	馳
871	駁	駄	駅	駆	駈	駐	駑	駒	駕	駘
872	駙	駝	駟	駢	駭	駮	駱	駲	駻	駿
873	騁	騅	騎	騏	騒	験	騙	騛	騨	騫
874	騰	騵	騶	騷	騾	驀	驂	驃	驅	驍
875	驕	驗	驚	驛	驟	驢	驤	驥	驩	驫
876	骨	骭	骰	骸	骼	髀	髄	髏	髑	髓
877	体	高	髟	髢	髣	髦	髪	髫	髭	髯
878	髱	髴	髷	髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣
879	鬨	鬩	鬮	鬯	鬱	鬲	鬻	鬼	魁	魂
880	魃	魄	魅	魍	魎	魑	魔	魘	魚	魯
881	魴	魵	魸	魹	魽	鮃	鮆	鮎	鮑	鮒
882	鮓	鮖	鮗	鮟	鮠	鮨	鮪	鮫	鮭	鮮
883	鮴	鮹	鯀	鯆	鯉	鯊	鯏	鯑	鯒	鯔
884	鯖	鯛	鯡	鯢	鯣	鯤	鯨	鯰	鯱	鯵
885	鯷	鯽	鰀	鰆	鰈	鰉	鰌	鰍	鰐	鰒
886	鰔	鰕	鰙	鰛	鰡	鰤	鰥	鰧	鰭	鰮
887	鰯	鰰	鰲	鰺	鰻	鰾	鱆	鱇	鱈	鱒
888	鱗	鱚	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鱹	鱺	鳥	鳧
889	鳩	鳫	鳬	鳰	鳳	鳴	鳶	鳽	鴃	鴆
890	鴈	鴉	鴎	鴒	鴕	鴛	鴟	鴣	鴦	鴨
891	鴪	鴫	鴬	鴻	鴾	鵁	鵄	鵆	鵈	鵐
892	鵑	鵙	鵜	鵝	鵞	鵠	鵡	鵤	鵥	鵬
893	鵯	鵰	鵲	鵺	鵾	鶇	鶉	鶏	鶐	鶒
894	鶚	鶛	鶠	鶡	鶤	鶩	鶫	鶯	鶲	鶴
895	鶸	鶺	鶻	鶽	鶿	鷁	鷄	鷆	鷉	鷏
896	鷓	鷔	鷕	鷖	鷗	鷙	鷚	鷞	鷟	鷦
897	鷭	鷯	鷲	鷴	鷸	鷹	鷺	鷽	鷾	鸂
898	鸇	鸊	鸌	鸍	鸏	鸐	鸑	鸒	鸕	鸚
899	鸛	鸞	鹵	鹸	鹹	鹽	鹿	麁	麈	麋
900	麑	麒	麓	麕	麗	麝	麟	麥	麩	麪
901	麭	麴	麸	麹	麺	麻	麼	麾	黄	黍
902	黎	黏	黐	黒	黔	默	黙	黛	黜	黝
903	點	黠	黥	黨	黯	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻
904	黼	黽	鼇	鼈	鼎	鼓	鼕	鼠	鼡	鼬
905	鼯	鼱	鼻	鼾	齁	齊	齋	齎	齏	齒
906	齔	齟	齠	齢	齣	齦	齧	齬	齪	齲
907	齶	齷	齸	龍	龔	龕	龜	龝	龠	龢